DOCKETED

Docket Number:	08-AFC-09C
Project Title:	Palmdale Hybrid Power Project - Compliance
TN #:	206025
Document Title:	Palmdale Energy LLC's Preliminary Drainage, Erosion, and Sediment Control Plan
Description:	N/A
Filer:	Marie Fleming
Organization:	DayZen LLC
Submitter Role:	Applicant Representative
Submission Date:	9/9/2015 11:02:31 AM
Docketed Date:	9/9/2015

PRELIMINARY DRAINAGE, EROSION, AND SEDIMENT CONTROL PLAN

Palmdale Energy Project

August 27, 2015
Project 630636

Prepared For:

Palmdale Energy, LLC

SNC-LAVALIN INC.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

1 **INTRODUCTION** **1**

1.1 Drainage, Erosion, and Sediment Control Plan Elements 1

1.2 Project Overview 2

1.3 Watercourses and Critical Areas 3

1.4 Project Ownership 3

2 **DRAINAGE** **4**

2.1 Pre-Development Drainage 4

2.2 Post Development Drainage 5

2.3 Erosion and Sediment Control 7

3 **CLEARING AND GRADING** **8**

3.1 Areas to be Cleared and Graded 8

3.2 Location of Disposal Areas, Fills, or Other Special Areas 8

3.3 Existing and Proposed Topography 8

3.4 Volumes of Cut and Fill 8

3.4.1 Gas Pipeline 9

3.4.2 Water Pipeline 9

4 **BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES** **10**

4.1 General Erosion Control Measures 10

4.1.1 Access Road, Entrance and Parking, and Laydown Areas 11

4.1.2 Project Site and Linear Facilities 12

4.1.3 Foundations 13

4.1.4 Site Stabilization and Demobilization 13

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Cont'd)

Page

4.2 Other Controls 14

4.2.1 Material Handling and Storage 14

4.2.2 Solid and Hazardous Waste Management 15

4.2.2.1 Potential Contaminated Soil 16

4.2.3 Groundwater/Dewatering Controls 16

4.2.4 Off-site Vehicle Tracking 16

4.2.5 Dust Suppression and Control 17

5 **NOTICE TO READER 18**

In-Text Tables

Table 2-1: Hydrologic Analysis for Pre-Development and Post Development Conditions 6

Table 2-2: Rainfall Data 6

Figures

1: Location Map: Drawing 630636-41DK-1001
2: Vicinity Key Map: Drawing 630636-41DK-1002
3: Site Delineation: Drawing 630636-41DK-1003
4: Watercourses and Critical Areas: Drawing 630636-41DK-1004
5: Limit for Clearing and Grading and Measures for Erosion and Sediment Control: Drawing 630636-41DK-1007

Appendices

A: Pre- and Post-Development Drainage Plans (Drawings 630636-41DK-1005 and 1006)
B: Pre-Development Drainage Calculations
C: Post-Development Drainage Calculations
D: Best Management Practices

P:\LOB\EIAM-BC\CP\SUMMIT POWER\5.0\5.3\R827MTA_PALMDALE POWER PROJECT DESCP V3_SUMMIT.DOCX

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

1 INTRODUCTION

This Preliminary Drainage, Erosion, and Sediment Control Plan (DESCP) has been prepared in anticipation of the California Energy Commission's (CEC) approval of the proposed Palmdale Energy Project (Project). The proposed Project consists of a natural gas-fired combined-cycle generating equipment to be developed on an approximately 50-acre site in the northern portions of the City of Palmdale. The combined-cycle equipment utilizes two Siemens SGT6-5000F natural gas-fired combustion turbine generators (CTG), two heat recovery steam generators (HRSG), and one steam turbine generator (STG). The Project will have a nominal electrical output of 645 MW at average annual conditions and will be fueled with natural gas delivered via a new natural gas pipeline. In order to determine the potential impacts to water and soil resources from the construction and operation of the Project, the CEC requires a preliminary and final DESCP. The DESCP will be updated and revised as the project moves from the preliminary to final design phases, and will be a separate document from the Construction Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). The DESCP submitted prior to site mobilization must be designed and sealed by a professional engineer/erosion control specialist.

This DESCP is preliminary because it is prepared in advance of the final phase of construction planning and engineering design, during which the details regarding construction schedule and certain aspects of erosion control design will be finalized. This will take place after licensing and will be included in a future update of the DESCP.

1.1 Drainage, Erosion, and Sediment Control Plan Elements

This preliminary DESCP outlines site management activities during site mobilization, excavation and construction, and includes the following elements:

Location Map – A general site location map showing the Project setting. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1001.

Vicinity Map – A map indicating the location of all project elements with depictions of all significant geographic features including swales, storm drains, and sensitive areas. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1002.

Site Delineation – All areas subject to soil disturbance for the Project (Project Site, laydown/demolition areas, all on-site linear facilities, landscaping areas, and any other project elements) are delineated showing boundary lines of all construction/demolition areas and the location of all existing and proposed structures, pipelines, roads, and drainage facilities. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1003.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

Watercourses and Critical Areas – The DESCP shows the location of all nearby watercourses including swales, as well as their proximity to the Palmdale Project Site. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1004.

Drainage – The DESCP provides a topographic site map at a scale of 1”=100’ showing all existing, and proposed drainage systems and drainage area boundaries. See Drawings 630636-41DK-1005 and 1006.

Clearing and Grading – The DESCP provides a delineation of all areas to be cleared of vegetation and areas to be preserved. The plan provides elevations, slopes, locations, and the extent of all proposed grading as shown by contours. Existing and proposed topography are tied together (See Drawing 630636-41DK-1007).

Best Management Practices (BMPs) – The DESCP describes the location, timing, and maintenance schedule of BMPs to be used (Appendix D). Final design and placement of the BMPs will take place during the final phase of construction planning after licensing (see Drawing 630636-41DK-1007).

1.2 Project Overview

Palmdale Energy, LLC proposes to construct, own, and operate the Palmdale Energy Project. The Project will be a 645 MW facility (at average annual conditions) consisting of a natural gas-fired combined-cycle generating equipment to be developed on an approximately 50-acre site in the northern portions of the City of Palmdale. The combined-cycle equipment utilizes two Siemens SGT6-5000F natural gas-fired combustion turbine generators (CTG), two heat recovery steam generators (HRSG), and one steam turbine generator (STG). The Project will be fueled with natural gas delivered via a new natural gas pipeline. The Southern California Gas Company (SCG) will design and construct the approximately 8.7-mile pipeline in existing street rights-of-way (ROW) within the City of Palmdale.

The Project plant site is located south of East Avenue M in the northernmost areas of the City of Palmdale. The 50-acre plant site was formerly part of an approximately 600-acre City-owned property that is bounded by Sierra Highway to the west, East Avenue M (Columbia Way) to the north, and U.S. Air Force Plant 42 on the south and east. The land cover consists of sandy soil, various small brush and Joshua trees.

The proposed interconnection point for the Project with the Southern California Edison (SCE) electrical transmission system is at SCE’s existing Vincent Substation south of Palmdale.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

Reclaimed water for the Project's uses will be supplied from the City of Palmdale Water Reclamation Plant (PWRP) or the City of Lancaster Advanced Waste Water Treatment Plant (AWWTP) both of which are operated by the Sanitation Districts of Los Angeles County.

In addition to the reserve volume of water provided by on-site tank storage, the Project will have a backup water source in the event of a more extended outage in the PWRP by having water supplied by the AWWTP.

During Project operations, potable water for drinking, sanitary uses, safety showers, etc. will be obtained from the Los Angeles County Waterworks District No. 40. Portable sanitary facilities and bottled water will be used during Project construction.

Process blowdowns and sanitary wastewater will be disposed by connecting to City of Palmdale sewer system.

1.3 Watercourses and Critical Areas

The project is located within the Antelope-Fremont Valley watershed. Characteristics of the site are that only natural swales and natural low ponding areas exist and there are no drainage ditches or storm drains on the existing site. The Amargosa Creek runs from south to north roughly one mile west of the Project Site (See Drawing 630636-41DK-1004).

1.4 Project Ownership

Palmdale Energy, LLC is the Project owner.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

2 DRAINAGE

2.1 Pre-Development Drainage

The drainage study area is divided into eight sub-basins to analyze pre-development drainage condition at the Project Site. Existing topographic conditions and drainage areas are shown on Drawing 630636-41DK-1005 (Appendix A).

The area available for the proposed improvement is surrounded by vacant land owned by the City of Palmdale on the north, south, and west and the Air Force Base on east. All these boundary elements work as a drainage barrier for the Project (within Drainage Area 7) and separate it from the surrounding drainage basins. Therefore, no runoff from the surrounding area enters the Project. A concrete channel, running between Sierra Highway and Southern Pacific Railroad, crosses Drainage Area 1 and continues towards north crossing East Avenue M. It appears that no water from the Project enters the channel.

Roughly 50 acres will be developed for the power plant, and is referred as “Project Site” in this report. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1006. In addition, an adjacent 20 acre site may be developed for use as temporary laydown and parking during construction of the Project.

The existing topographic conditions of the Project site (within Area 7) depict an average slope of one percent (-1%) towards north and northeast. The remaining water from Areas 1 to 6, and 8 flows toward north and northeast. There is a shallow concrete box culvert, located west of the intersection of East Avenue M and Site 1 Road (entrance road for Air Force Base), crossing Avenue M at a skew angle. This culvert connects to a double grate inlet structure on the upstream side, located on the south edge of Avenue M, and discharges north of East Avenue M. Work completed previously for this Project suggested that silt accumulation had almost filled this inlet and the box, such that the existing culvert was considered non- functional. The silt accumulation may have been addressed since the previous study was completed; however, this should be validated by a site visit.

Considering the topography of the area surrounding the existing site and the assumed condition of the existing culvert at the northeast corner, preliminary drainage calculations confirm that a few low spots on Avenue M close to the northeast corner and north of the Project Site are subject to flooding during the 25-year storm event and greater.

The table found on Drawing 630636-41DK-1005 shows the discharges from each sub-basin for 2-year and 100-year storms. Pre-development drainage calculations are attached in Appendix B.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

2.2 Post Development Drainage

The document TC-11 of the California Stormwater BMP Handbook – New Development and Redevelopment (California Stormwater BMP, 2003)[1], serves as the basis for the drainage design concept. It should be noted that the current design approach is based on preliminary assumptions and findings, and may require modifications during final design. However, the design concept will remain the same. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1003.

The intent of the proposed drainage design is that the post development discharge from the Project site shall not exceed the pre-development discharge for a 100-year storm event. The infiltration basin is designed to contain the differential run-on between the pre-development and post development conditions for a 100-year storm event. In this case, as there is no discharge from the Project site for the existing condition, no discharge will leave the Project site after the proposed improvement for a 100-year storm event.

The proposed infiltration basin is designed to retain the run-on from the entire Project Site for a 100-year storm event. This will also help to capture any sediment flowing along with storm run-on during construction. The infiltration basin shall be protected from erosion by stabilizing the side slopes.

Based on conceptual layout of the proposed development, the Project is located on the drainage catchment areas 7-2 and 7-3, composed of a total catchment area of 52.5 acres. See Drawing 630636-41DK-1006 (Appendix A) for the Project Site catchment boundary. The Project Site drains toward the north by means of sheet flow, swales, inlets, and/or storm sewer pipes. The run-on from the Project Site drains into a proposed infiltration basin located at the northwest corner of the Project Site to retain the post-development storm water up to the 100-year storm event without discharge.

The rest of the Project drainage area consisting of drainage Areas 1 to 6, and 8 is undeveloped (roughly 600 acres) and is considered as a separate watershed. The run-on from this watershed generally flows north. Drainage catchment areas 7-1 and 7-4 are also undeveloped. Area 7-4 is located downstream of the Project Site which will be partially used as a laydown area, whereas Area 7-1 is located upstream of the Project Site.

The proposed infiltration basin, in the Project Site is designed to contain the run-on for the 100-year storm event without discharge to downstream. Contributing area to the infiltration basin include post-development areas 7-2 and 7-3, as well as upstream catchment area 7-1 at its pre-development state.

---

[1] California Stormwater BMP Handbook – New Development and Redevelopment., California, 2003.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

Table 2.1 shows precipitation and discharge data for 2-year and 100-year storm events for predevelopment and post development conditions for the Project Site. These data provide the basis for sizing the infiltration basin shown on Drawing 630636-41DK-1006.

The peak flow rates shown on Table 2.1 and in Appendix A were determined using a computer aided, watershed modeling software called Hydraflow Hydrographs 2007 by Intelisolve. This program utilizes the Natural Resources Conservation Service's TR-55 methods. Soil group information was obtained from the United States Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service. Rainfall data from NOAA is shown on Table 2.2. See Appendix A for Pre-Development drainage and Post-Development drainage areas, respectively.

Table 2-1: Hydrologic Analysis for Pre-Development and Post Development Conditions

	Post-Development		Post- Development Total	Pre- Development Total	Upstream Area
Areas Included	7-2	7-3	7-2, 7-3	7-2, 7-3	7-1
Acres	15.47 acres	37.07 acres	52.5 acres	52.5 acres	94.92 acres
Curve Number	98	85	89 Weighted average	63	63
Discharge from Project, 2-Year Storm	0 cfs (cubic feet/sec)	0 cfs	0 cfs	0 cfs	0 cfs
Discharge from Project, 100-Year Storm	0 cfs	0 cfs	0 cfs	0 cfs	0 cfs

Table 2-2: Rainfall Data

Precipitation	Inches
2-Year, 24-hour storm	1.39
100-Year, 24-hour storm-	3.75

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

2.3 Erosion and Sediment Control

During Project construction, silt fence shall be installed to prevent sediments in storm water runoff from leaving the site. The silt fence depicted in Drawing 630636-41DK-1007 shall be in place prior to any clearing or grading operations. Since the grading of the site will take place in phases, temporary silt fence shall be added around the perimeter of the phase area on the sides not bounded by the Project Site silt fence. After silt fence is installed, the infiltration basin(s) will be constructed during grading. The largest amount of sediments will be produced during construction. Therefore, sediments, which have accumulated in the infiltration basin(s) during construction, may need to be removed during and at the end of construction to ensure that the facility functions properly. Temporary and permanent ditches that carry runoff to the infiltration basin(s) will be protected against erosion, during construction, using flow check dams constructed of straw bales. As permanent storm sewer pipes and culverts are added during construction, they will be protected from receiving sediments using silt fence that will enclose the inlets.

Areas disturbed during construction will be stabilized with straw or other suitable material until the final surface is established. All construction entrances will have a granular area to remove soil from vehicle tires prior to leaving the site. Dust will be controlled during construction by watering the ground and using Soil-Sement® or a similar product to stabilize bare ground. All erosion control measures will be in accordance to Section 3 of the California Stormwater BMP Handbook – Construction (California Stormwater BMP, 2015).[2]

[2] California Stormwater BMP, 2015.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

3 CLEARING AND GRADING

3.1 Areas to be Cleared and Graded

The Project Site is located entirely within an undeveloped area. Brush and Joshua trees will need to be cleared before grading is performed.

3.2 Location of Disposal Areas, Fills, or Other Special Areas

It is anticipated that all excavated soil will be used on site for grading and leveling purposes. In the event that some of the excavated soil will not be reused on site, classification of the soil for disposal will be made on the basis of sampling. Sampling will be completed once the soil is excavated and stockpiled. Soil that is determined to be nonhazardous may be suitable for reuse at a construction site or may be disposed at a regional disposal facility, depending on the chemical quality.

3.3 Existing and Proposed Topography

The existing site depicts an average slope of 1% toward the north and northeast. Multiple low areas throughout the site allow for ponding. At completion of the Palmdale Energy Project, surface grading will direct storm water runoff off the site via overland flow at a typical slope of 0.6 percent and will be contained in infiltration pond. The main plant area will be graded with moderate slopes for effective drainage.

3.4 Volumes of Cut and Fill

As per Palmdale Energy's guidance to SNC-Lavalin, the site grading strategy recommended by Siemens will implement a two tier elevation approach at the Project. The first tier would be where the Power Plant will be located at an elevation of 2,502.5 feet. The second tier would be where the Switchyard will be located at elevation of 2,507 feet.

Based on the above grading strategy, the conceptual grading of the Project Site, including the proposed natural gas-fired combined-cycle generating equipment Power Plant, yielded the following earthwork volumes:

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

Area	Stripping Volume (cubic yard)	Cut (Excavation) Volume (cubic yard)	Embankment (fill) Volume (cubic yard)	Gravel (6" depth) (cubic yard)
Power Plant	16,703	9,647	21,342	
Switchyard	5,449	10,419	439	
Laydown Area	30,970	9,330	21,885	15,485
Infiltration Basin	5,654	51,900	-	
Total	58,776	81,296	43,266	15,485

The excess cut material of 38,030 cubic yards will remain on the 50 acre Project site. It is anticipated that it will not be necessary to haul dirt onto or off of the owner's property and onto public roads. It is anticipated that stripped topsoil (58,776 cubic yard) will be spread within the site, there will be no topsoil removed from the site.

3.4.1 Gas Pipeline

The trench excavated for the short pipeline tie-in will be entirely refilled. No surplus soil is expected for such work.

3.4.2 Water Pipeline

The power plant will be connected to the existing reclaimed water pipeline located near the intersection of Sierra Highway and East Avenue M.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

4 BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES

The project has been designed to impact as small an area as possible at any given time, thereby limiting the amount of exposed, untreated soil. Construction is expected to proceed as expediently and efficiently as possible, thereby ensuring that as little soil is exposed for as short a time as possible. The following sections present standard construction BMPs, which are described in the California Storm Water Best Management Practice Handbook (2015) and the Caltrans Storm Water Quality Handbook (2003) found in Appendix D.

These resource handbooks provide comprehensive details on BMP implementation and will be obtained and reviewed by managers for all construction contractors that may have an impact on implementation of the DESCP.

The following sections present the recommended construction BMPs for storm water pollution prevention at the construction laydown areas, plant site and linear facilities. Each section provides information on BMP implementation as it relates to the activity being performed. BMPs that may have an impact on implementation of the DESCP will be reviewed by managers and construction contractors. While performing the work, the contractors may implement additional control measures, if necessary.

4.1 General Erosion Control Measures

The project has been designed to impact as small an area as possible at any given time, thereby limiting the amount of exposed, untreated soil. BMPs will be used to help maintain water quality, protect property from erosion damage, and prevent accelerated soil erosion or dust generation. Temporary erosion control measures will be implemented before construction begins and they will be evaluated and maintained during construction. These measures typically include re-vegetation, mulching, physical stabilization, dust suppression, berms, ditches, and sediment barriers. These measures will be removed from the site after the completion of construction.

A mitigation monitoring plan will be developed in conjunction with CEC Staff to set performance standards and monitor the effectiveness of BMPs. This plan will address the timing and methods of such measures, as well as reporting and response requirements. Personnel will receive training to conduct their jobs properly and recognize and report abnormal/adverse situations so that they can be quickly corrected.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

The following general control measures may be used during various phases of the project:

- Scheduling (EC-1), (SS-1);
- Preservation of Existing Vegetation (EC-2);
- Silt Fence and Fiber Rolls (SE-1 and SE-5);
- Soil Binders (EC-5);
- Earth Dykes and Drainage Swales (EC-9);
- Straw Mulch (EC-6), (SS-6);
- Geotextiles and Mats (EC-7), (SS-7);
- Hydroseeding (EC-4);
- Gravel Bag Berm (SE-6);
- Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (SE-7);
- Sandbag Barrier (SE-8);
- Storm Drain Inlet Protection (SE-10);
- Stockpile Management (WM-3);
- Wind Erosion Control (WE-1);
- Solid and Hazardous Waste Management (WM-5 and WM-6);
- Sanitary and Septic Waste Management (WM-9);
- Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance (NS-10);
- Vehicle and Equipment Fueling (NS-9);
- Spill Prevention and Control (WM-4);
- Infiltration Basins (TC-11); and
- Employee and contractor training.

4.1.1 Access Road, Entrance and Parking, and Laydown Areas

During construction, primary access to the Project Site is assumed to be from an entrance on Avenue M (Columbia Way). The entrance will be maintained to limit sediment tracking and creation of dust. The parking and laydown areas will be stabilized with coarse gravel. All surfaces

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

will be regularly watered to reduce generation of dust, but will not be excessively watered so as to generate runoff. Silt fencing will be used at edges of these areas, as necessary to minimize sediment discharging into swales or ditches.

All construction equipment will be maintained to control leaks and spills, and fueling will only be conducted within contained areas. Any contaminated soils resulting from spills will be dug up as quickly as possible, and then removed from the site for proper disposal.

The following BMPs are recommended for construction access areas:

- Silt Fence (SE-1);
- Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit (TC-1);
- Stabilized Construction Roadway (TC-2);
- Scheduling (EC-1), (SS-1);
- Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (SE-7);
- Hydroseeding (EC-4), (SS-4);
- Straw Mulch (EC-6), (SS-6);
- Geotextiles and Mats (EC-7), (SS-7);
- Wind Erosion Control (WE-1);
- Earth Dykes and Drainage Swales (EC-9), (SS-9);
- Straw Bale Barriers (SE-9);
- Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning (NS-8);
- Vehicle and Equipment Fueling (NS-9); and
- Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance (NS-10).

4.1.2 Project Site and Linear Facilities

The Project Site is currently somewhat rolling, dusty ground with sand cover. During construction the site will be surrounded by silt fences. These sediment barriers will be used to control sediments transported by runoff, and will remain after construction till all the permanent erosion control measures are installed and the soil is stabilized.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

The project linear facilities (such as drainage, utilities and/or access roads) are assumed to be constructed within the rights-of-way of Avenue M (Columbia Way) and Site 1 Road. Temporary erosion control might include asphalt patching in the streets until permanent paving can be completed.

During construction, temporary erosion control may include outlet protection and straw bale barriers. The following BMPs will be considered during site and linear facilities constructions:

- Preservation of Existing Vegetation (EC-2), (SS-2);
- Earth Dykes and Drainage Swales (EC-9), (SS-9);
- Spill Prevention and Control (WM-4);
- Check Dam (SE-4);
- Fiber Rolls (SE-5);
- Straw Bale Barrier (SE-9);
- Sediment Basin (SE-2); and
- Velocity Dissipation Devices (EC-10), (SS-10).

4.1.3 Foundations

During construction of the foundations, a concrete washout area will be required. Dumping of excess concrete and washing out of delivery vehicles shall be prohibited at other locations on site. Notices shall be posted to inform all drivers.

The following BMPs will be considered during the construction of foundations:

- Solid Waste Management (WM-5); and
- Concrete Waste Management (WM-8).

4.1.4 Site Stabilization and Demobilization

As construction nears completion, areas used for parking, storage and laydown will be cleared and stabilized. Project Site areas that will continue to be used for parking or storage will have permanent storm water collection and conveyance structures provided. The 20 acre temporary parking and laydown area adjacent to the Project Site will be stabilized but will not drain to the Project's infiltration basin; the general drainage direction will be to the north of the laydown area.

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

4.2 Other Controls

4.2.1 Material Handling and Storage

There will be a variety of chemicals stored and used during the construction and operation of the Project. Chemicals will be stored in appropriate chemical storage facilities. Bulk chemicals will be stored in storage tanks and other chemicals will be stored in returnable delivery containers. Chemical storage and chemical feed areas will be designed to contain leaks and spills. Berm and drain piping design will allow a full-tank capacity spill without overflowing the berms. For multiple tanks located within the same bermed area, the capacity of the largest single tank will determine the volume of the bermed area and drain piping. Secondary containment will hold 100% for a single tank, 100% of the largest tank if multiple tanks are contained with the same secondary containment structure, 150% of the largest tank if an underground storage tank, or 10% of total volume if greater, plus the volume from 25- year, 24-hour storm if exposed to rainfall.

Drain piping for volatile chemicals shall be trapped and isolated from other drains to eliminate noxious or toxic vapors. After neutralization, if required, water collected from the chemical storage areas will be directed to the cooling tower basin. The aqueous ammonia storage area will have spill containment and ammonia vapor detection equipment.

Safety showers and eyewashes will be provided in the vicinity of all chemical storage and use areas. Hose connections will be provided near the chemical storage and feed areas to flush spills and leaks to the plant wastewater collection system. Approved personal protective equipment will be used by plant personnel during chemical spill containment and cleanup activities. In case of a chemical spill or accidental release, personnel will be properly trained in the handling of these chemicals and instructed in the procedures to follow. Adequate supplies of absorbent material will be stored on site for spill cleanup.

The following BMPs will be considered for material handling and storage:

- Solid Waste Management (WM-5);
- Vehicle and Equipment Fueling (NS-9);
- Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance (NS-10);
- Material Delivery and Storage (WM-1);
- Material Use (WM-2);
- Stockpile Management (WM-3); and
- Concrete Waste Management (WM-8).

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

4.2.2 Solid and Hazardous Waste Management

Wastewater: Wastewater generated during construction will include sanitary waste, storm water runoff, equipment washdown water, and water from excavation dewatering during construction (if dewatering is required). Depending on the chemical quality of these wastewaters, they will be classified as hazardous or nonhazardous. Sanitary waste will be collected in portable, self-contained toilets. Storm water runoff will be managed in accordance with a storm water management permit, which will be obtained prior to the start of construction. Equipment washdown water will be contained at designated wash areas and will be disposed of off site. Excavation dewatering water will be contained in portable tanks and sampled prior to disposal off site. Water used for dust control and soil compaction during construction will not result in discharge.

Hazardous Waste: Most of the hazardous waste generated during construction will consist of liquid waste, such as water from excavation dewatering, flushing and cleaning fluids, passivating fluid (to prepare pipes for use), and solvents. Some hazardous solid waste, such as welding materials and dried paint, may also be generated.

Flushing and cleaning waste liquid will be generated as pipes are cleaned and flushed. The volume of flushing and cleaning liquid waste generated is estimated to be one to two times the internal volume of the pipes cleaned. The quantity of welding, solvent, and paint waste is expected to be minimal. Wastewaters generated during construction could be considered hazardous.

The construction contractor will be considered the generator of hazardous construction waste and will be responsible for proper handling of hazardous waste in compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations. This responsibility includes licensing, personnel training, accumulation limits and times, and reporting and recordkeeping.

The hazardous waste will be collected in satellite accumulation containers near the points of generation. It will be moved daily to the contractor's 90-day hazardous waste storage area located at the site construction laydown area. The waste will be removed from the site by a certified hazardous waste collection company and delivered to an authorized hazardous waste management facility, before expiration of the 90-day storage limit.

The following BMPs will be considered at the designated storage locations:

- Material Delivery and Storage (WM-1);
- Material Use (WM-2);
- Spill Prevention and Control (WM-4);
- Solid Waste Management (WM-5); and
- Hazardous Waste Management (WM-6).

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

4.2.2.1 *Potential Contaminated Soil*

It is unlikely that contaminated soil will be encountered during construction. However, operators and construction personnel will be asked to report unusual conditions to the appropriate personnel and the area and/or material will be properly contained during investigative actions. If soils require temporary stockpiling, piles will be covered with plastic sheeting or tarps that are secured safely with sand bags and bermed with hay bales or silt fencing to prevent runoff from leaving the area. If required, samples will be collected and sent to a certified analytical laboratory for characterization. If contamination is detected, the waste will be handled and properly disposed of in an authorized waste management facility.

4.2.3 Groundwater/Dewatering Controls

Based on a preliminary geotechnical report, it is anticipated the construction phase of the Project will not require groundwater removal. Storm water is expected to result in only several days of dewatering during construction, and this will be in accordance with BMPs. With an unusual storm year, this could be as many as 5 to 10 days.

If any contamination is detected via odors or visible sheens, the collected storm water will be handled and properly disposed in a manner consistent with federal, state, and local regulations. The following control methods will be considered for groundwater/dewatering controls, as necessary:

- Dewatering Operations (NS-2); and
- Hazardous Waste Management (WM-6).

4.2.4 Off-site Vehicle Tracking

Because sediment reaching public roads generally has a clear path to wetlands and water bodies, controls will be in place to minimize or eliminate soils from being tracked off the Project Site from vehicles. The site will have paved access roads and entrances/exits made of coarse aggregate to limit the amount of material adhering to tires. These areas will be inspected daily and cleaned as necessary using manual or mechanical street sweepers. The following control methods will be considered for off-site vehicle tracking, as necessary:

- Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit (TC-1);
- Stabilized Construction Roadway (TC-2); and
- Entrance/Outlet Tire Wash (TC-3).

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

4.2.5 Dust Suppression and Control

During construction of the Project Site and the related linear facilities, dust erosion control measures will be implemented to minimize the wind-blown loss of soil. Reclaimed water of a quality equal to or better than existing surface runoff will be sprayed on the soil in construction areas to control dust during revegetation.

The following control method will be considered for dust suppression, as necessary:

- Wind Erosion Control (WE-1).

© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

5 NOTICE TO READER

This report has been prepared and the work referred to in this report have been undertaken by SNC-Lavalin Inc. (SNC-Lavalin) for the exclusive use of Palmdale Energy, LLC, who has been party to the development of the scope of work and understands its limitations. The methodology, findings, conclusions and recommendations in this report are based solely upon the scope of work and subject to the time and budgetary considerations described in the proposal and/or contract pursuant to which this report was issued. Any use, reliance on, or decision made by a third party based on this report is the sole responsibility of such third party. SNC-Lavalin accepts no liability or responsibility for any damages that may be suffered or incurred by any third party as a result of the use of, reliance on, or any decision made based on this report.

The findings, conclusions and recommendations in this report (i) have been developed in a manner consistent with the level of skill normally exercised by professionals currently practicing under similar conditions in the area, and (ii) reflect SNC-Lavalin's best judgment based on information available at the time of preparation of this report. No other warranties, either expressed or implied, are made as to the professional services provided under the terms of our original contract and included in this report. The findings and conclusions contained in this report are valid only as of the date of this report and may be based, in part, upon information provided by others. If any of the information is inaccurate, new information is discovered, site conditions change or applicable standards are amended, modifications to this report may be necessary. The results of this assessment should in no way be construed as a warranty that the subject site is free from any and all contamination.

Any soil and rock descriptions in this report and associated logs have been made with the intent of providing general information on the subsurface conditions of the site. This information should not be used as geotechnical data for any purpose unless specifically addressed in the text of this report. Groundwater conditions described in this report refer only to those observed at the location and time of observation noted in the report.

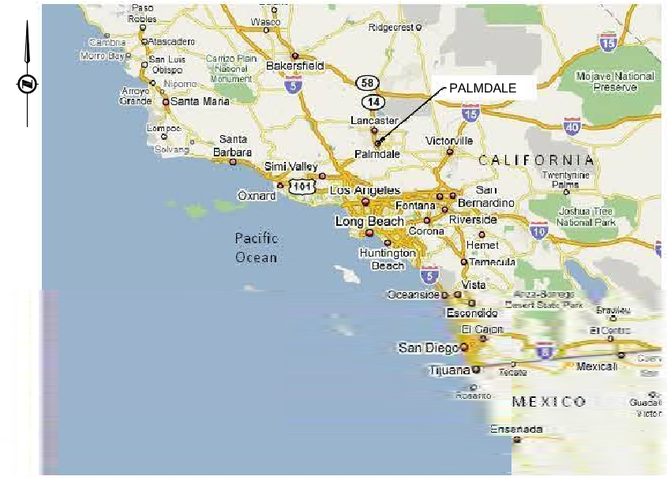
This report must be read as a whole, as sections taken out of context may be misleading. If discrepancies occur between the preliminary and final version of this report, it is the final version that takes precedence. Nothing in this report is intended to constitute or provide a legal opinion.

The contents of this report are confidential and proprietary. Other than by Palmdale Energy, LLC, copying or distribution of this report or use of or reliance on the information contained herein, in whole or in part, is not permitted without the express written permission of Palmdale Energy, LLC and SNC-Lavalin.

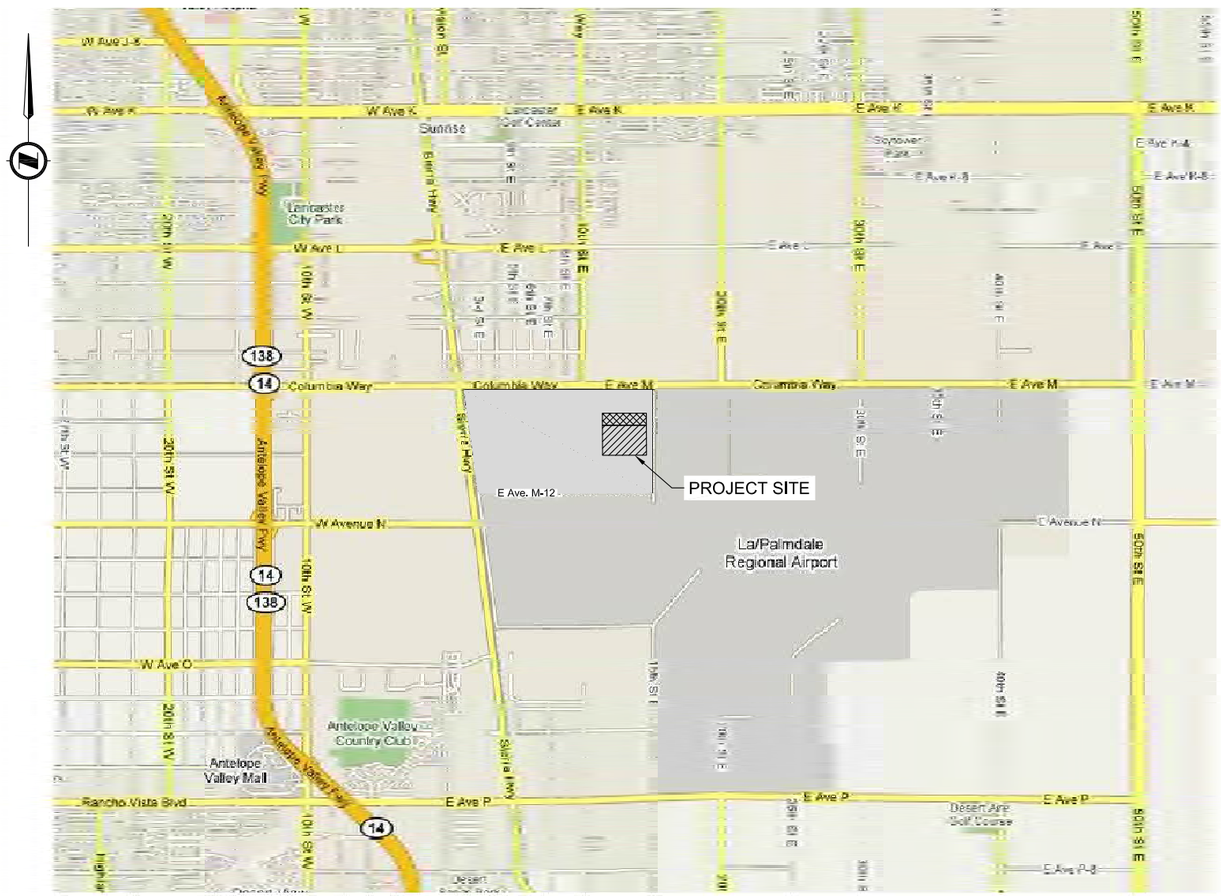
© SNC-Lavalin Inc. 2015. All rights reserved Confidential.

FIGURES

1: Location Map: Drawing 630636-41DK-1001
2: Vicinity Key Map: Drawing 630636-41DK-1002
3: Site Delineation: Drawing 630636-41DK-1003
4: Watercourses and Critical Areas: Drawing 630636-41DK-1004
5: Limit for Clearing and Grading and Measures for Erosion and Sediment Control: Drawing 630636-41DK-1007



LOCATION MAP
N.T.S.



SITE LOCATION MAP
N.T.S.

PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-25

LAYOUT: 1001
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-25 2:51 PM STOYCHEV, KALOYAN
FILE LOCATION: \\SLI2600\PROJECTS\LOBE\AM-BC\CURRENT PROJECTS\SUMMIT POWER\4.0 EXECUTION\4.2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1001.DWG

DESIGNED	T. LIU
DRAWN	D. LIU
CHECKED	S. S. DEEPAK
APPROVED	S. S. DEEPAK

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D-SIZE SHEET
RCT-TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
PA	2015-08-25	ISSUED FOR REVIEW	SSD

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN
SNC·LAVALIN
1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.
Canada, V6E 3C9
Certified ISO 9001

CLIENT

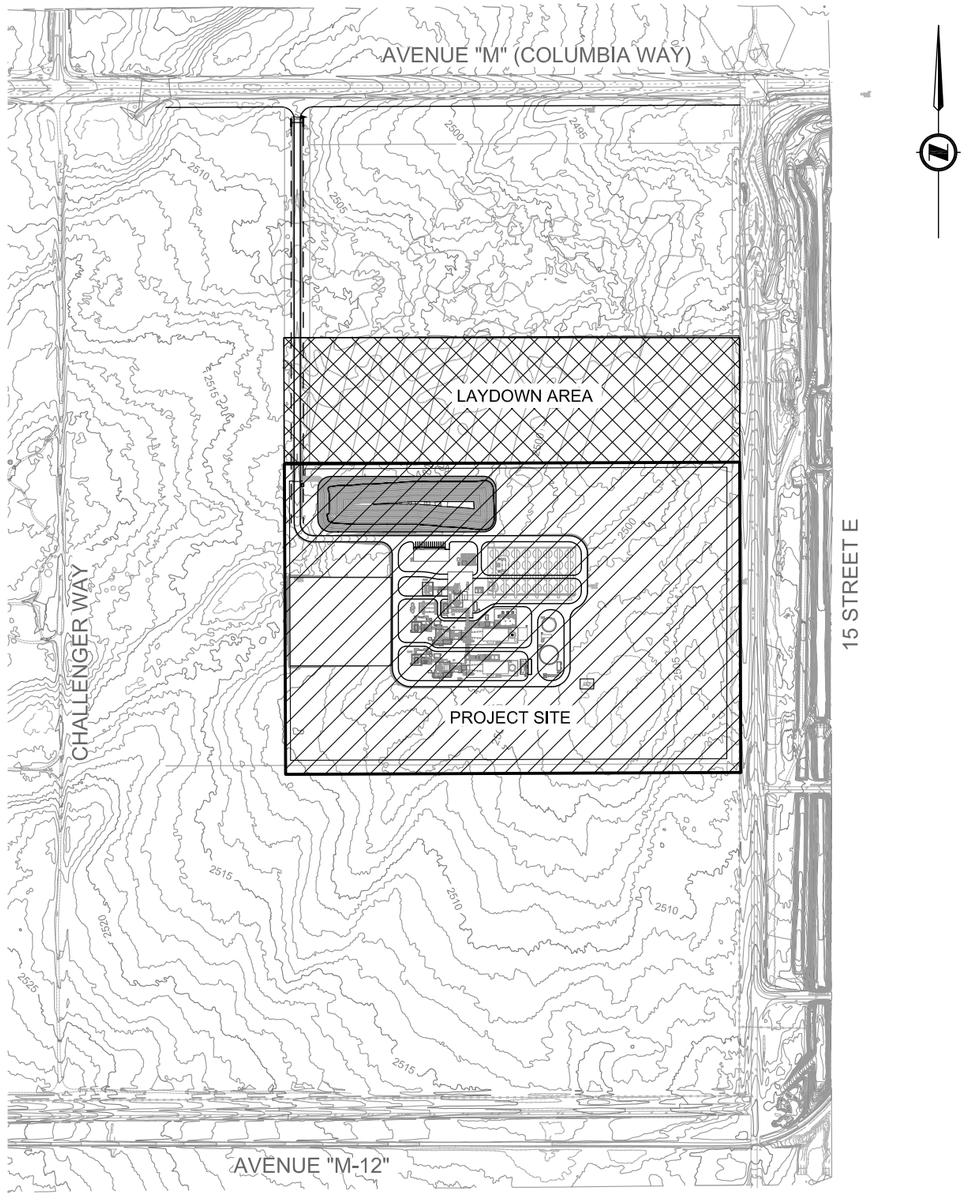
DRAWING SCALE:
N.T.S.

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

LOCATION MAP

CITY CARDEX No. -
CONSULTANT No. -
DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1001 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS



PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-25

LAYOUT: 1002
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-25 2:46 PM STOYCHEV, KALOYAN
FILE LOCATION: \\SL2600\PROJECTS\LOB\EAM-BC\CURRENT PROJECTS\SUMMIT POWER\4.0 EXECUTION\4.2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1002.DWG

DESIGNED	T. LIU
DRAWN	D. LIU
CHECKED	S. S. DEEPAK
APPROVED	S. S. DEEPAK

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D-SIZE SHEET
RCT-TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
PA	2015-08-25	ISSUED FOR REVIEW	SSD

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN
SNC•LAVALIN
1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.,
Canada, V6E 3C9
Certified ISO 9001

CLIENT

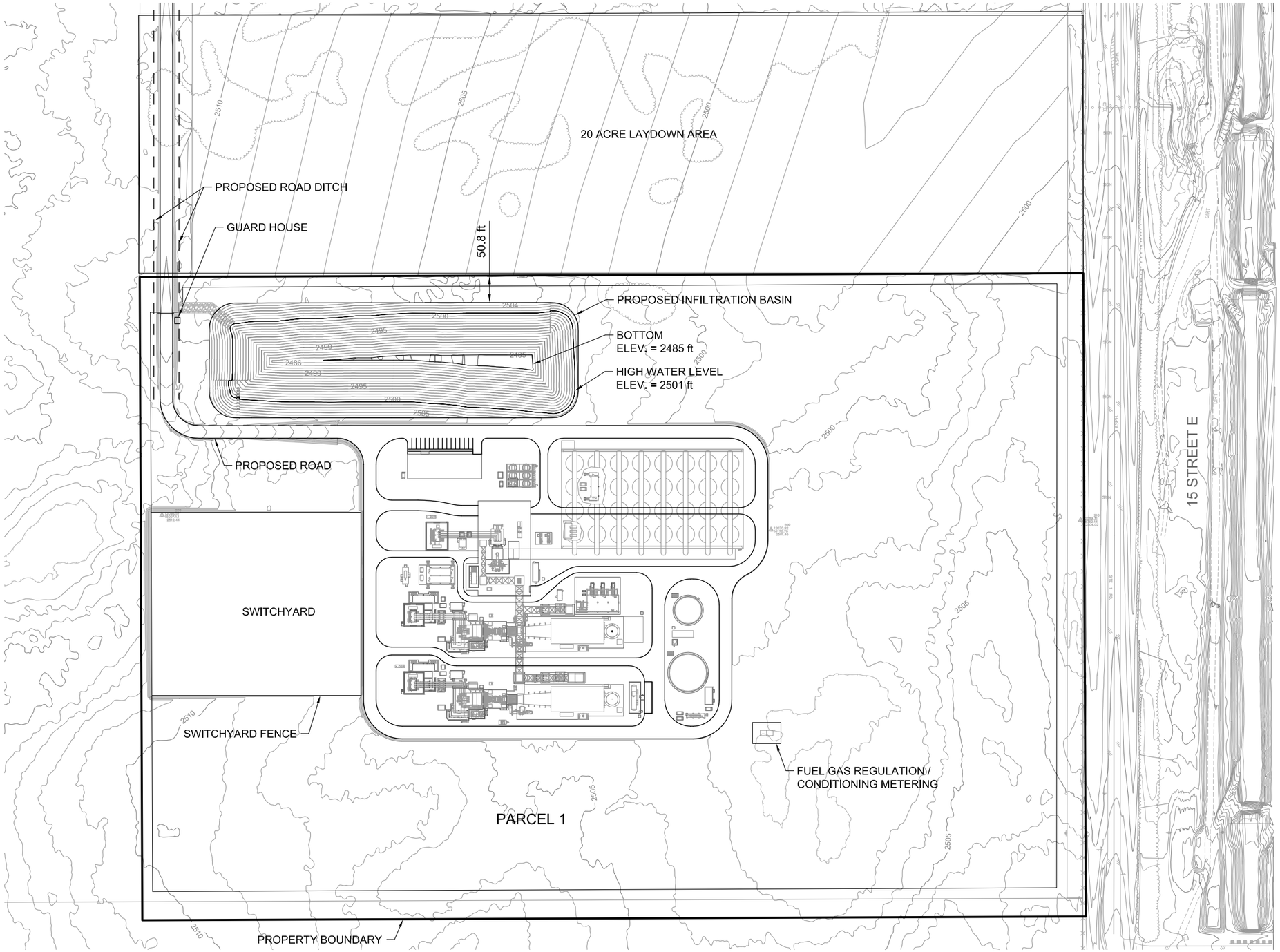
DRAWING SCALE: 1" = 600'
0 50 125 250 500
SCALE IN FEET

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

VICINTY MAP

CITY CARDEX No. -
CONSULTANT No. -
DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1002 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS



PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-25

LAYOUT: 1003
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-25 2:40 PM STOYCHEV, KALOYAN
FILE LOCATION: \\SL2606\SUMMIT_POWER\4.0 EXECUTION\4.2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1003 AND 1006.DWG

DESIGNED	T. LIU
DRAWN	D. LIU
CHECKED	S. S. DEEPAK
APPROVED	S. S. DEEPAK

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D–SIZE SHEET
RCT–TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
PA	2015-08-25	ISSUED FOR REVIEW	SSD

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN

SNC·LAVALIN

1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.
Canada, V6E 3C9

Certified ISO 9001

CLIENT

DRAWING SCALE: 1" = 200'

0 50 100 150 300
SCALE IN FEET

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

SITE DELINEATION

CITY CARDEX No. -

CONSULTANT No. -

DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1003 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS

LEGEND

CREEK

PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-25

LAYOUT: 1004
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-25 3:08 PM STOYCHEV, KALOYAN
FILE LOCATION: W:\4-2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1004.DWG

DESIGNED	T. LIU
DRAWN	D. LIU
CHECKED	S. S. DEEPAK
APPROVED	S. S. DEEPAK

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D-SIZE SHEET
RCT-TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
PA	2015-08-25	ISSUED FOR REVIEW	SSD

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN

SNC·LAVALIN
1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.
Canada, V6E 3C9
Certified ISO 9001

CLIENT

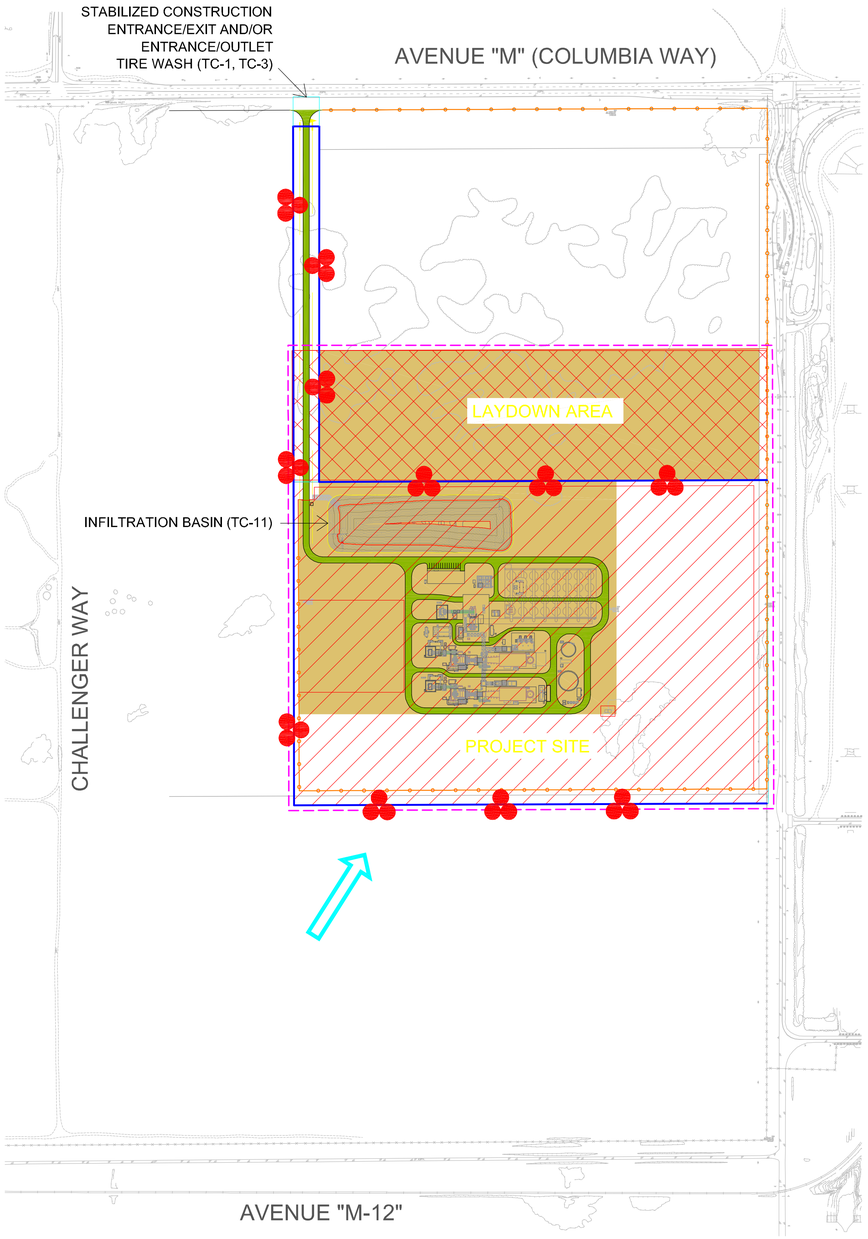
DRAWING SCALE: N.T.S.

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

WATER COURSES AND CRITICAL AREAS

CITY CARDEX No. -
CONSULTANT No. -
DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1004 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS



LEGEND

- LIMIT OF CLEARING AND GRADING
- SILT FENCE (SE-1)
- EARTH DIKES AND/OR DRAINAGE SWALES
- VELOCITY DISSIPATION DEVICES (EC-10)
- DIRECTION OF STORMWATER FLOW
- ASPHALT/PAVEMENT ACCESS ROAD
- GRAVEL

PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-10

LAYOUT: 1007
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-10 1:45 PM STRANGE, PETER
FILE LOCATION: V:\PRO_SRV\PROJECTS\LOBELIA\BC\CURRENT PROJECTS\SUMMIT POWER\4.0 EXECUTION\4.2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1007.DWG

DESIGNED MT
DRAWN PES
CHECKED -
APPROVED -

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D-SIZE SHEET
RCT-TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
-	-	-	-

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN
SNC·LAVALIN
1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.
Canada. V6E 3C9
Certified ISO 9001

CLIENT

DRAWING SCALE: 1" = 600'
0 50 125 250 500
SCALE IN FEET

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

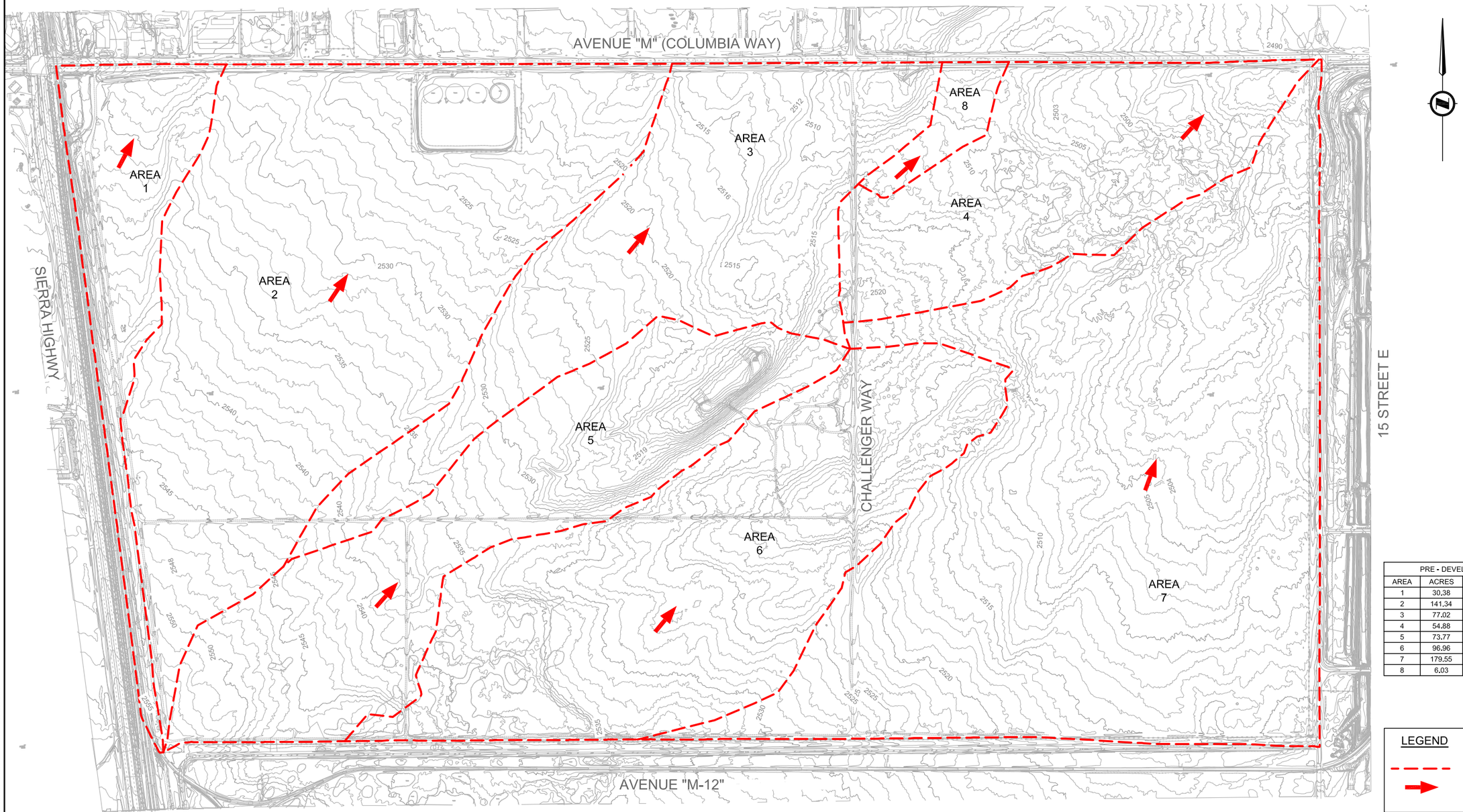
LIMIT FOR CLEARING AND GRADING AND MEASURES FOR EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

CITY CADEX No. -
CONSULTANT No. -
DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1007 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS TO:

APPENDIX A

Pre- and Post-Development Drainage Plans (Drawings 630636-41DK-1005 and 1006)



PRE - DEVELOPMENT SITE DRAINAGE				
AREA	ACRES	CN	Q 2, cfs	Q 100, cfs
1	30.38	63	0.041	5.913
2	141.34	63	0.191	19.70
3	77.02	63	0.104	13.31
4	54.88	63	0.074	13.40
5	73.77	63	0.099	14.74
6	96.96	63	0.132	22.84
7	179.55	63	0.241	31.64
8	6.03	63	0.008	1.238

LEGEND

CATCHMENT AREA

OVERLAND FLOW

PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-25

LAYOUT: 1005
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-25 3:02 PM STOYCHEV, KALOYAN
FILE LOCATION: W:\4.2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1005.DWG

DESIGNED T. LIU
DRAWN D. LIU
CHECKED S. S. DEEPAK
APPROVED S. S. DEEPAK

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D-SIZE SHEET
RCT-TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
PA	2015-08-25	ISSUED FOR REVIEW	SSD

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN
SNC•LAVALIN
1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.,
Canada, V6E 3C9
Certified ISO 9001

CLIENT

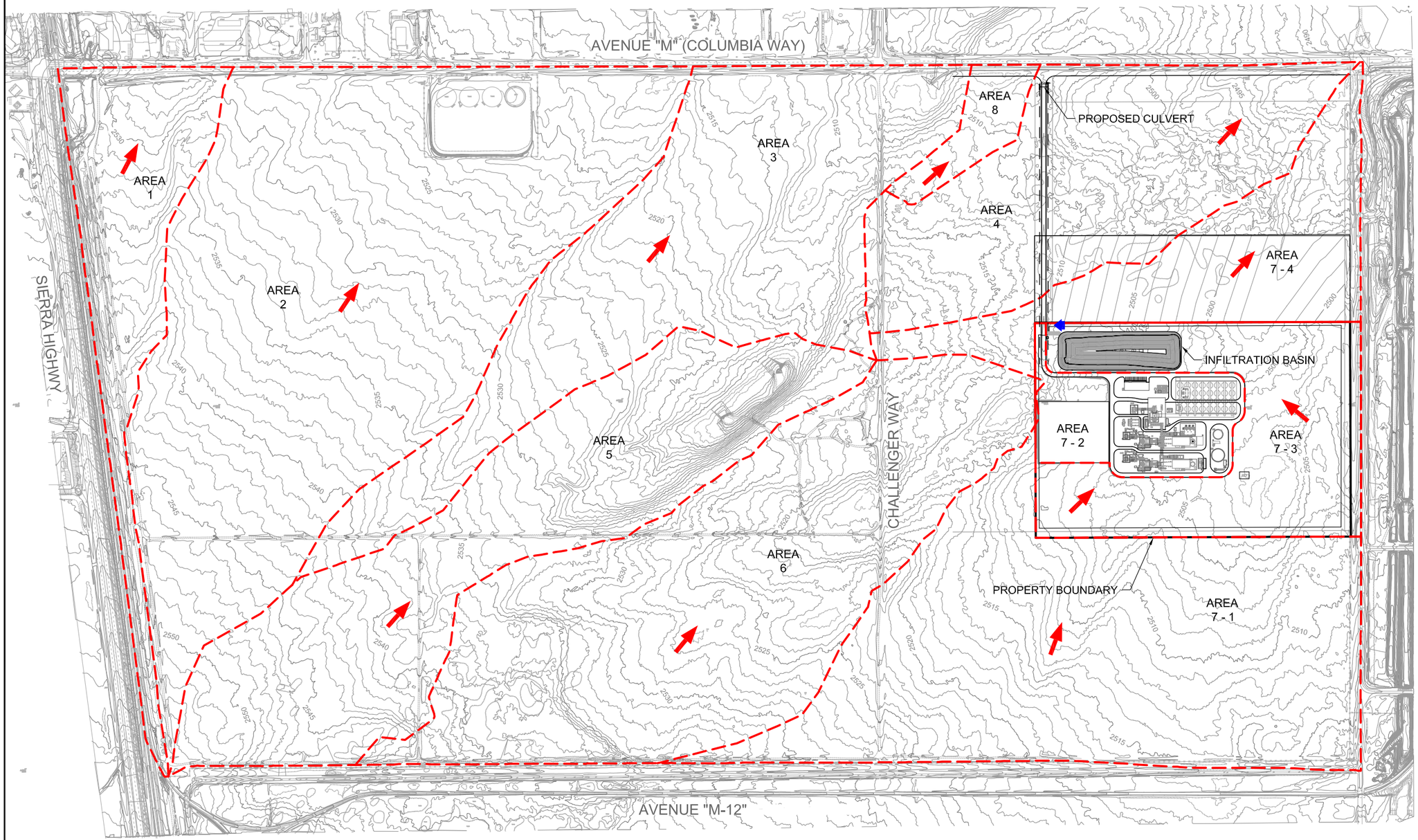
DRAWING SCALE: 1" = 600'
0 50 125 250 500
SCALE IN FEET

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

PRE - DEVELOPMENT DRAINAGE

CITY CARDEX No. -
CONSULTANT No. -
DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1005 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS



POST - DEVELOPMENT SITE DRAINAGE				
AREA	ACRES	CN	Q 2, cfs	Q 100, cfs
1	30.38	63	0.041	5.913
2	141.34	63	0.191	19.70
3	77.02	63	0.104	13.31
4	54.88	63	0.074	13.40
5	73.77	63	0.099	14.74
6	96.96	63	0.132	22.84
7 - 1	94.92	63	0.129	18.48
7 - 2	15.47	98	15.260	43.78
7 - 3	37.07	85	9.688	71.09
7 - 4	32.19	63	0.045	12.12
8	6.03	63	0.008	1.238

LEGEND

- CATCHMENT AREA
- EMERGENCY SPILL ROUTE
- OVERLAND FLOW
- CULVERT

PRELIMINARY
NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION
2015-08-25

LAYOUT: 1006
PLOT DATE: 2015-08-25 2:42 PM STOYCHEV, KALOYAN
FILE LOCATION: \\SL2606\SUMMIT_POWER\4.0 EXECUTION\4.2 ENGINEERING\CIVIL\DK - SKETCHES\630636-41DK-1003 AND 1006.DWG

DESIGNED T. LIU
DRAWN D. LIU
CHECKED S. S. DEEPAK
APPROVED S. S. DEEPAK

SCALE BAR AS PER 1:1 ANSI D-SIZE SHEET
RCT-TITLEBLOCK.dwg REVISION A

REVISION HISTORY

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	BY
PA	2015-08-25	ISSUED FOR REVIEW	SSD

PROFESSIONAL SEAL

KEY PLAN

DESIGN
SNC·LAVALIN
1800 - 1075 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, B. C.
Canada, V6E 3C9

CLIENT

DRAWING SCALE: 1" = 600'
0 50 125 250 500
SCALE IN FEET

PALMDALE ENERGY CENTER

POST - DEVELOPMENT DRAINAGE

CITY CARDEX No. -
CONSULTANT No. -
DRAWING No. 630636-41DK-1006 PA

SUPERCEDES PRINTS OF THIS NUMBER WITH LETTERS PREVIOUS

APPENDIX B

Pre-Development Drainage Calculations

Hydrograph Summary Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No.	Hydrograph type (origin)	Peak flow (cfs)	Time interval (min)	Time to Peak (min)	Hyd. volume (cuft)	Inflow hyd(s)	Maximum elevation (ft)	Total strge used (cuft)	Hydrograph Description
1	SCS Runoff	0.041	1	1363	845	------	------	------	Pre Area 1
2	SCS Runoff	0.191	1	1385	3,922	------	------	------	Pre Area 2
3	SCS Runoff	0.104	1	1369	2,131	------	------	------	Pre Area 3
4	SCS Runoff	0.074	1	1354	1,518	------	------	------	Pre Area 4
5	SCS Runoff	0.100	1	1362	2,041	------	------	------	Pre Area 5
6	SCS Runoff	0.132	1	1355	2,703	------	------	------	Pre Area 6
7	SCS Runoff	0.241	1	1368	4,943	------	------	------	Pre Area 7
8	SCS Runoff	0.008	1	1360	166	------	------	------	Pre Area 8

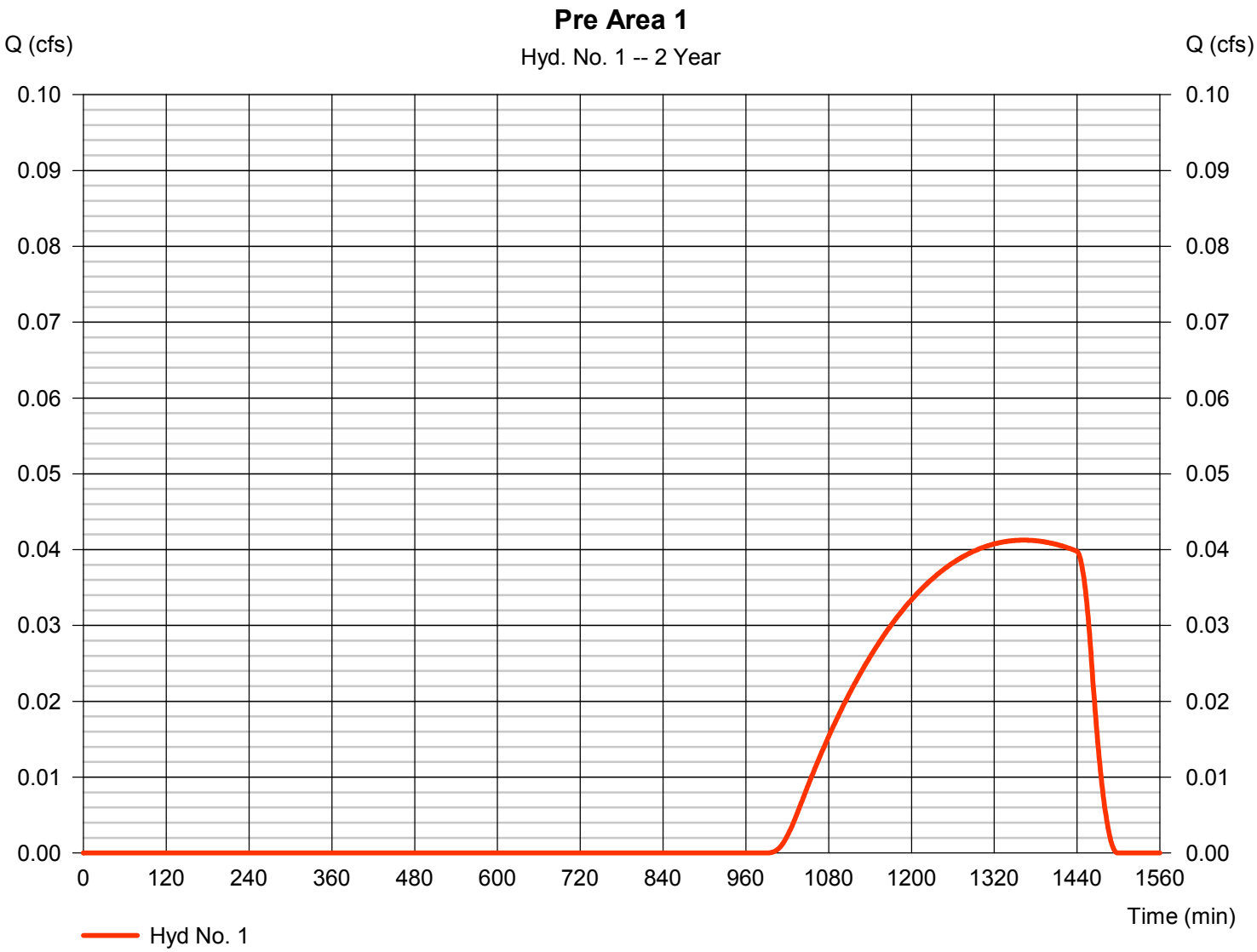
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 1

Pre Area 1

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.041 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1363 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 845 cuft
Drainage area	= 30.380 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 36.70 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No. 1

Pre Area 1

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.60		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.92**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.92**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1670.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.60		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.25		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 22.27**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**22.27**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 130.00		10.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 130.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.60		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=4.44						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2279.0		250.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 8.56**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**8.56**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 36.70 min

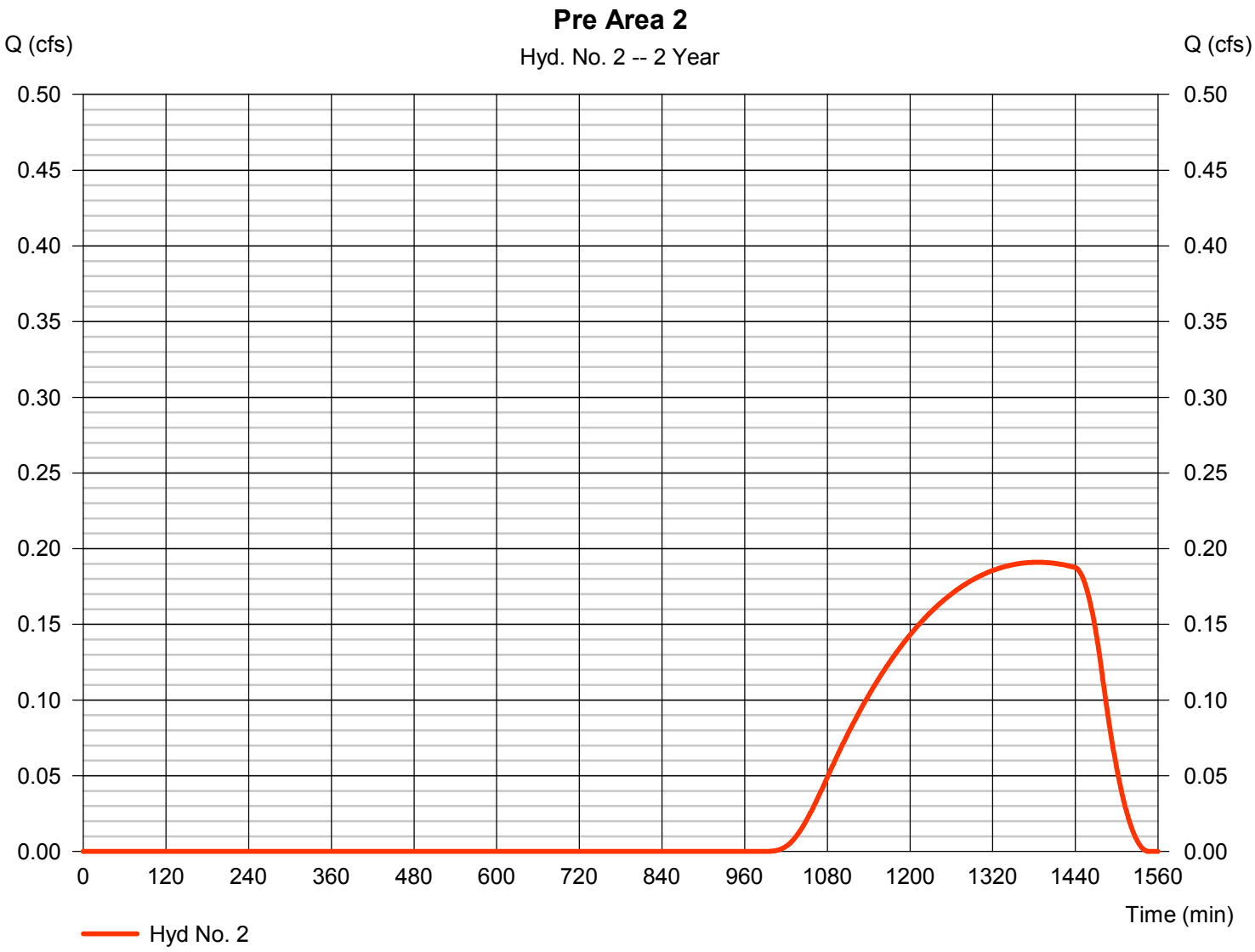
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 2

Pre Area 2

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.191 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1385 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 3,922 cuft
Drainage area	= 141.340 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 67.10 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 2

Pre Area 2

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.04**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.04**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 4730.00		200.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.53		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 51.50**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**51.50**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 130.00		200.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 130.00		200.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.90		0.90		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.44						
			5.44				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2000.0		1444.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 6.13**	**+**	**4.43**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**10.56**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 67.10 min

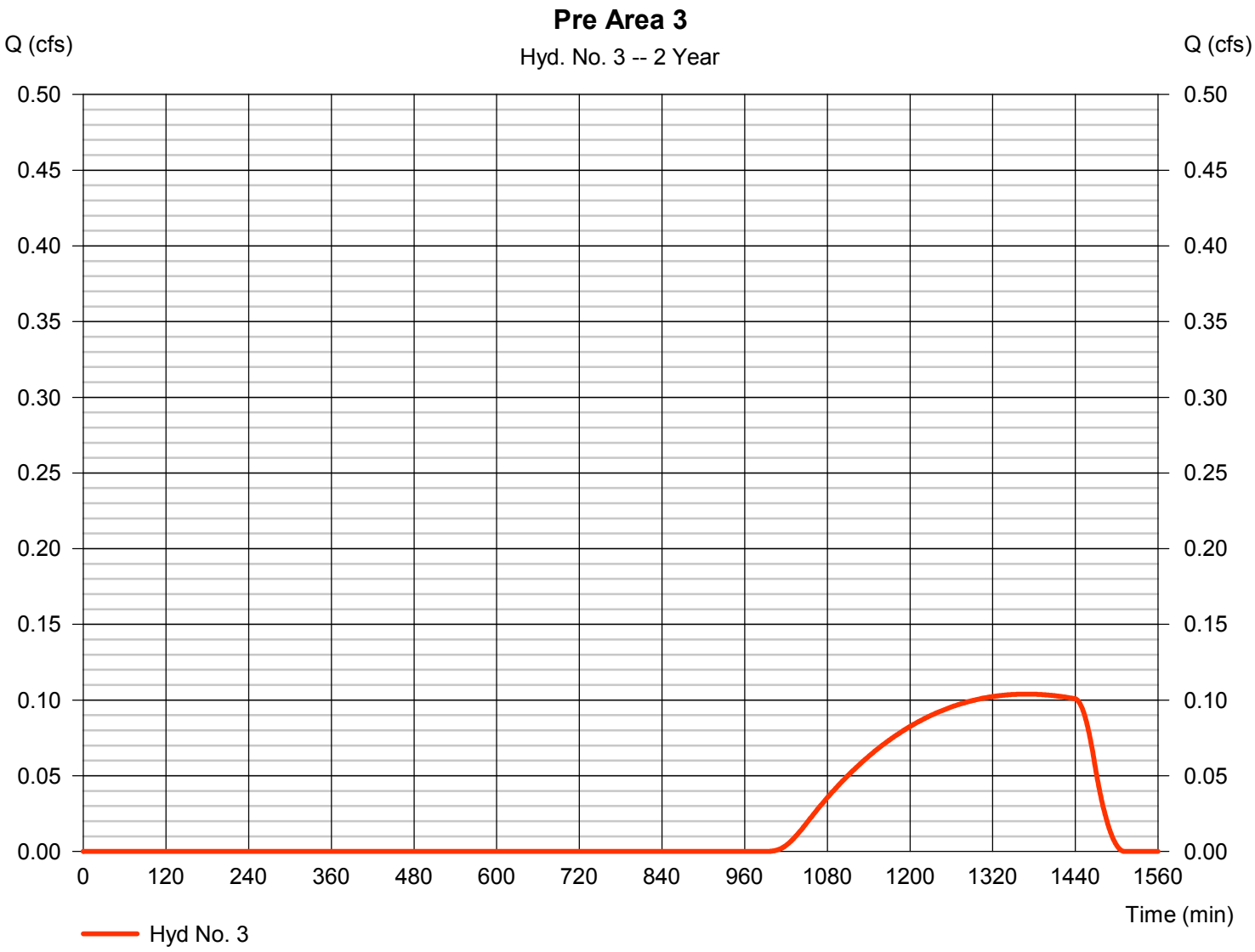
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 3

Pre Area 3

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.104 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1369 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,131 cuft
Drainage area	= 77.020 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 44.50 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No. 3

Pre Area 3

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.80		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.28**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.28**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 3140.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.80		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.44		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 36.26**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**36.26**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 130.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 130.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.80		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.13						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})913.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 2.97**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**2.97**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 44.50 min

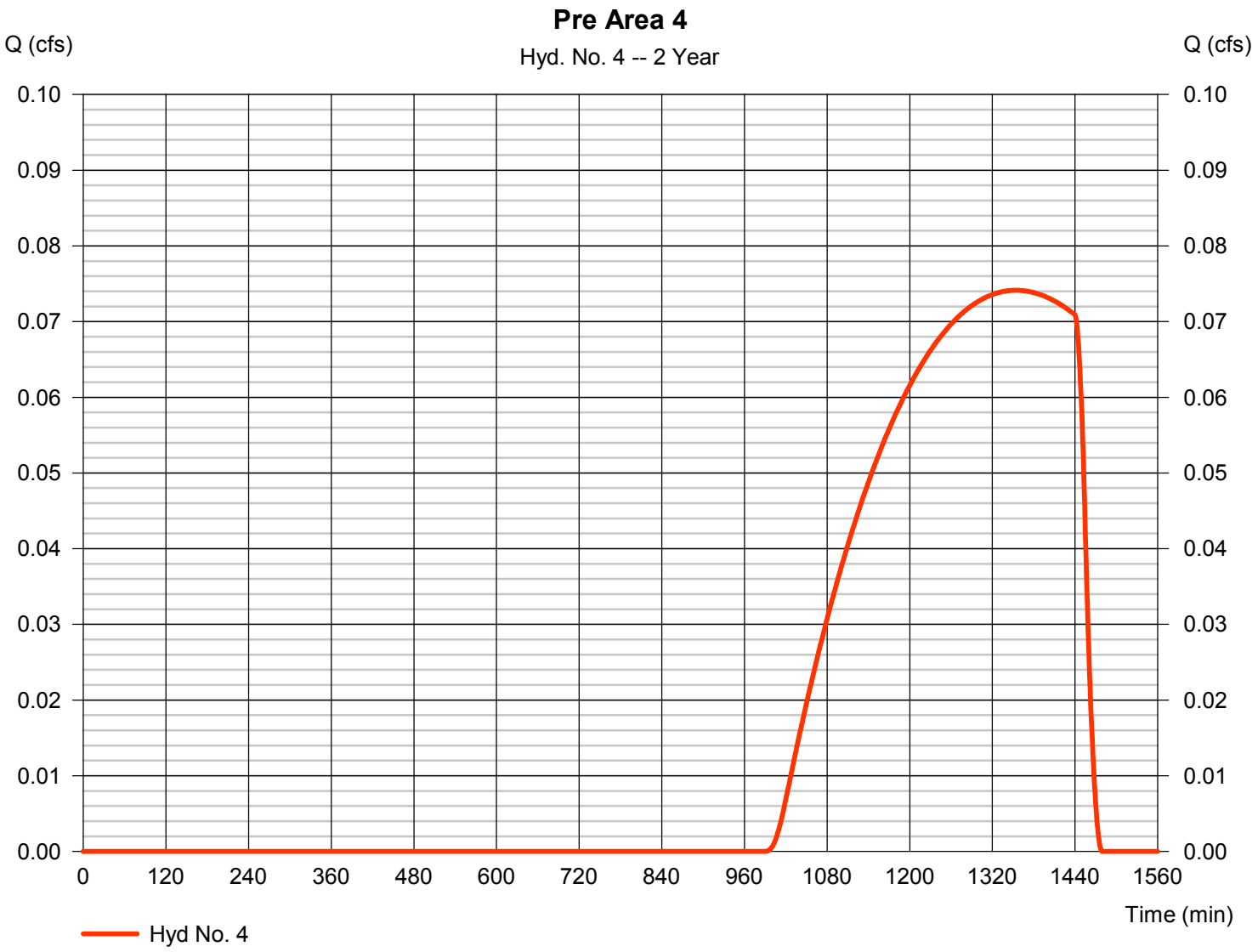
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 4

Pre Area 4

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.074 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1354 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 1,518 cuft
Drainage area	= 54.880 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 23.80 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 4

Pre Area 4

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 4.65**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**4.65**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1601.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.69		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 15.77**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**15.77**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=6.01						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})1220.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 3.38**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**3.38**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 23.80 min

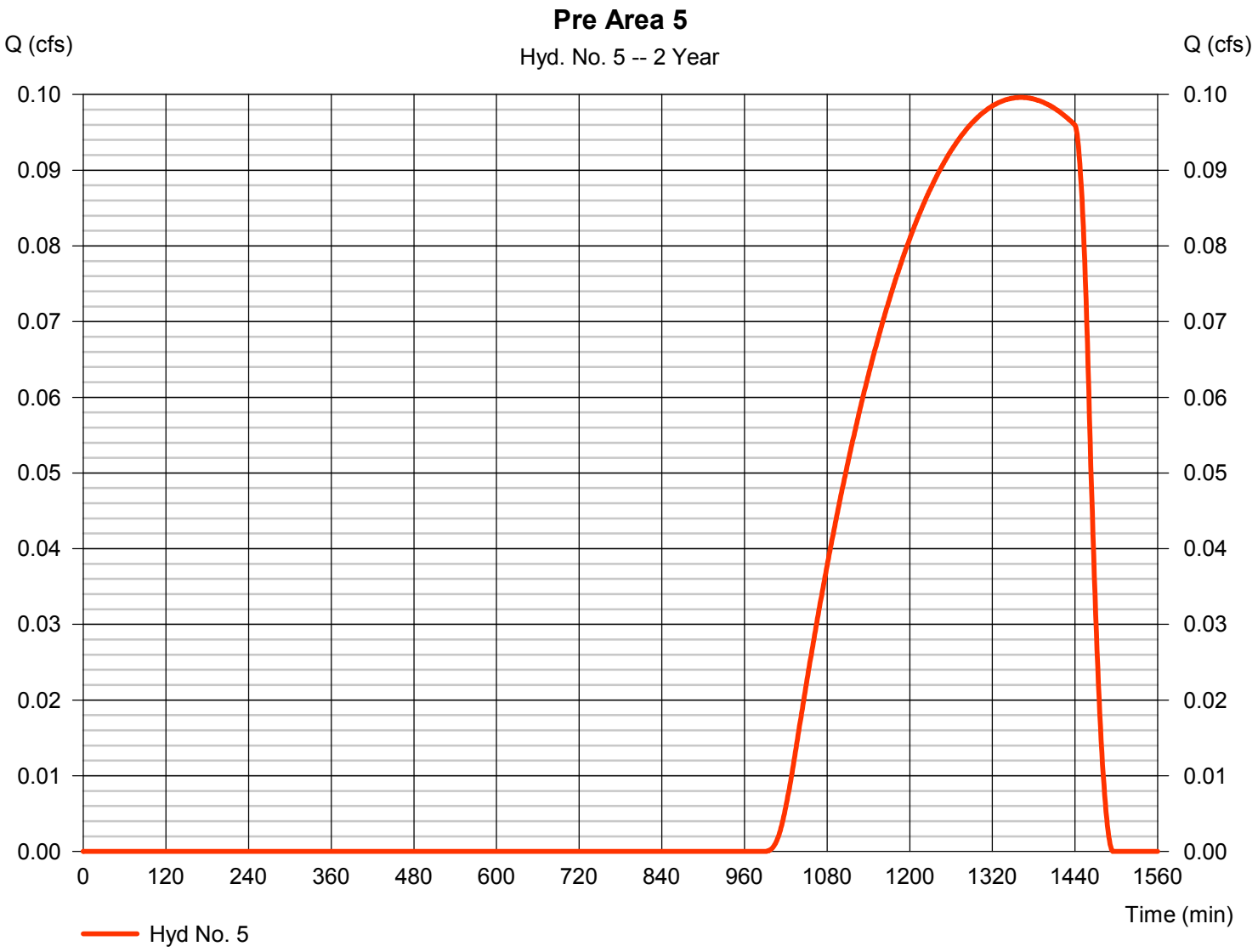
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 5

Pre Area 5

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.100 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1362 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,041 cuft
Drainage area	= 73.770 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 34.40 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 5

Pre Area 5

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.04**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.04**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 2404.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.53		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 26.18**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**26.18**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 25.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 25.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.70		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=7.47						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})1413.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 3.15**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**3.15**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 34.40 min

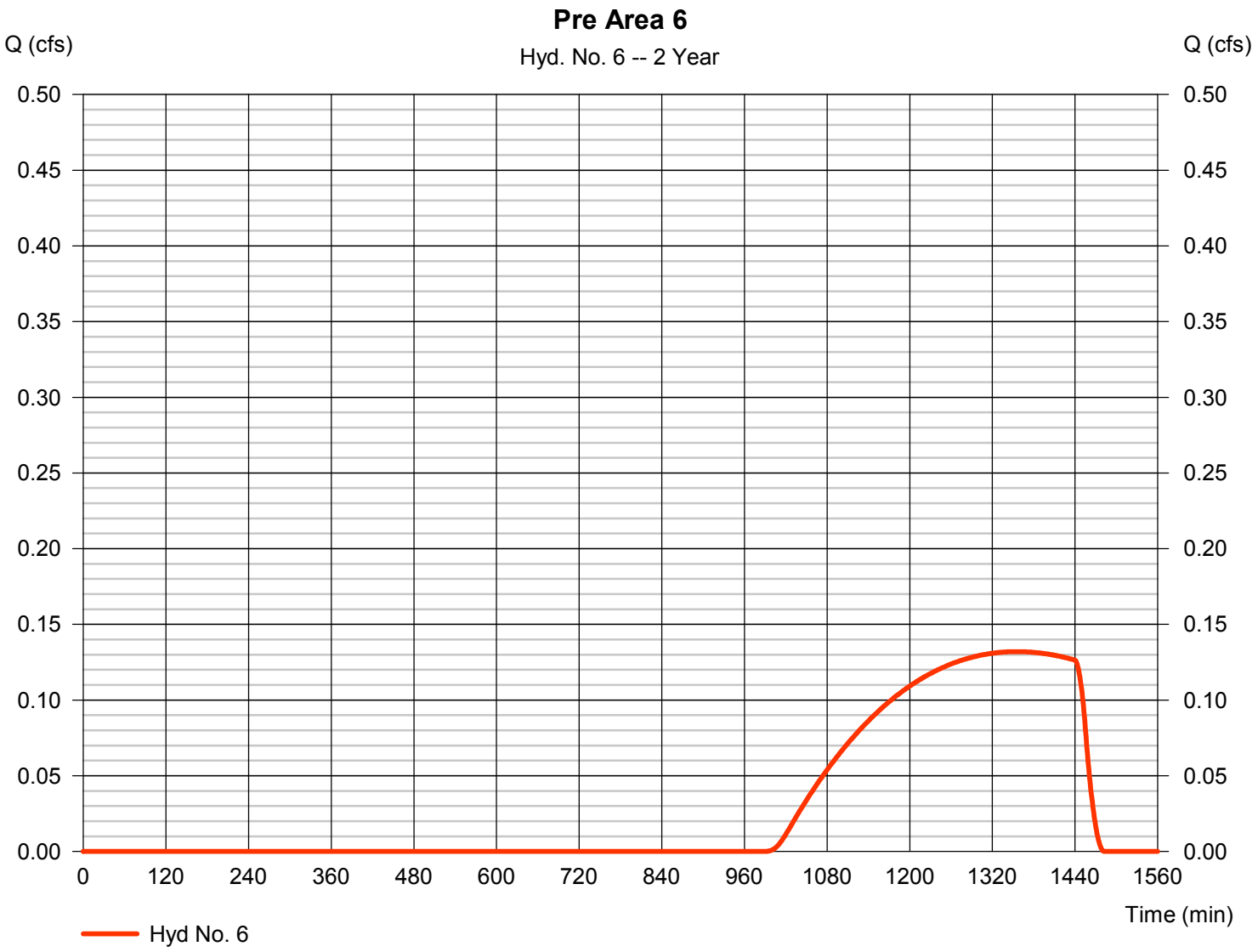
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 6

Pre Area 6

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.132 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1355 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,703 cuft
Drainage area	= 96.960 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 25.70 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 6

Pre Area 6

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.57**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.57**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1210.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.35		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 14.94**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**14.94**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.013		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=9.59						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2996.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.21**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.21**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 25.70 min

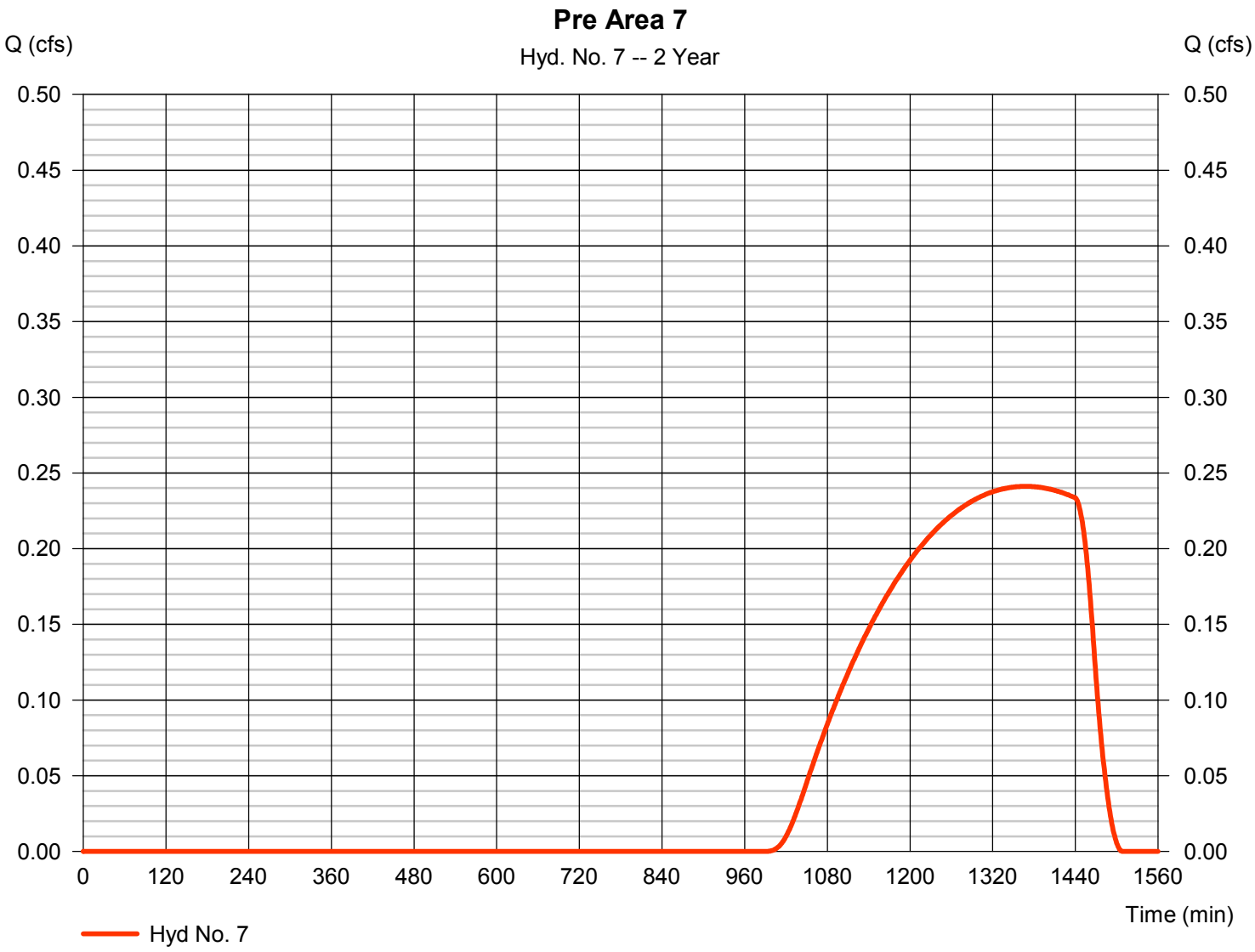
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 7

Pre Area 7

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.241 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1368 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 4,943 cuft
Drainage area	= 179.550 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 43.00 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 7

Pre Area 7

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.50		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 6.37**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**6.37**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1727.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.50		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.14		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 25.23**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**25.23**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 60.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 65.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.70						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})3883.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 11.36**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**11.36**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 43.00 min

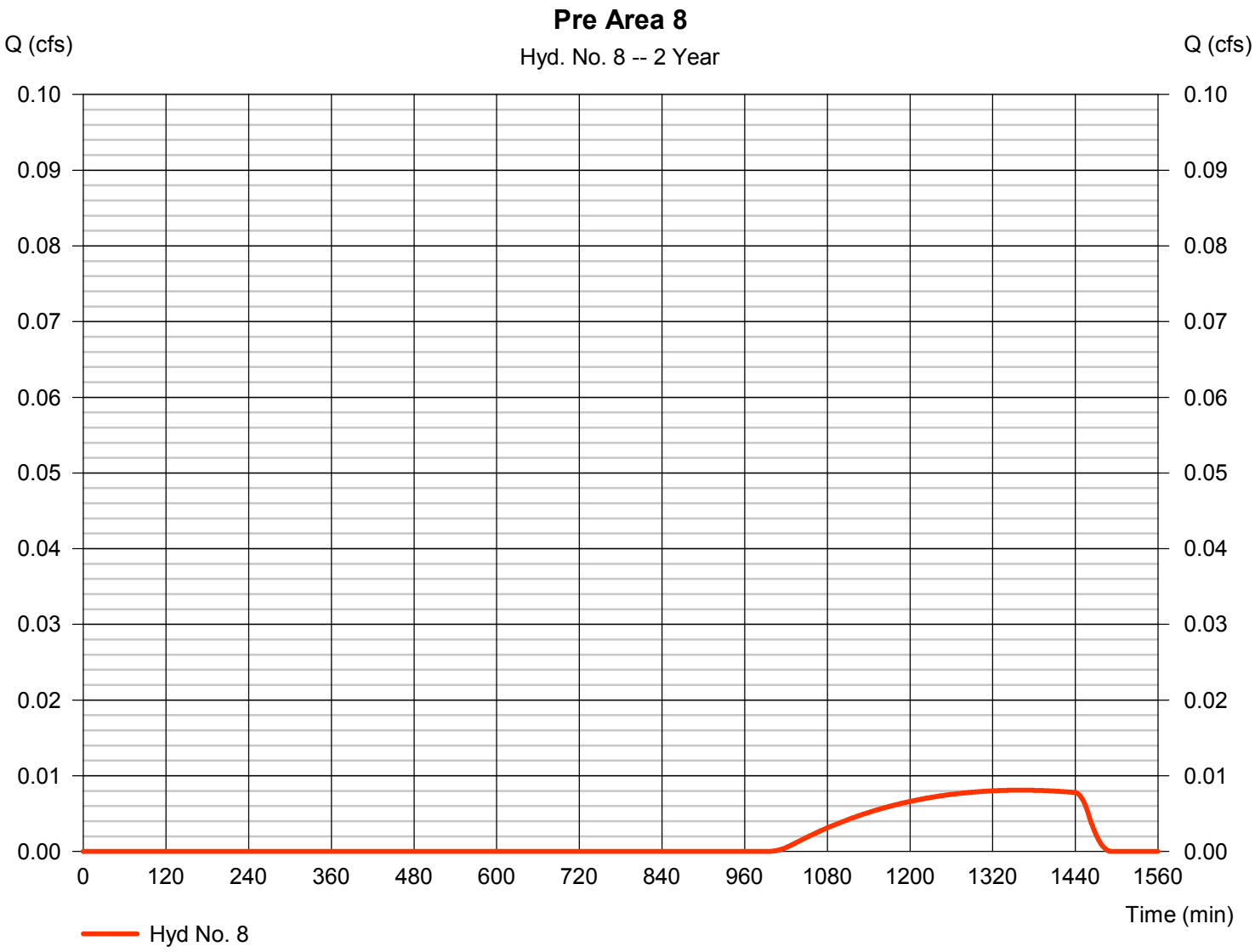
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 8

Pre Area 8

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.008 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 1360 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 166 cuft
Drainage area	= 6.030 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 33.70 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 8

Pre Area 8

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.57**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.57**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 2221.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.35		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 27.42**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**27.42**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=4.79						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})200.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.70**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.70**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 33.70 min

Hydrograph Summary Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No.	Hydrograph type (origin)	Peak flow (cfs)	Time interval (min)	Time to Peak (min)	Hyd. volume (cuft)	Inflow hyd(s)	Maximum elevation (ft)	Total strge used (cuft)	Hydrograph Description
1	SCS Runoff	5.913	1	620	87,070	------	------	------	Pre Area 1
2	SCS Runoff	19.70	1	651	404,055	------	------	------	Pre Area 2
3	SCS Runoff	13.31	1	629	219,494	------	------	------	Pre Area 3
4	SCS Runoff	13.40	1	611	156,399	------	------	------	Pre Area 4
5	SCS Runoff	14.74	1	619	210,232	------	------	------	Pre Area 5
6	SCS Runoff	22.84	1	613	278,478	------	------	------	Pre Area 6
7	SCS Runoff	31.64	1	627	509,228	------	------	------	Pre Area 7
8	SCS Runoff	1.238	1	617	17,077	------	------	------	Pre Area 8

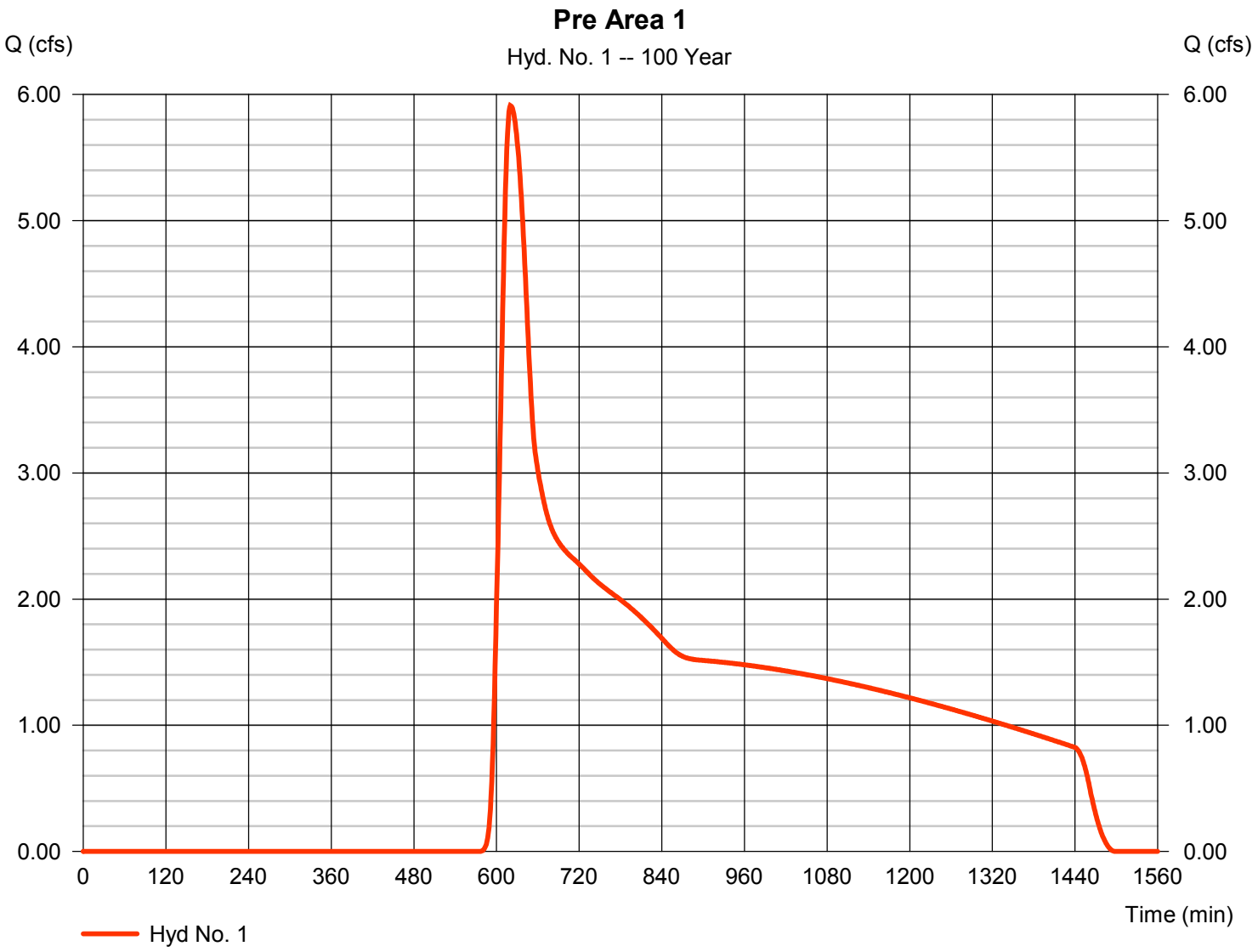
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 1

Pre Area 1

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 5.913 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 620 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 87,070 cuft
Drainage area	= 30.380 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 36.70 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



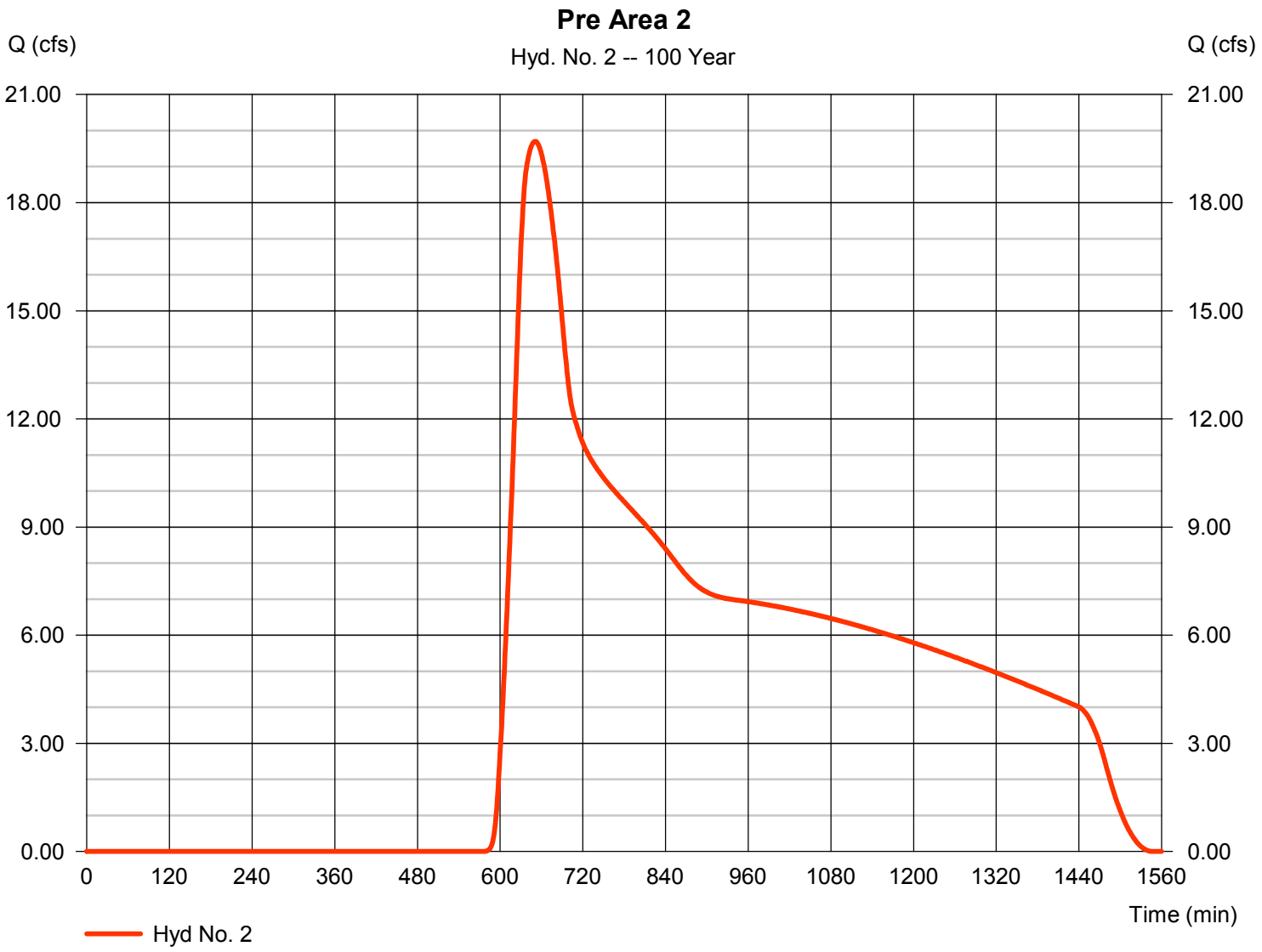
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 2

Pre Area 2

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 19.70 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 651 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 404,055 cuft
Drainage area	= 141.340 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 67.10 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



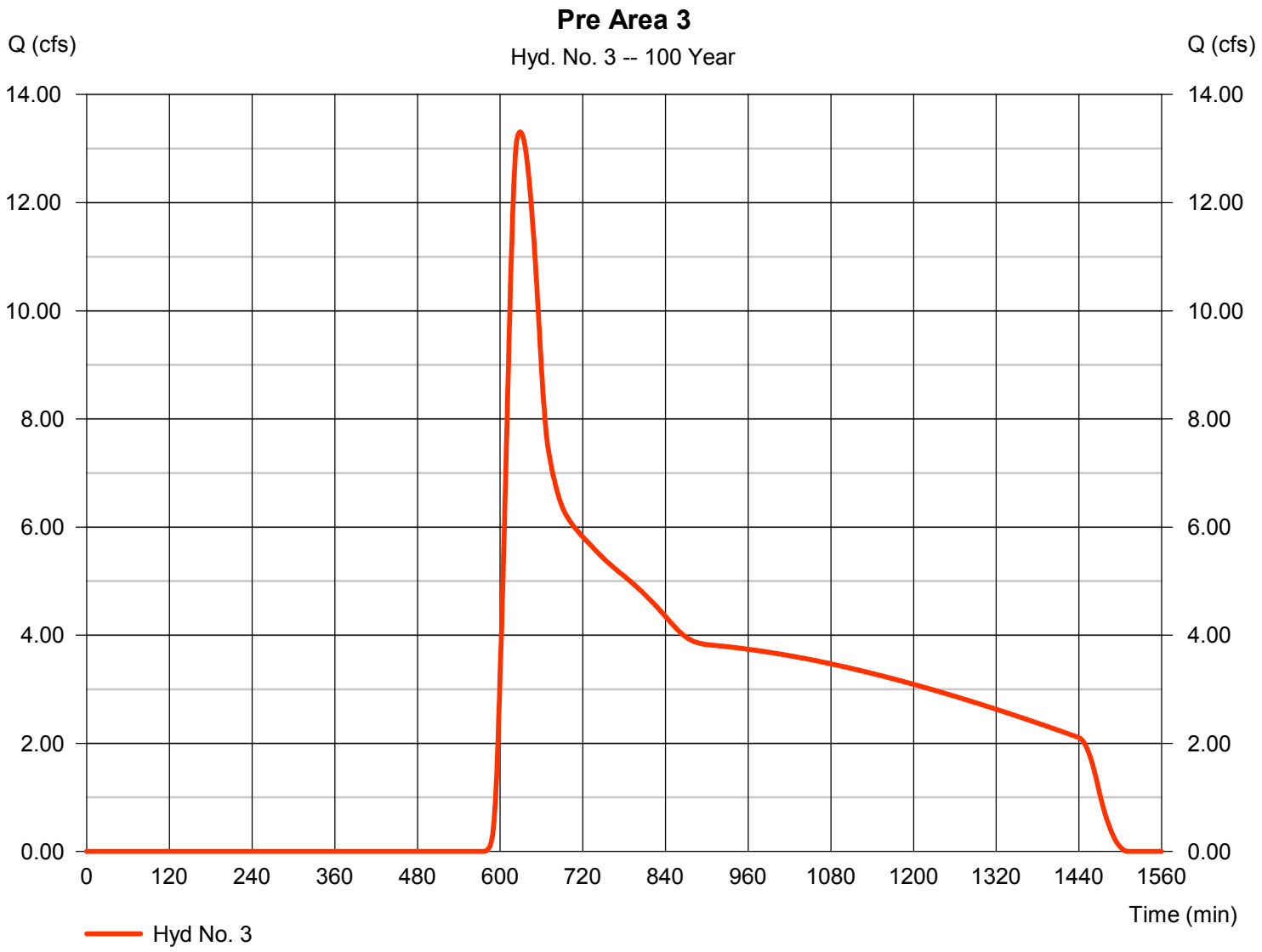
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 3

Pre Area 3

Hydrograph type	=	SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	=	13.31 cfs
Storm frequency	=	100 yrs	Time to peak	=	629 min
Time interval	=	1 min	Hyd. volume	=	219,494 cuft
Drainage area	=	77.020 ac	Curve number	=	63
Basin Slope	=	0.0 %	Hydraulic length	=	0 ft
Tc method	=	TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	=	44.50 min
Total precip.	=	3.75 in	Distribution	=	Type I
Storm duration	=	24 hrs	Shape factor	=	484



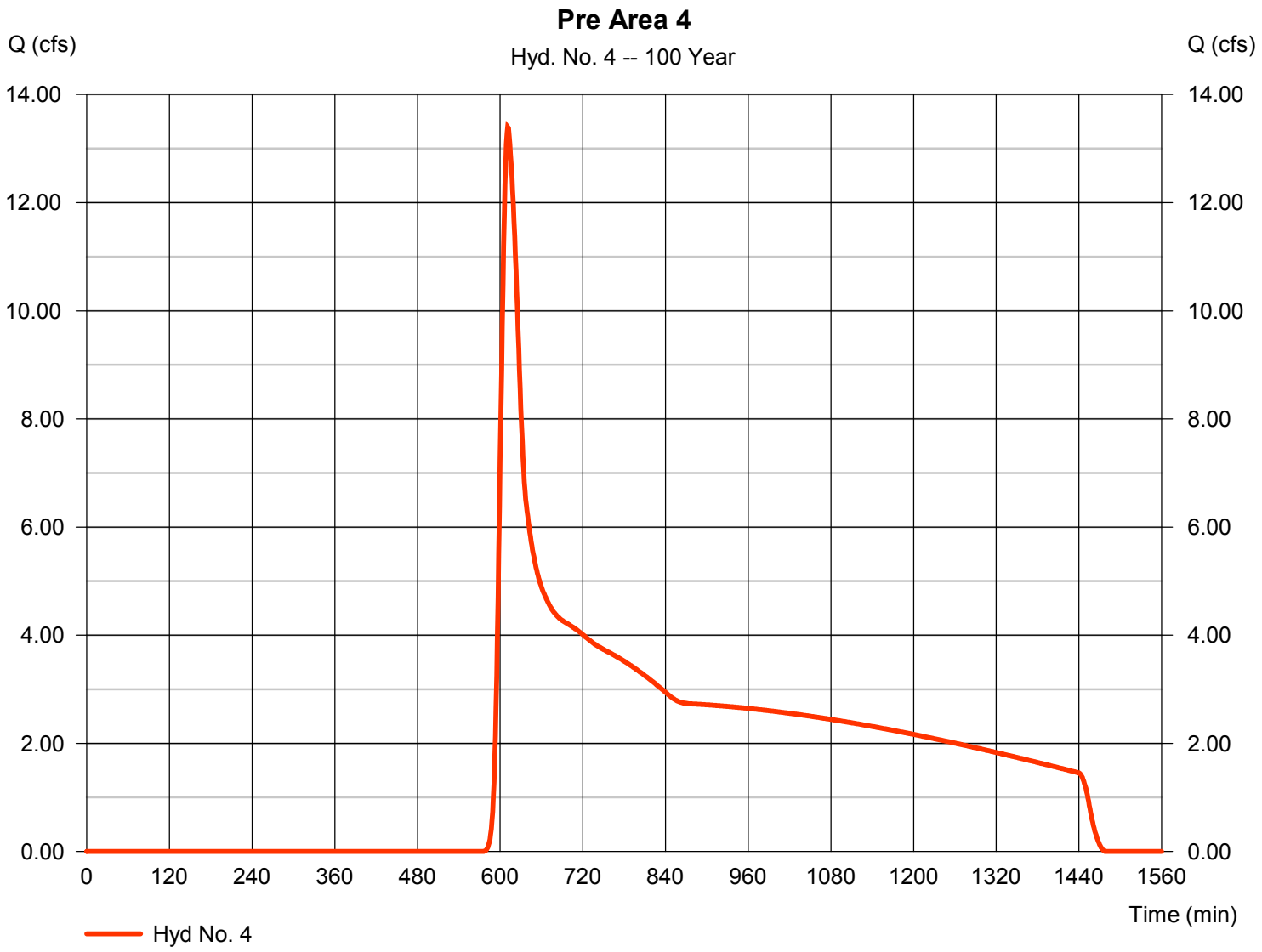
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 4

Pre Area 4

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 13.40 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 611 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 156,399 cuft
Drainage area	= 54.880 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 23.80 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



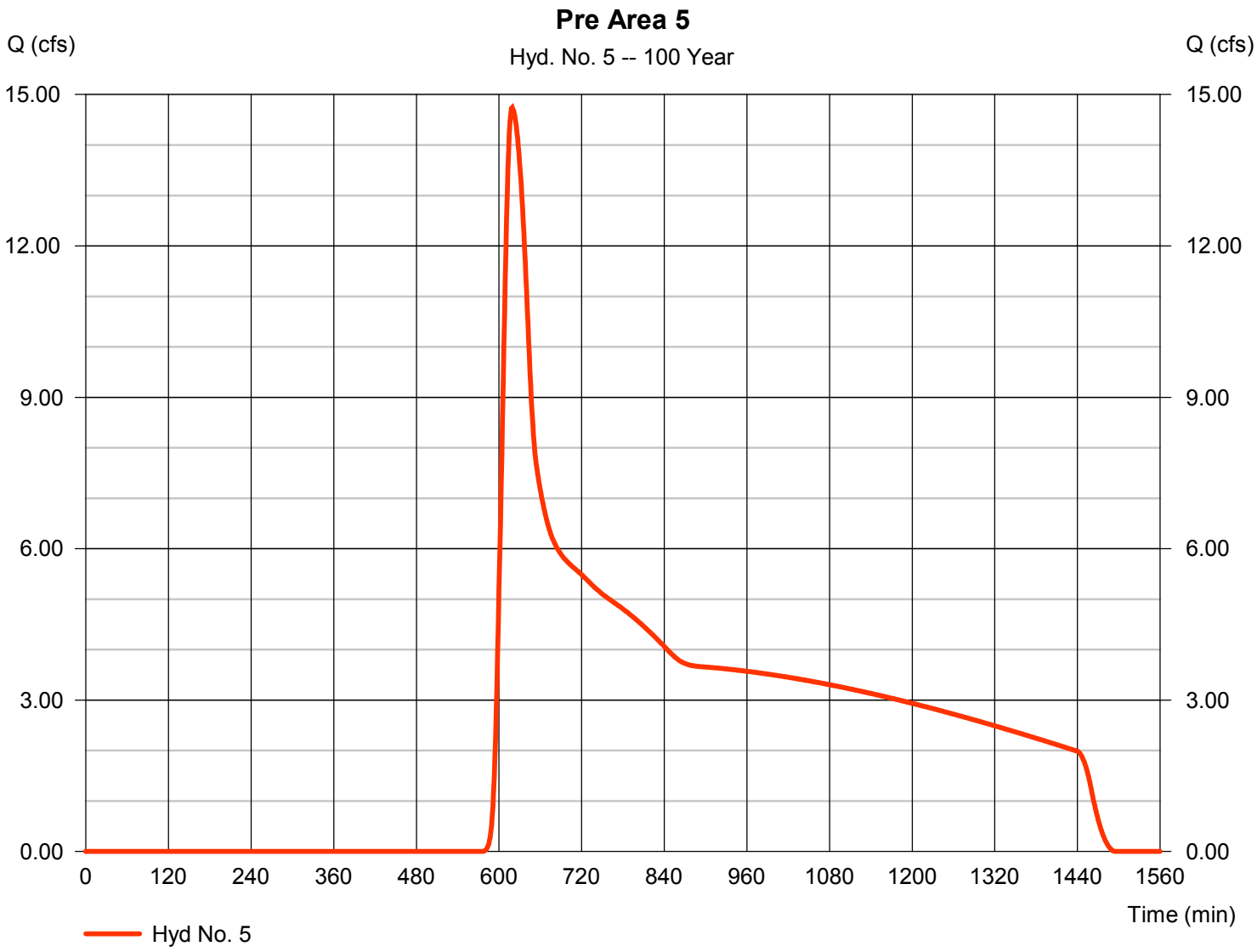
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 5

Pre Area 5

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 14.74 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 619 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 210,232 cuft
Drainage area	= 73.770 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 34.40 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



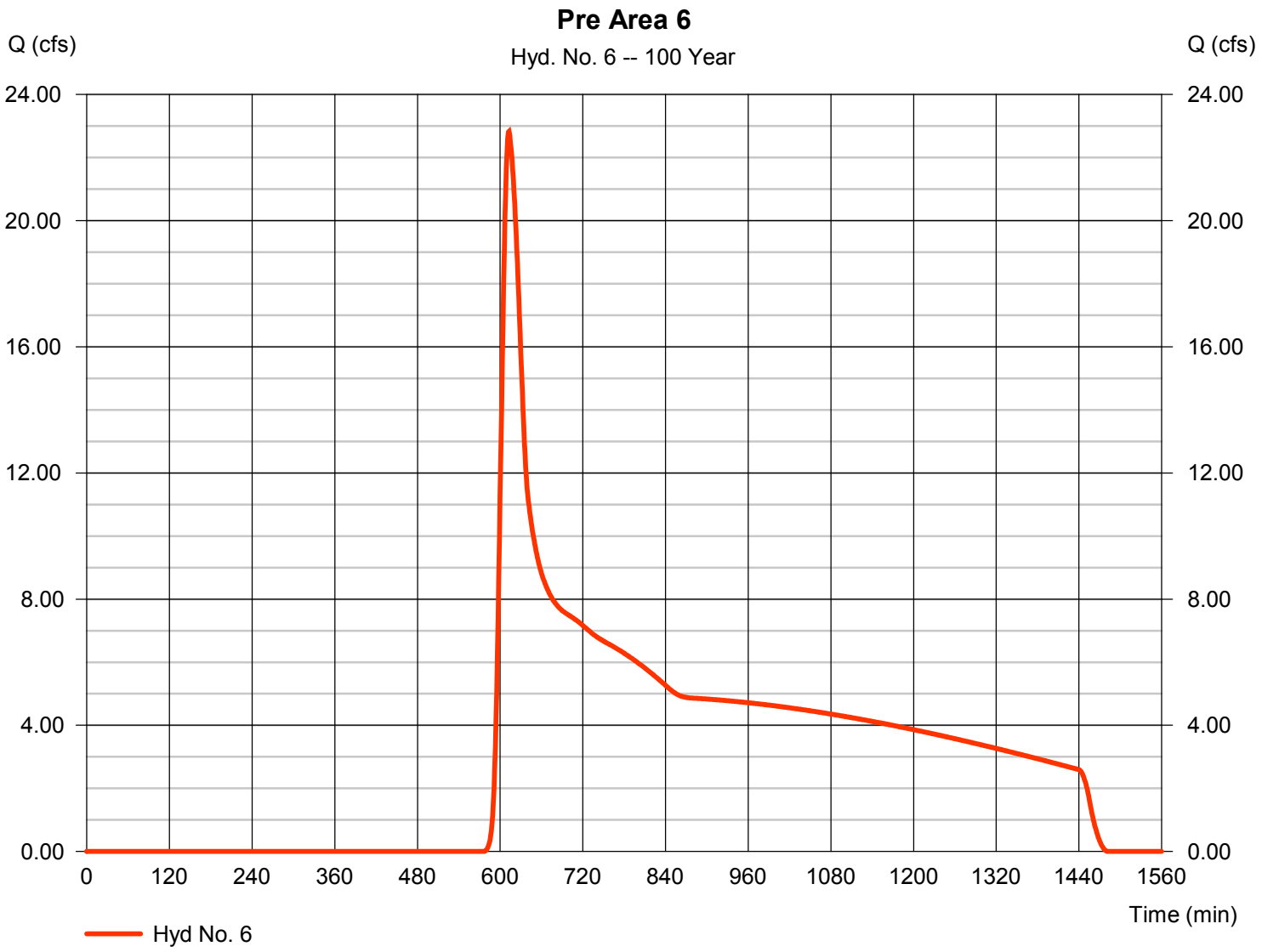
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 6

Pre Area 6

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 22.84 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 613 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 278,478 cuft
Drainage area	= 96.960 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 25.70 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



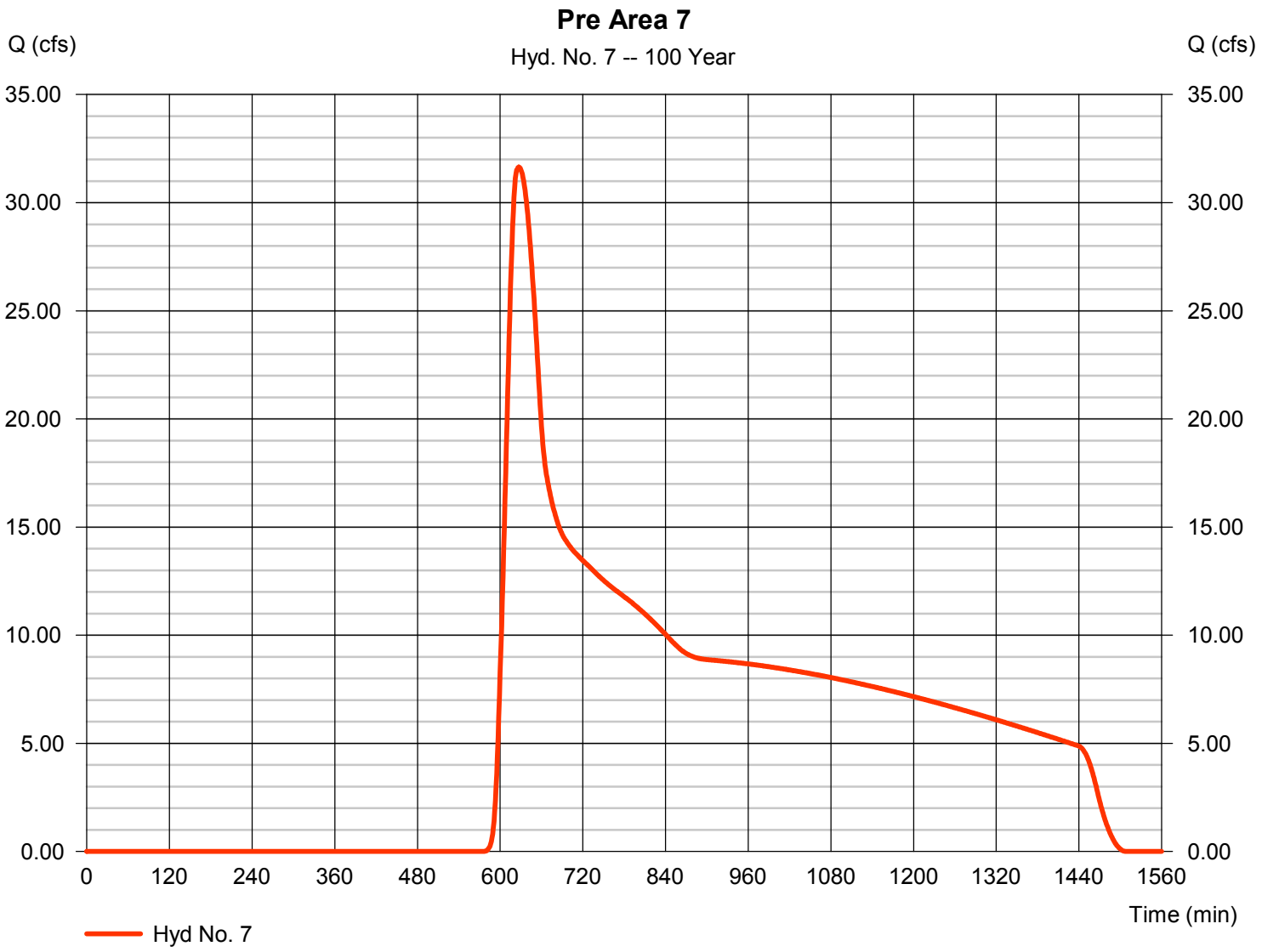
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 7

Pre Area 7

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 31.64 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 627 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 509,228 cuft
Drainage area	= 179.550 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 43.00 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



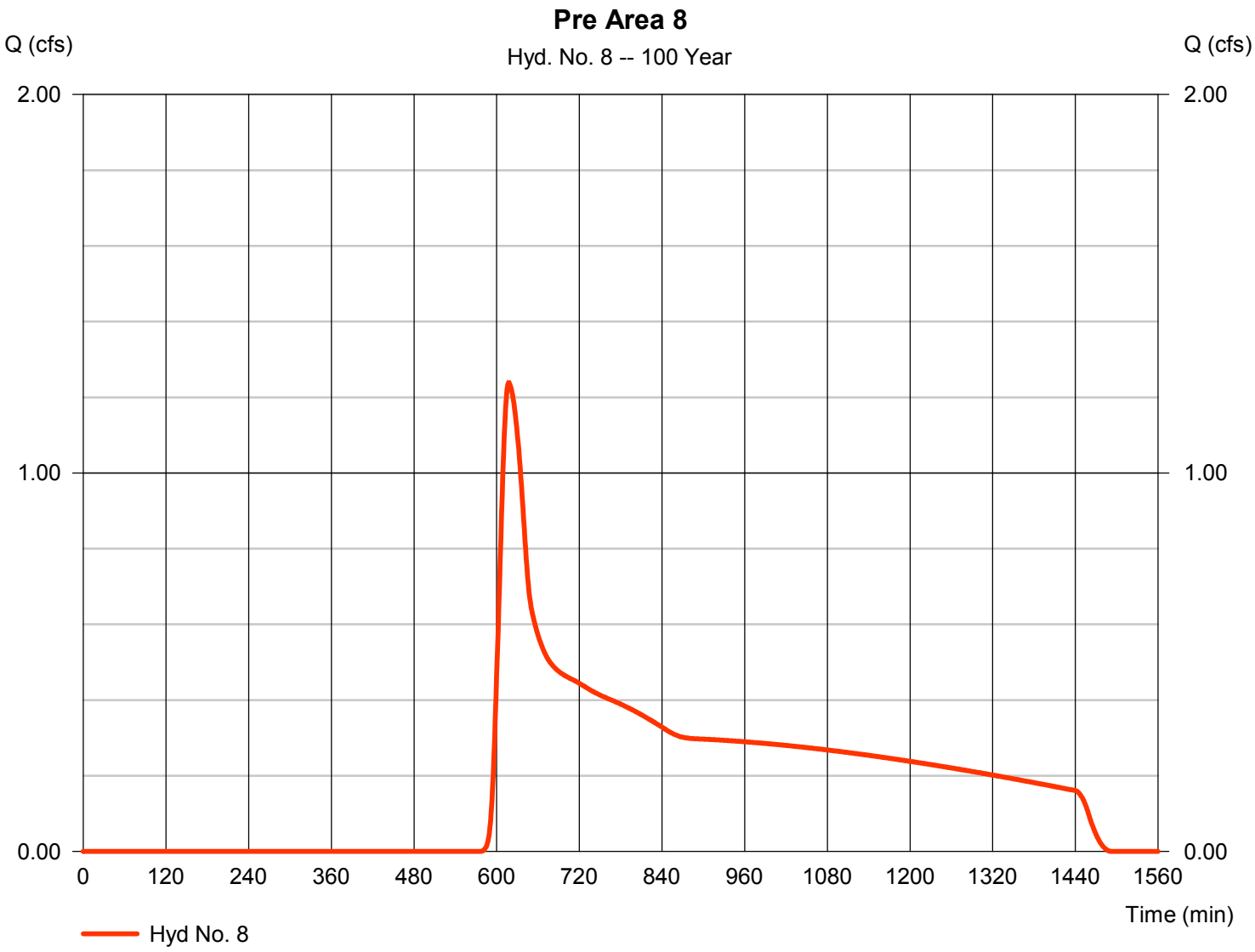
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 8

Pre Area 8

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 1.238 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 617 min
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 17,077 cuft
Drainage area	= 6.030 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 33.70 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



APPENDIX C

Post-Development Drainage Calculations

Hydrograph Summary Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No.	Hydrograph type (origin)	Peak flow (cfs)	Time interval (min)	Time to Peak (min)	Hyd. volume (cuft)	Inflow hyd(s)	Maximum elevation (ft)	Total strge used (cuft)	Hydrograph Description
1	SCS Runoff	0.041	1	1363	845	------	------	------	Post Area 1 - Unchanged
2	SCS Runoff	0.191	1	1385	3,922	------	------	------	Post Area 2- Unchanged
3	SCS Runoff	0.104	1	1369	2,131	------	------	------	Post Area 3 - Unchanged
4	SCS Runoff	0.074	1	1354	1,518	------	------	------	Post Area 4 - Unchanged
5	SCS Runoff	0.100	1	1362	2,041	------	------	------	Post Area 5 - Unchanged
6	SCS Runoff	0.132	1	1355	2,703	------	------	------	Post Area 6 - Unchanged
7	SCS Runoff	0.008	1	1360	166	------	------	------	Post Area 8 - Unchanged
8	SCS Runoff	0.129	1	1363	2,641	------	------	------	Post Area 7-1
9	SCS Runoff	15.26	1	596	67,867	------	------	------	Post Area 7-2
10	SCS Runoff	9.688	1	598	51,654	------	------	------	Post Area 7-3
11	SCS Runoff	0.045	1	1344	926	------	------	------	Post Area 7-4
12	Combine	24.83	1	597	122,161	8, 9, 10,	------	------	Post Combine to Pond
13	Reservoir	0.000	1	n/a	0	12	2490.95	122,161	Infiltration Basin 1

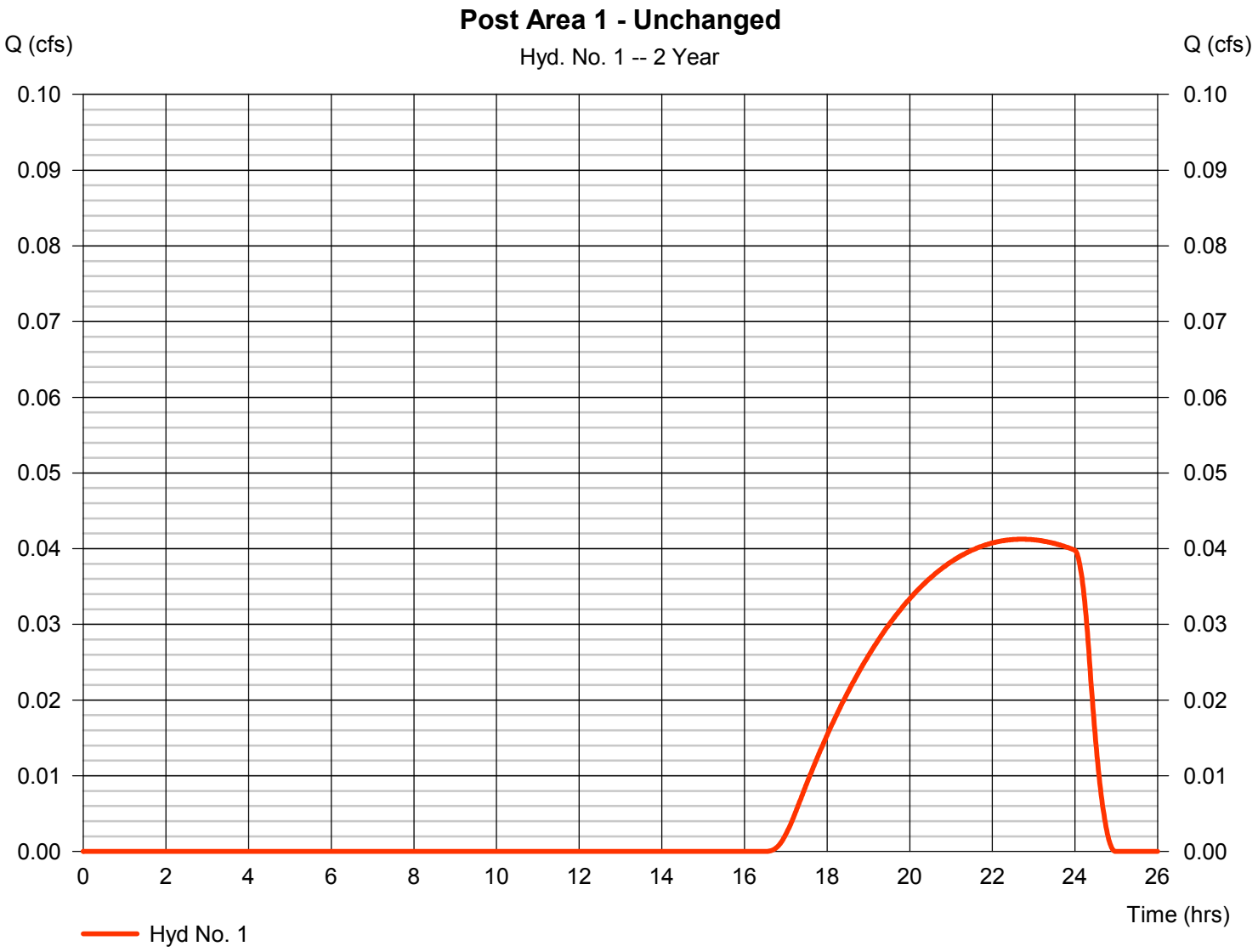
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 1

Post Area 1 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.041 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.72 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 845 cuft
Drainage area	= 30.380 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 36.70 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No. 1

Post Area 1 - Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.60		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.92**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.92**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1670.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.60		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.25		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 22.27**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**22.27**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 130.00		10.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 130.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.60		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=4.44						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2279.0		250.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 8.56**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**8.56**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 36.70 min

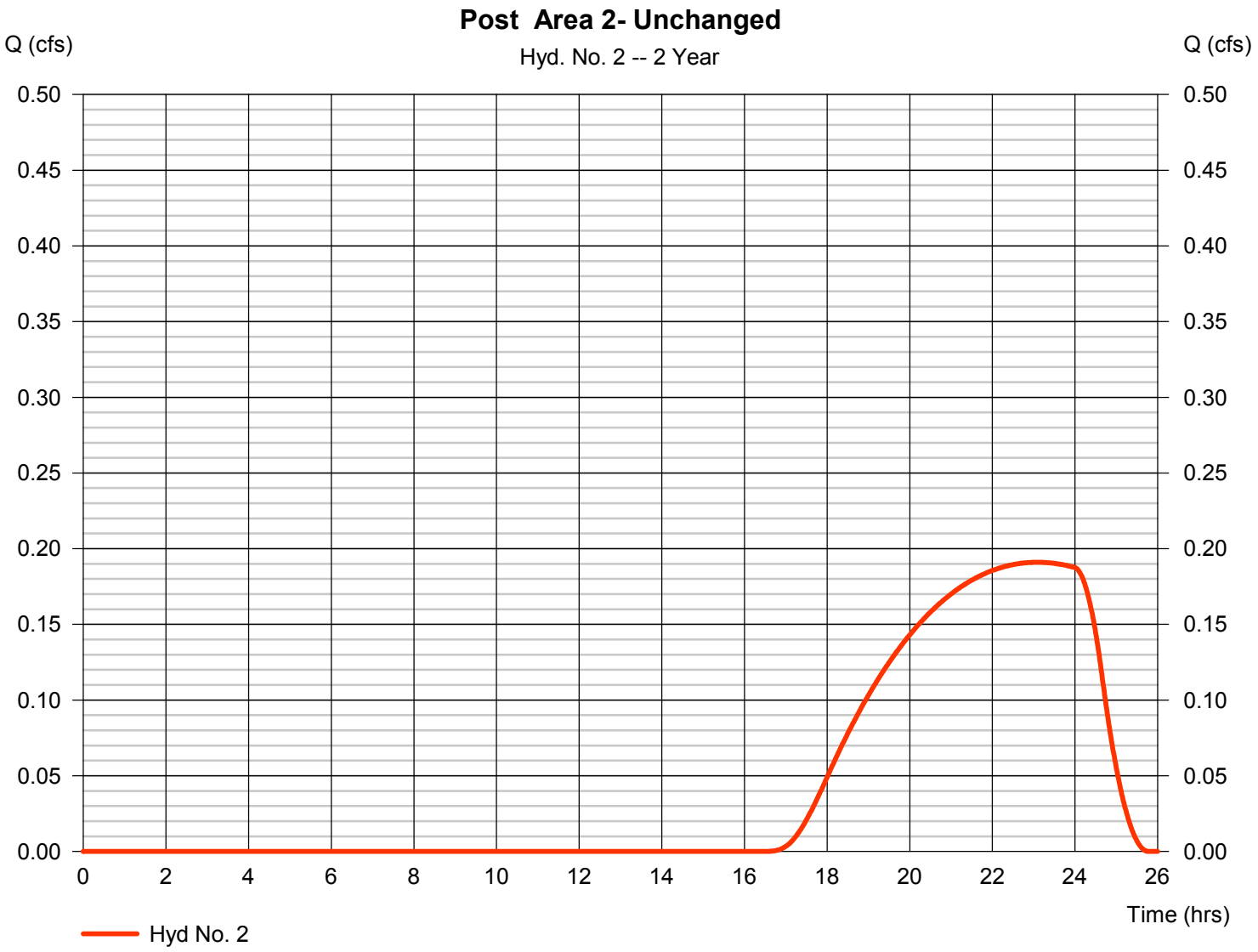
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 2

Post Area 2- Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.191 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 23.08 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 3,922 cuft
Drainage area	= 141.340 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 67.10 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 2

Post Area 2- Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.04**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.04**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 4730.00		200.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.53		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 51.50**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**51.50**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 130.00		200.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 130.00		200.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.90		0.90		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.44		5.44		0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2000.0		1444.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 6.13**	**+**	**4.43**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**10.56**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 67.10 min

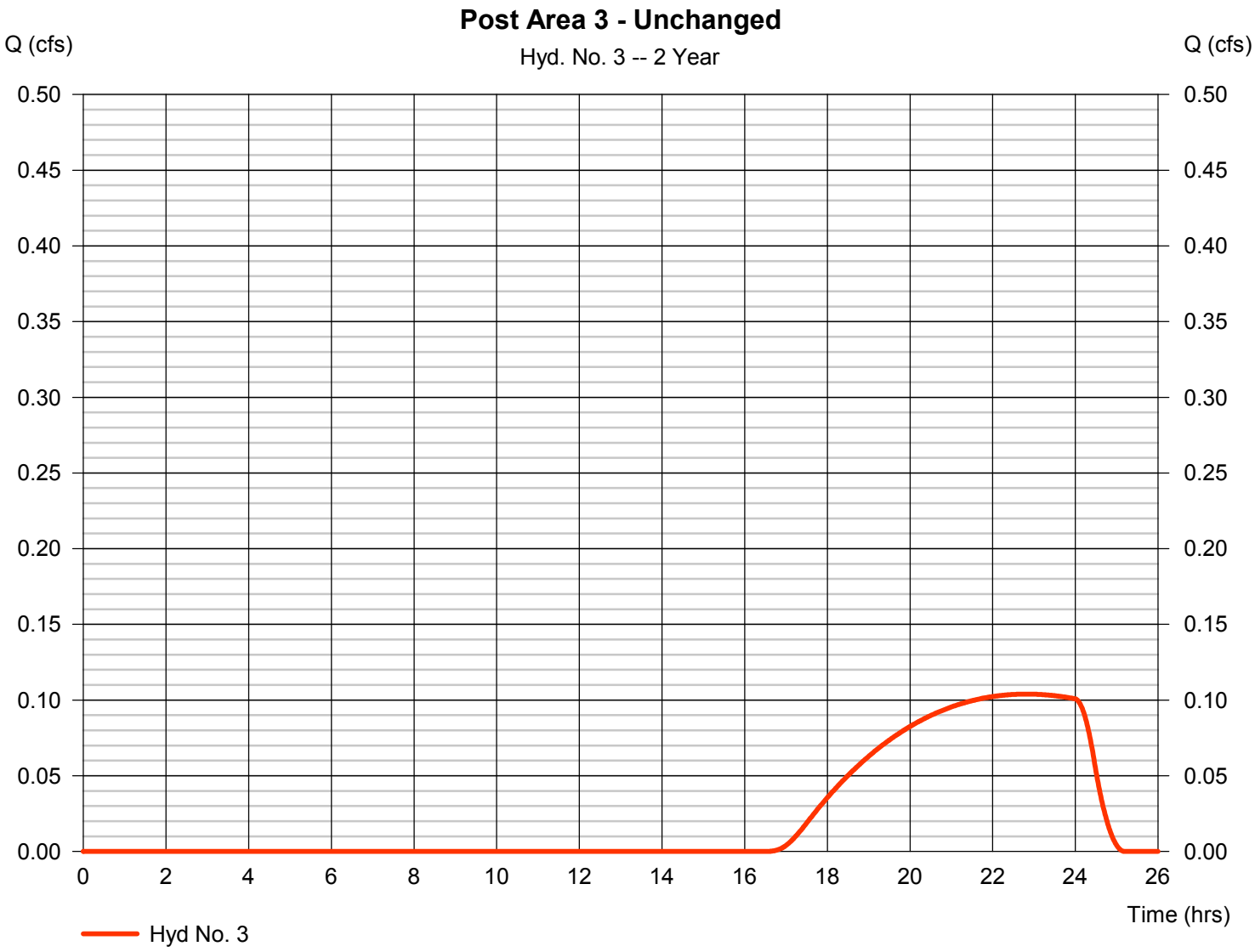
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 3

Post Area 3 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.104 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.82 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,131 cuft
Drainage area	= 77.020 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 44.50 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 3

Post Area 3 - Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.80		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.28**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.28**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 3140.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.80		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.44		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 36.26**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**36.26**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 130.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 130.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.80		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.13						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})913.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 2.97**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**2.97**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 44.50 min

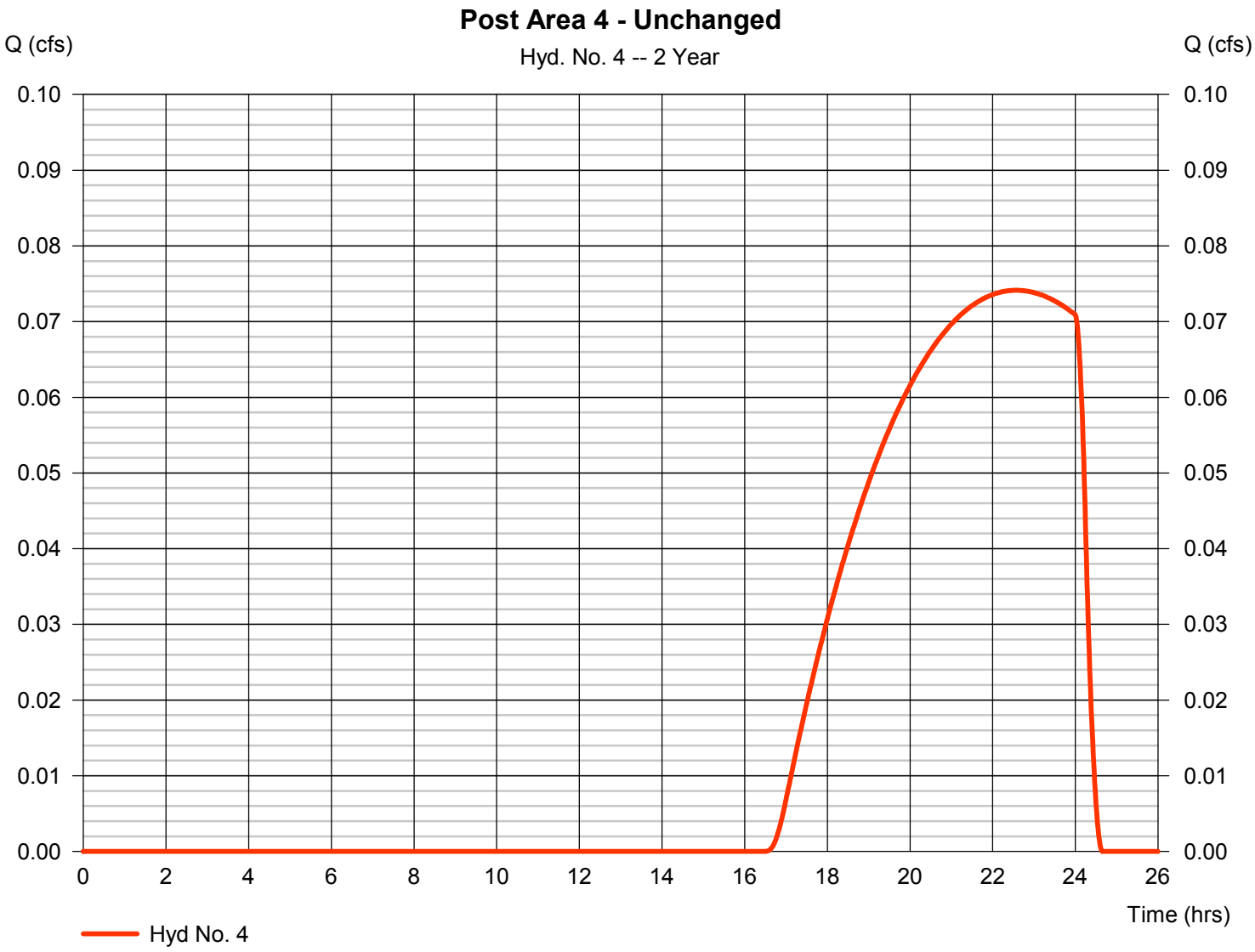
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 4

Post Area 4 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.074 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.57 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 1,518 cuft
Drainage area	= 54.880 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 23.80 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 4

Post Area 4 - Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 4.65**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**4.65**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1601.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.69		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 15.77**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**15.77**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=6.01						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})1220.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 3.38**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**3.38**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 23.80 min

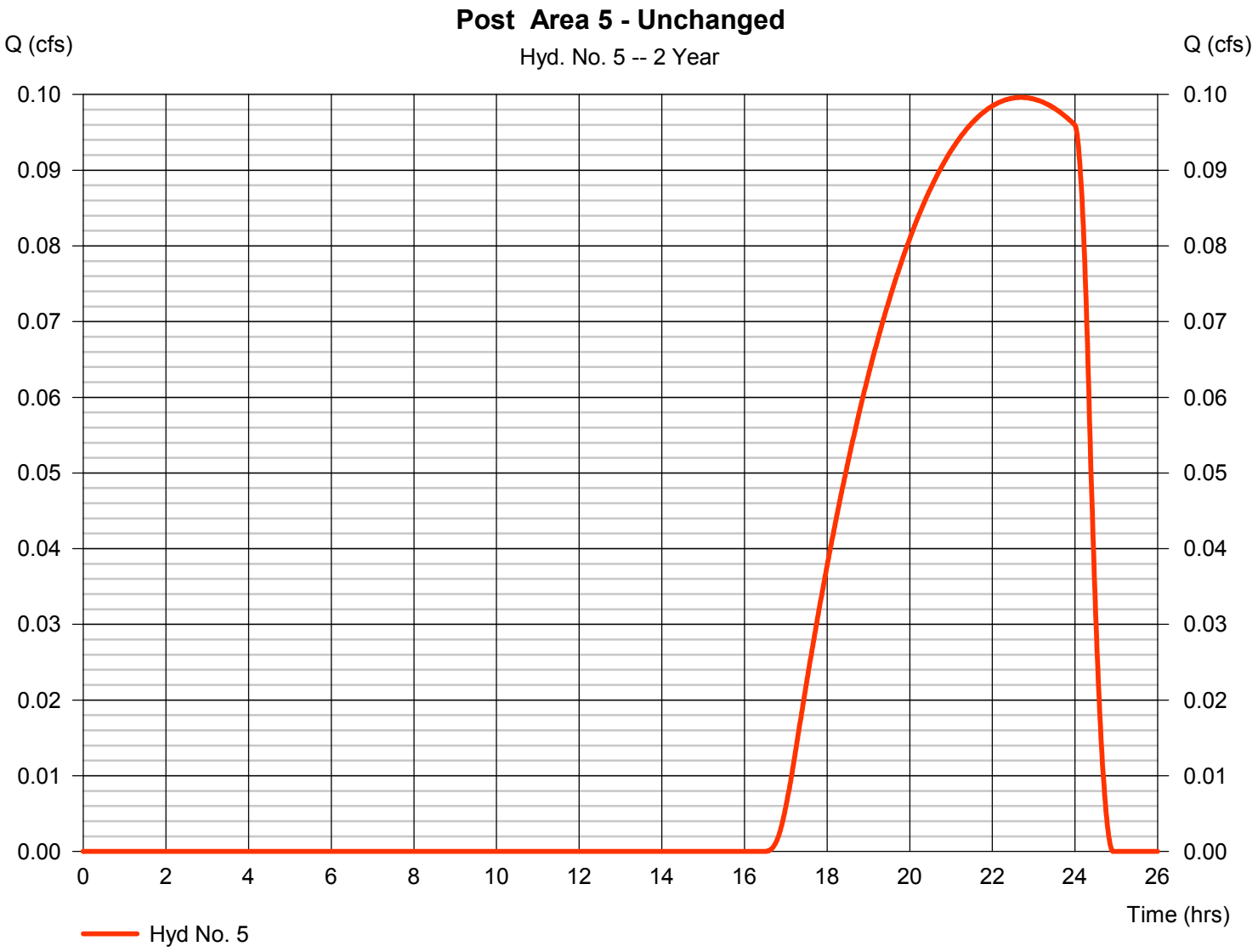
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 5

Post Area 5 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.100 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.70 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,041 cuft
Drainage area	= 73.770 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 34.40 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 5

Post Area 5 - Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.04**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.04**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 2404.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.90		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.53		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 26.18**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**26.18**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 25.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 25.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.70		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=7.47						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})1413.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 3.15**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**3.15**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 34.40 min

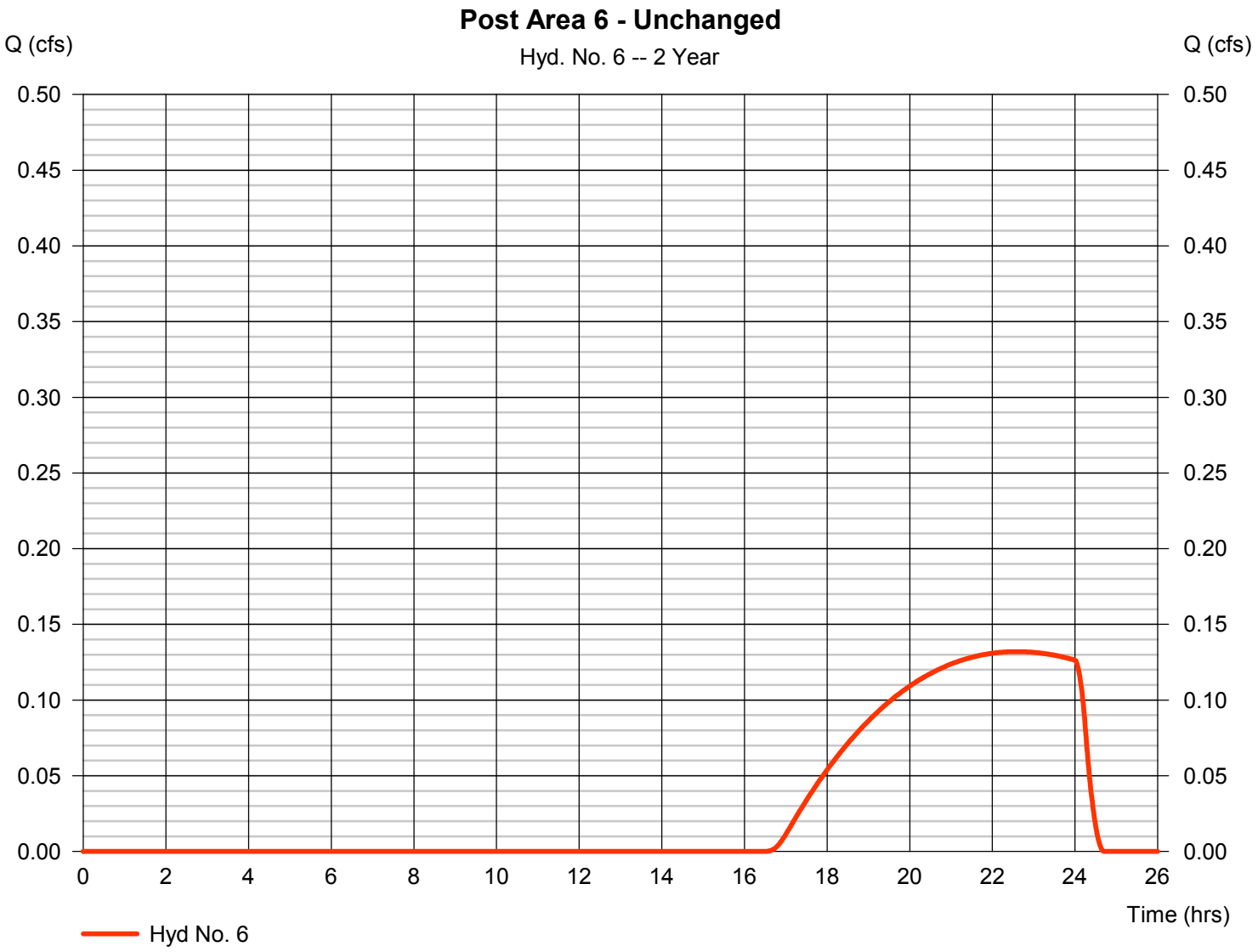
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 6

Post Area 6 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.132 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.58 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,703 cuft
Drainage area	= 96.960 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 25.70 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 6

Post Area 6 - Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.57**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.57**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1210.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.35		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 14.94**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**14.94**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.013		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=9.59						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2996.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.21**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.21**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 25.70 min

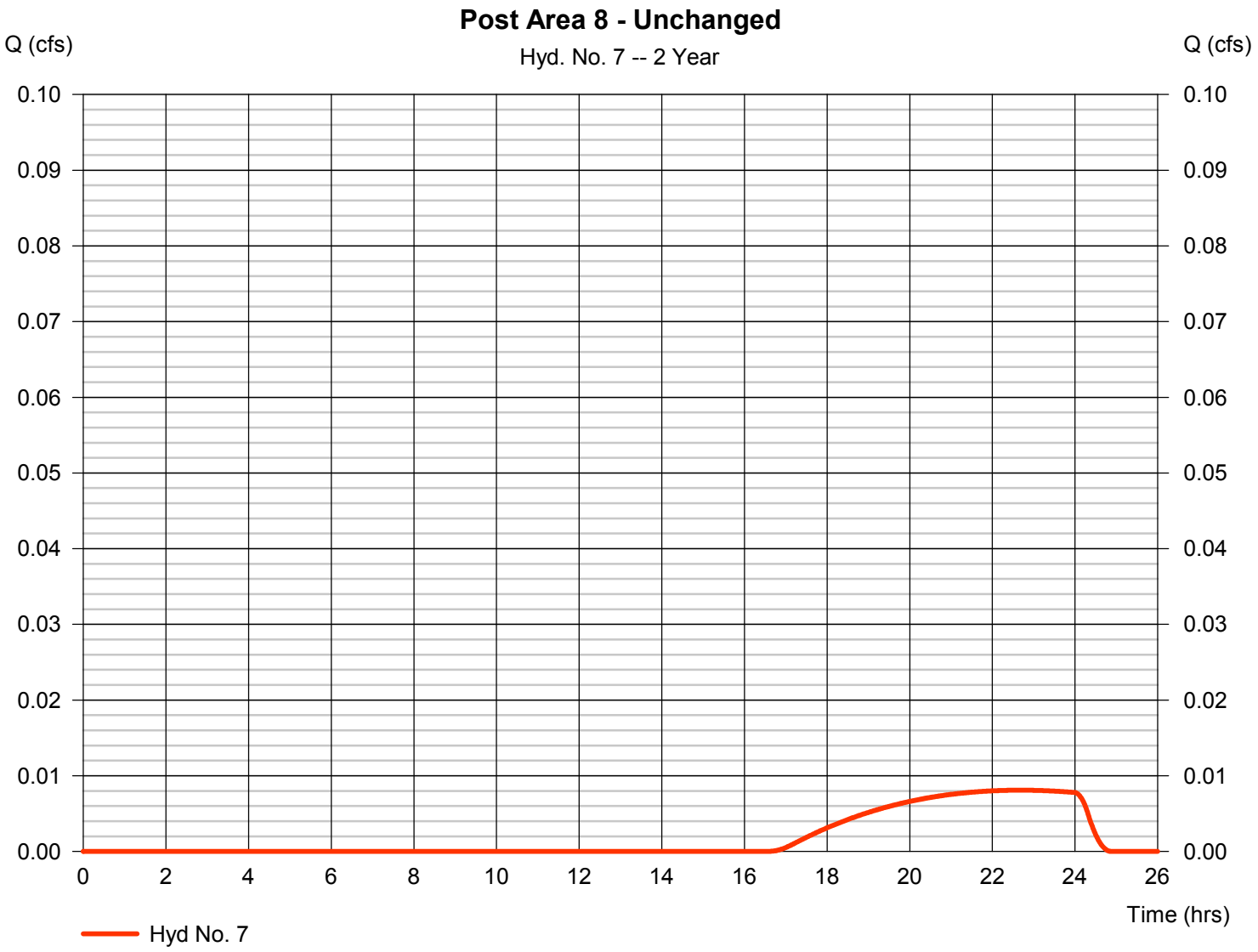
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 7

Post Area 8 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.008 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.67 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 166 cuft
Drainage area	= 6.030 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 33.70 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 7

Post Area 8 - Unchanged

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		1.39		1.39		
Land slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.57**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.57**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 2221.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.35		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 27.42**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**27.42**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 70.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.70		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=4.79						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})200.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.70**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.70**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 33.70 min

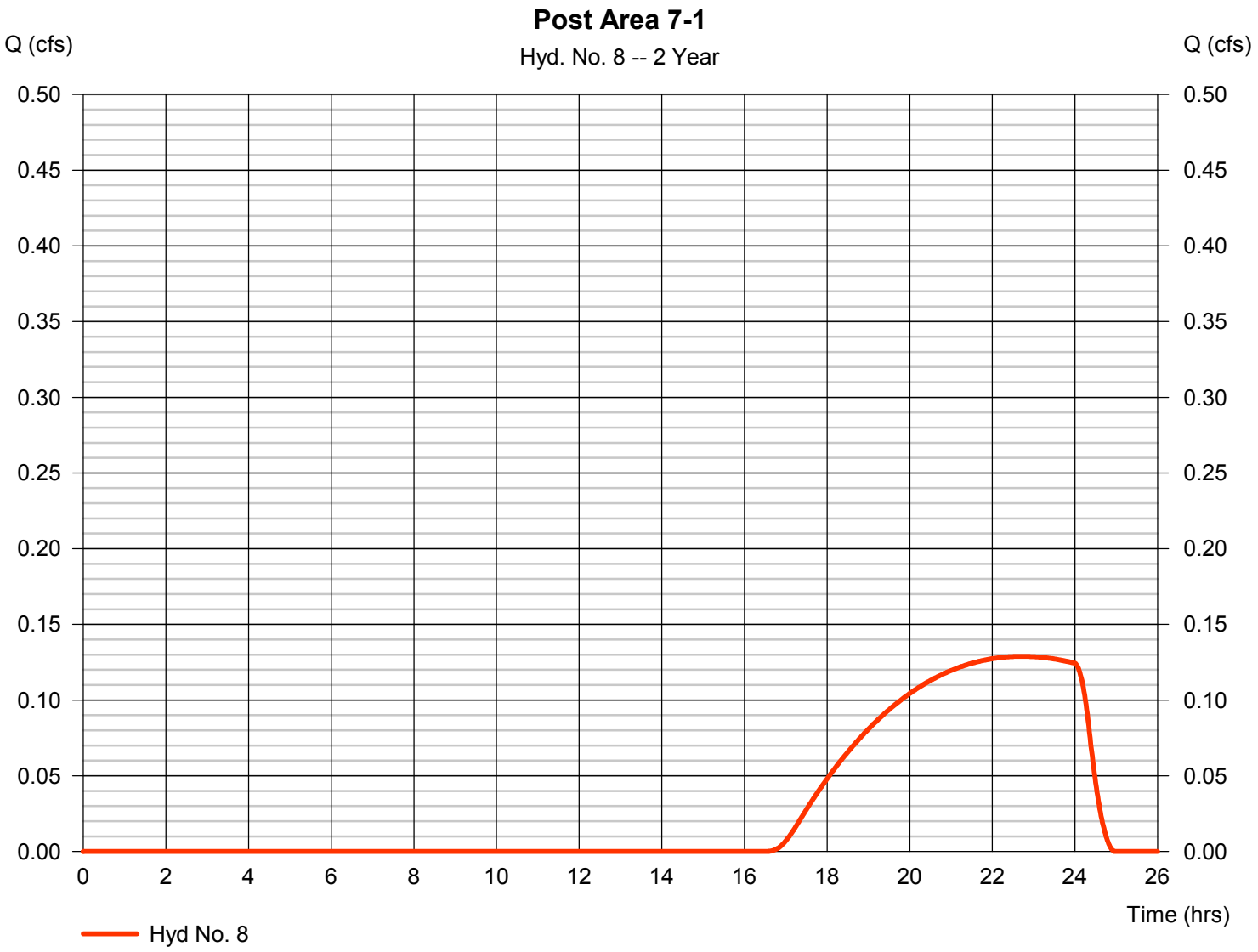
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 8

Post Area 7-1

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.129 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.72 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 2,641 cuft
Drainage area	= 94.920 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 37.10 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 8

Post Area 7-1

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 300.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		0.00		0.00		
Land slope (%)	= 0.50		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 15.34**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**15.34**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1100.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.50		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=1.14		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 16.07**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**16.07**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 60.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 65.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.10		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.70						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})1941.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 5.68**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**5.68**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 37.10 min

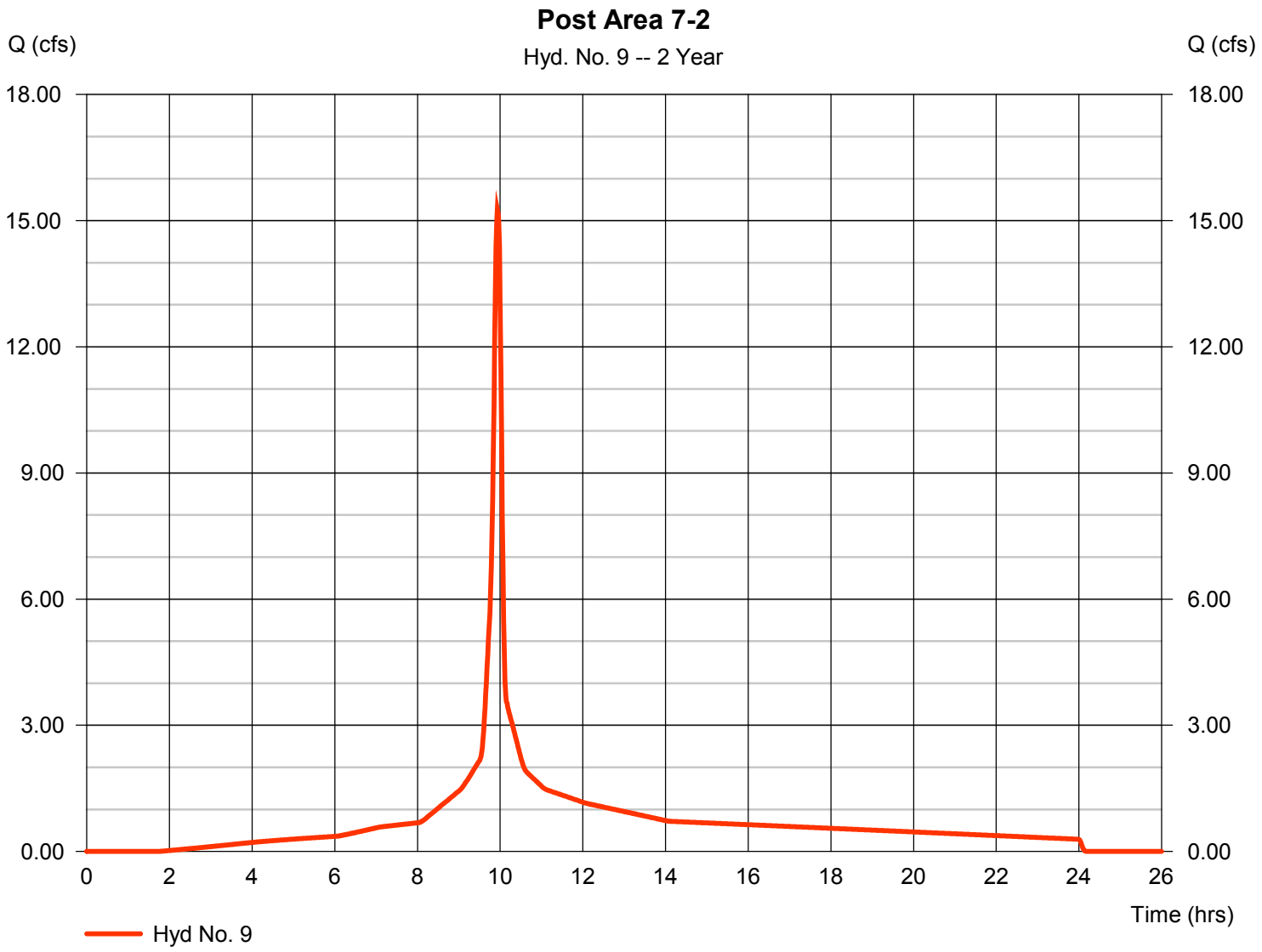
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 9

Post Area 7-2

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 15.26 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 9.93 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 67,867 cuft
Drainage area	= 15.470 ac	Curve number	= 98
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 6.20 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 9

Post Area 7-2

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.025		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		0.00		0.00		
Land slope (%)	= 0.50		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 6.17**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**6.17**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1250.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Paved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=0.00		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.00**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.015		0.015		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=0.00						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})0.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.00**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 6.20 min

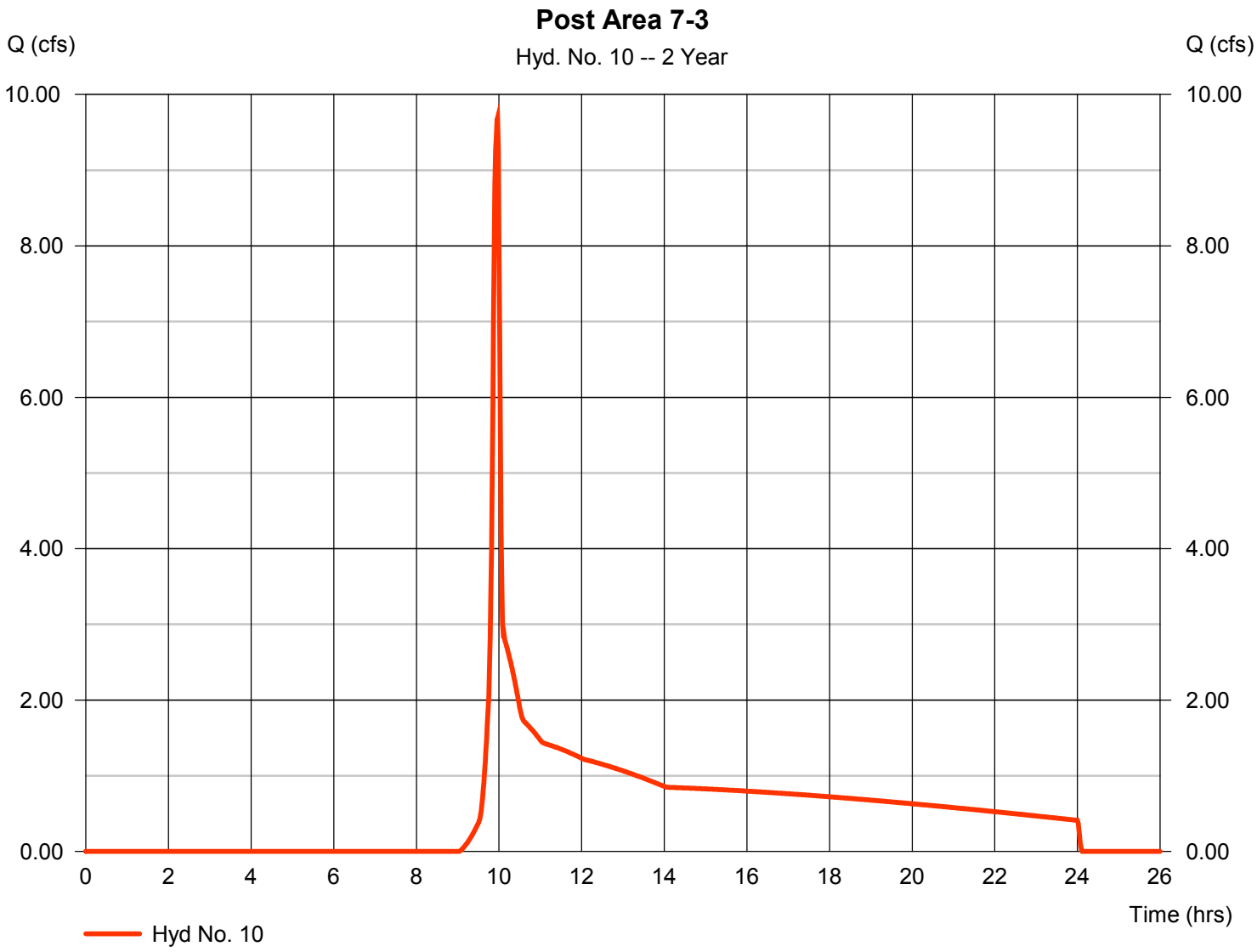
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 10

Post Area 7-3

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 9.688 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 9.97 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 51,654 cuft
Drainage area	= 37.070 ac	Curve number	= 85
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 4.80 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 10

Post Area 7-3

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		0.00		0.00		
Land slope (%)	= 1.00		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 4.83**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**4.83**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1500.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=0.00		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.00**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.015		0.015		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=0.00						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})0.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.00**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 4.80 min

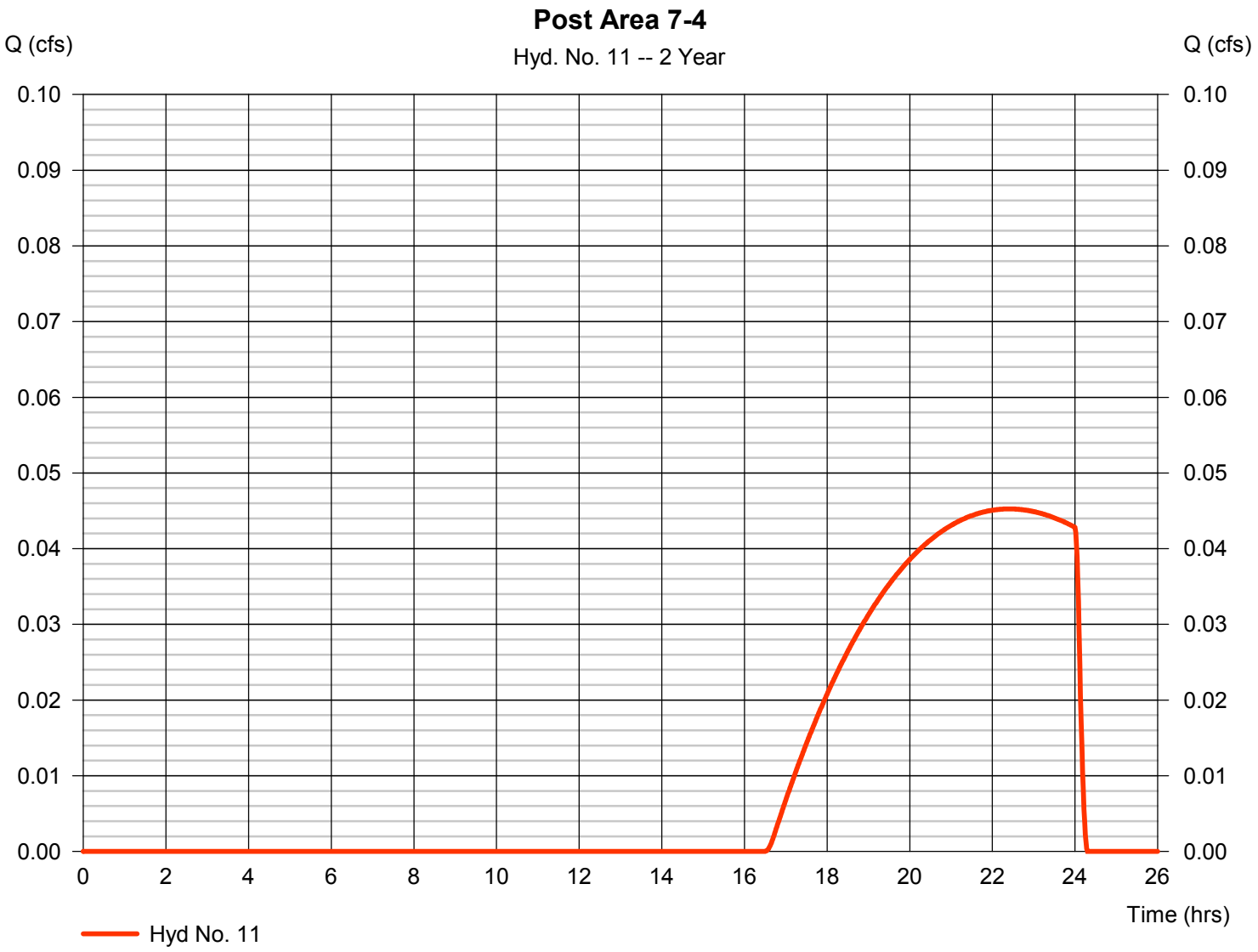
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 11

Post Area 7-4

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 0.045 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 22.40 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 926 cuft
Drainage area	= 32.900 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 11.30 min
Total precip.	= 1.39 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



TR55 Tc Worksheet

Hyd. No. 11

Post Area 7-4

Description	A		B		C		Totals
Sheet Flow							
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.011		0.011		
Flow length (ft)	= 100.0		0.0		0.0		
Two-year 24-hr precip. (in)	= 1.39		0.00		0.00		
Land slope (%)	= 1.00		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 4.83**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**4.83**
Shallow Concentrated Flow							
Flow length (ft)	= 1090.00		0.00		0.00		
Watercourse slope (%)	= 0.00		0.00		0.00		
Surface description	= Unpaved		Paved		Paved		
Average velocity (ft/s)	=0.00		0.00		0.00		
Travel Time (min)	**= 0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**0.00**
Channel Flow							
X sectional flow area (sqft)	= 60.00		0.00		0.00		
Wetted perimeter (ft)	= 65.00		0.00		0.00		
Channel slope (%)	= 1.00		0.00		0.00		
Manning's n-value	= 0.026		0.026		0.015		
Velocity (ft/s)	=5.43						
			0.00				
					0.00		
Flow length (ft)	({0})2100.0		0.0		0.0		
Travel Time (min)	**= 6.44**	**+**	**0.00**	**+**	**0.00**	**=**	**6.44**

Total Travel Time, Tc ..... 11.30 min

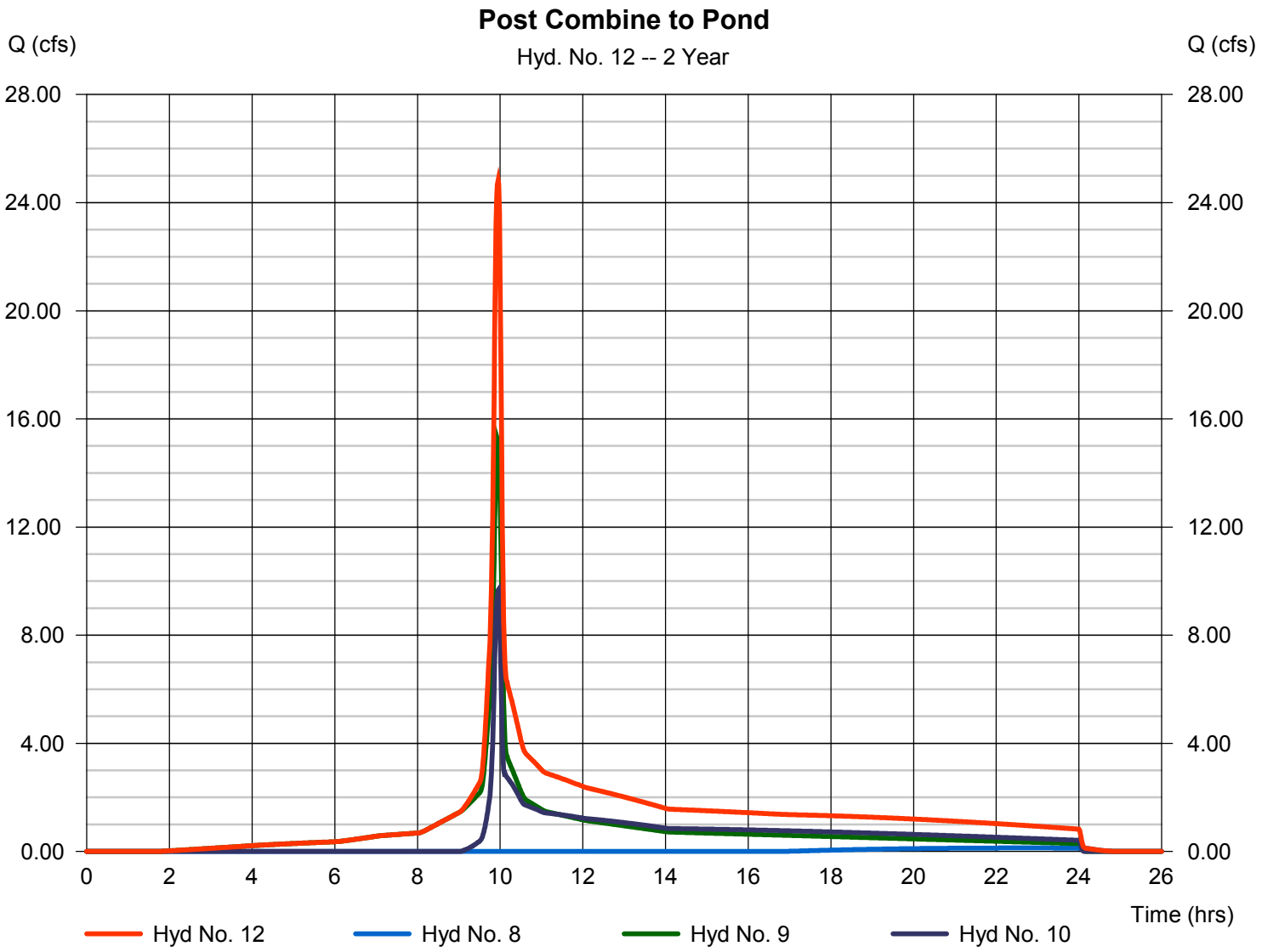
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 12

Post Combine to Pond

Hydrograph type	= Combine	Peak discharge	= 24.83 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= 9.95 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 122,161 cuft
Inflow hyds.	= 8, 9, 10	Contrib. drain. area	= 147.460 ac



Hydrograph Report

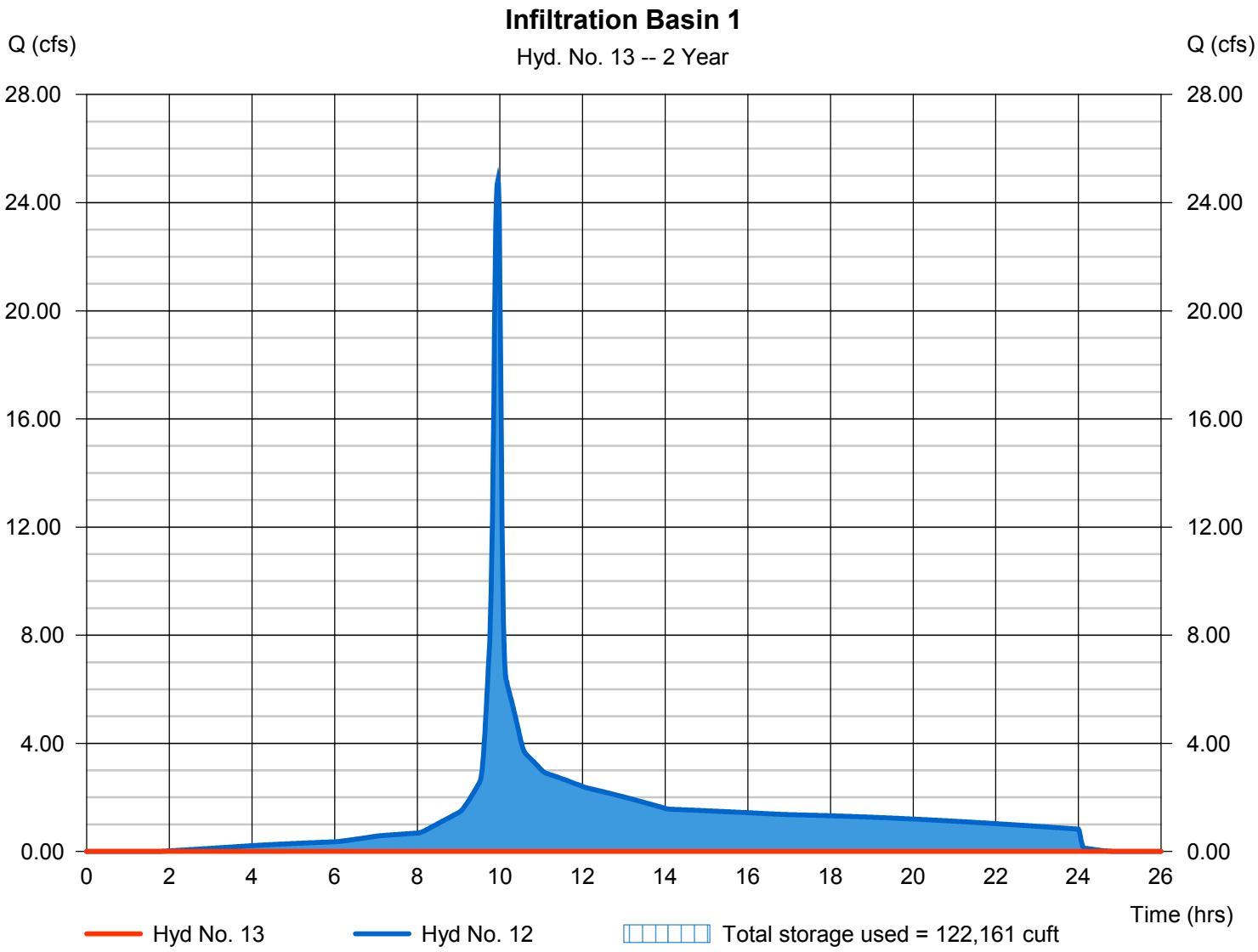
Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 13

Infiltration Basin 1

Hydrograph type	= Reservoir	Peak discharge	= 0.000 cfs
Storm frequency	= 2 yrs	Time to peak	= n/a
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 0 cuft
Inflow hyd. No.	= 12 - Post Combine to Pond	Max. Elevation	= 2490.95 ft
Reservoir name	= <Infiltraion Basin 1>	Max. Storage	= 122,161 cuft

Storage Indication method used.



Pond Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Pond No. 1 - <Infiltraion Basin 1>

Pond Data

Contours -User-defined contour areas. Conic method used for volume calculation. Begining Elevation = 2485.00 ft

Stage / Storage Table

Stage (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Contour area (sqft)	Incr. Storage (cuft)	Total storage (cuft)
0.00	2485.00	322	0	0
1.00	2486.00	10,089	4,070	4,070
2.00	2487.00	15,428	12,663	16,733
3.00	2488.00	20,967	18,125	34,858
4.00	2489.00	26,708	23,777	58,636
5.00	2490.00	32,648	29,626	88,261
6.00	2491.00	38,799	35,676	123,937
7.00	2492.00	45,140	41,925	165,862
8.00	2493.00	51,696	48,376	214,238
9.00	2494.00	58,446	55,031	269,269
10.00	2495.00	65,386	61,878	331,147
11.00	2496.00	72,526	68,918	400,065
12.00	2497.00	79,850	76,151	476,216
13.00	2498.00	87,341	83,559	559,776
14.00	2499.00	94,967	91,118	650,893
15.00	2500.00	102,758	98,827	749,720
16.00	2501.00	110,707	106,697	856,417
17.00	2502.00	118,814	114,725	971,143
18.00	2503.00	120,694	119,741	1,090,884

Culvert / Orifice Structures

	[A]	[B]	[C]	[PrfRsr]
Rise (in)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Span (in)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
No. Barrels	= 0	0	0	0
Invert El. (ft)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Length (ft)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Slope (%)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	n/a
N-Value	= .000	.000	.000	n/a
Orifice Coeff.	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Multi-Stage	= n/a	No	No	No

Weir Structures

	[A]	[B]	[C]	[D]
Crest Len (ft)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Crest El. (ft)	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Weir Coeff.	= 0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Weir Type	= ---	---	---	---
Multi-Stage	= No	No	No	No

Exfil.(in/hr) = 0.000 (by Wet area)

TW Elev. (ft) = 0.00

Note: Culvert/Orifice outflows are analyzed under inlet (ic) and outlet (oc) control. Weir risers checked for orifice conditions (ic) and submergence (s).

Stage / Storage / Discharge Table

Stage ft	Storage cuft	Elevation ft	Clv A cfs	Clv B cfs	Clv C cfs	PrfRsr cfs	Wr A cfs	Wr B cfs	Wr C cfs	Wr D cfs	Exfil cfs	User cfs	Total cfs
0.00	0	2485.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
1.00	4,070	2486.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
2.00	16,733	2487.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
3.00	34,858	2488.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
4.00	58,636	2489.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
5.00	88,261	2490.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
6.00	123,937	2491.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
7.00	165,862	2492.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
8.00	214,238	2493.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
9.00	269,269	2494.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
10.00	331,147	2495.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
11.00	400,065	2496.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
12.00	476,216	2497.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
13.00	559,776	2498.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
14.00	650,893	2499.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
15.00	749,720	2500.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
16.00	856,417	2501.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
17.00	971,143	2502.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000
18.00	1,090,884	2503.00	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0.000

Hydrograph Summary Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4

Hyd. No.	Hydrograph type (origin)	Peak flow (cfs)	Time interval (min)	Time to Peak (min)	Hyd. volume (cuft)	Inflow hyd(s)	Maximum elevation (ft)	Total strge used (cuft)	Hydrograph Description
1	SCS Runoff	5.913	1	620	87,070	------	------	------	Post Area 1 - Unchanged
2	SCS Runoff	19.70	1	651	404,055	------	------	------	Post Area 2- Unchanged
3	SCS Runoff	13.31	1	629	219,494	------	------	------	Post Area 3 - Unchanged
4	SCS Runoff	13.40	1	611	156,399	------	------	------	Post Area 4 - Unchanged
5	SCS Runoff	14.74	1	619	210,232	------	------	------	Post Area 5 - Unchanged
6	SCS Runoff	22.84	1	613	278,478	------	------	------	Post Area 6 - Unchanged
7	SCS Runoff	1.238	1	617	17,077	------	------	------	Post Area 8 - Unchanged
8	SCS Runoff	18.48	1	620	272,043	------	------	------	Post Area 7-1
9	SCS Runoff	43.78	1	596	203,600	------	------	------	Post Area 7-2
10	SCS Runoff	71.09	1	595	300,841	------	------	------	Post Area 7-3
11	SCS Runoff	12.12	1	602	95,434	------	------	------	Post Area 7-4
12	Combine	116.89	1	595	776,484	8, 9, 10,	------	------	Post Combine to Pond
13	Reservoir	0.000	1	n/a	0	12	2500.25	776,484	Infiltration Basin 1

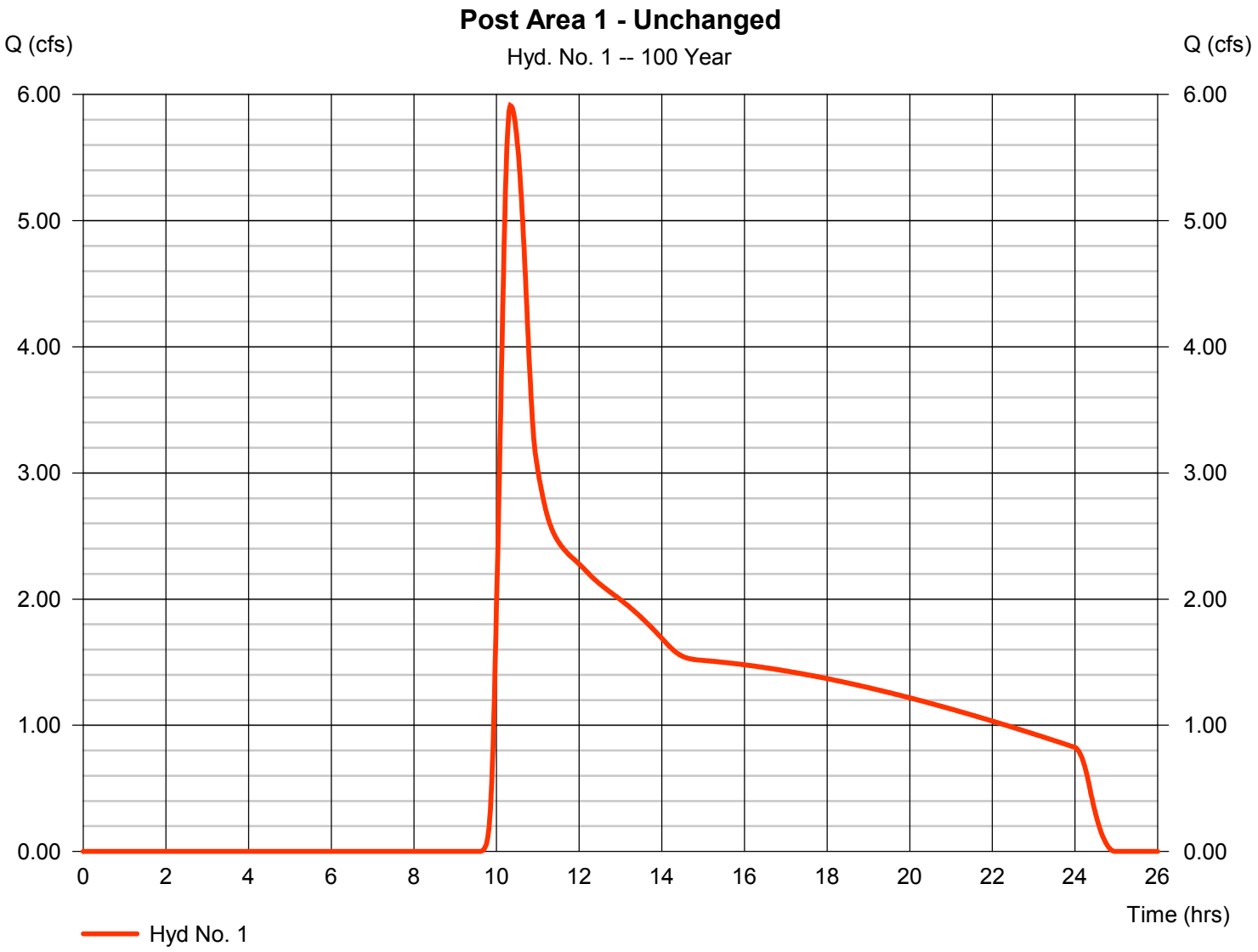
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 1

Post Area 1 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 5.913 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.33 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 87,070 cuft
Drainage area	= 30.380 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 36.70 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



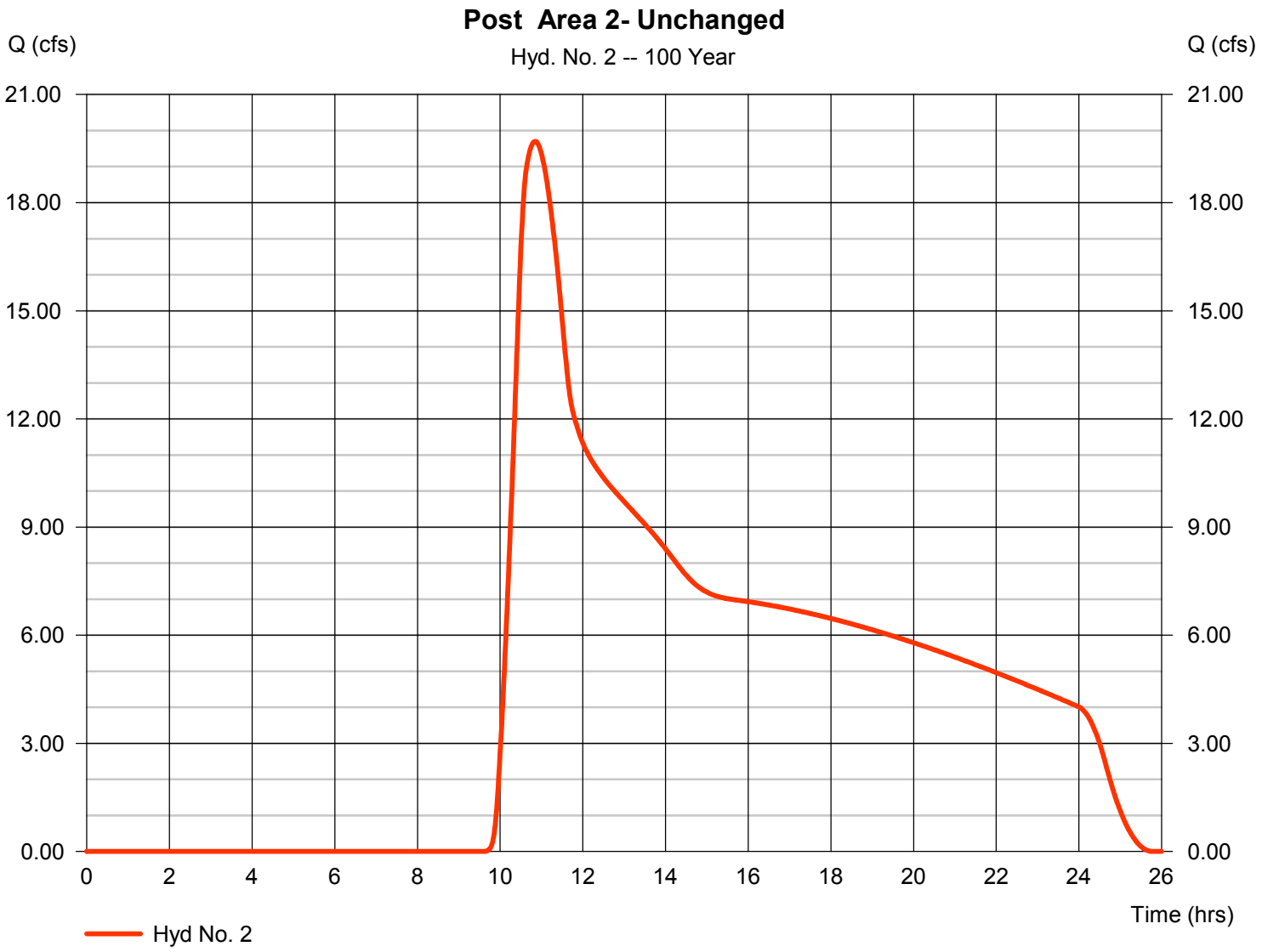
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 2

Post Area 2- Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 19.70 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.85 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 404,055 cuft
Drainage area	= 141.340 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 67.10 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



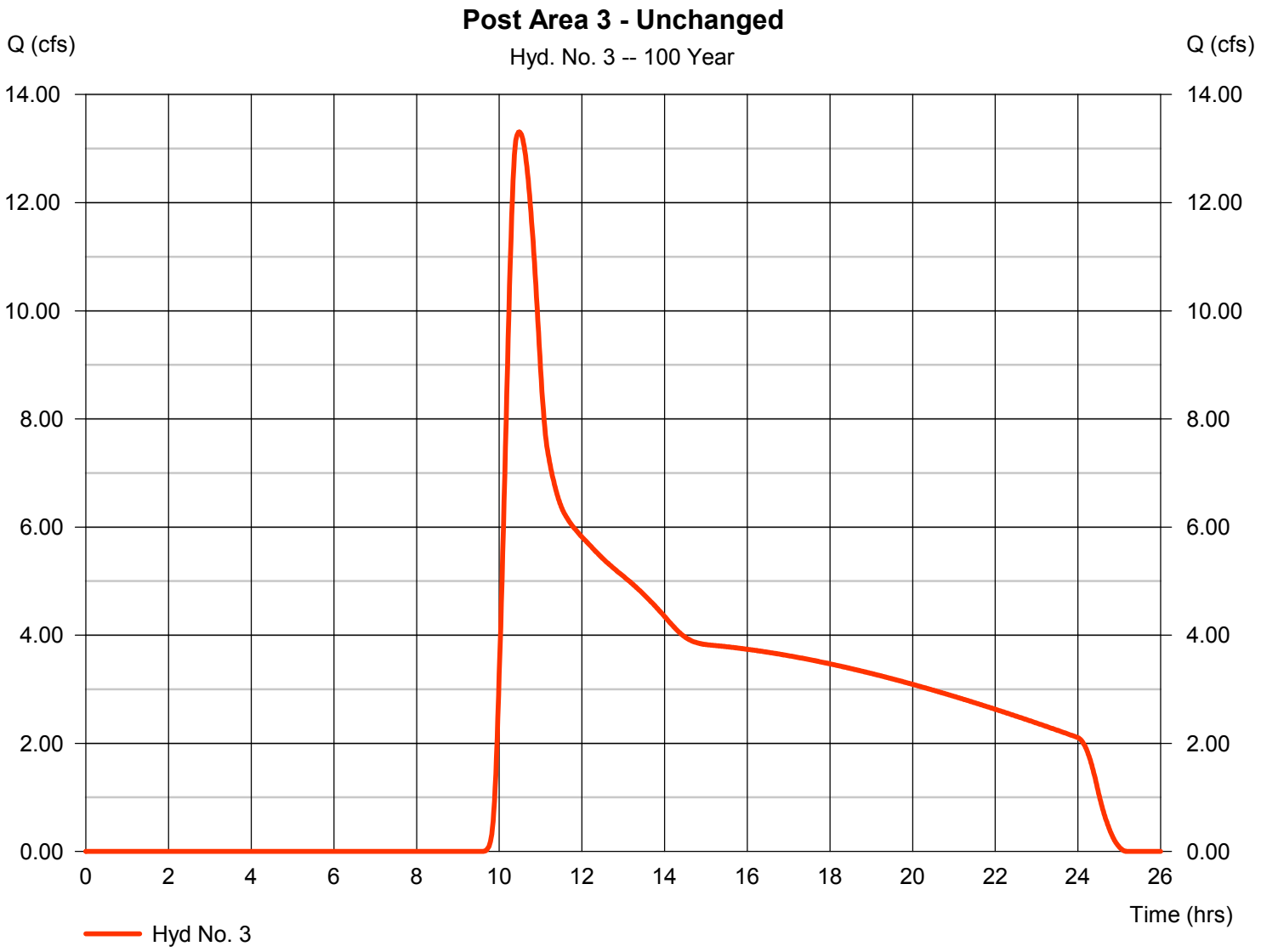
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 3

Post Area 3 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 13.31 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.48 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 219,494 cuft
Drainage area	= 77.020 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 44.50 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



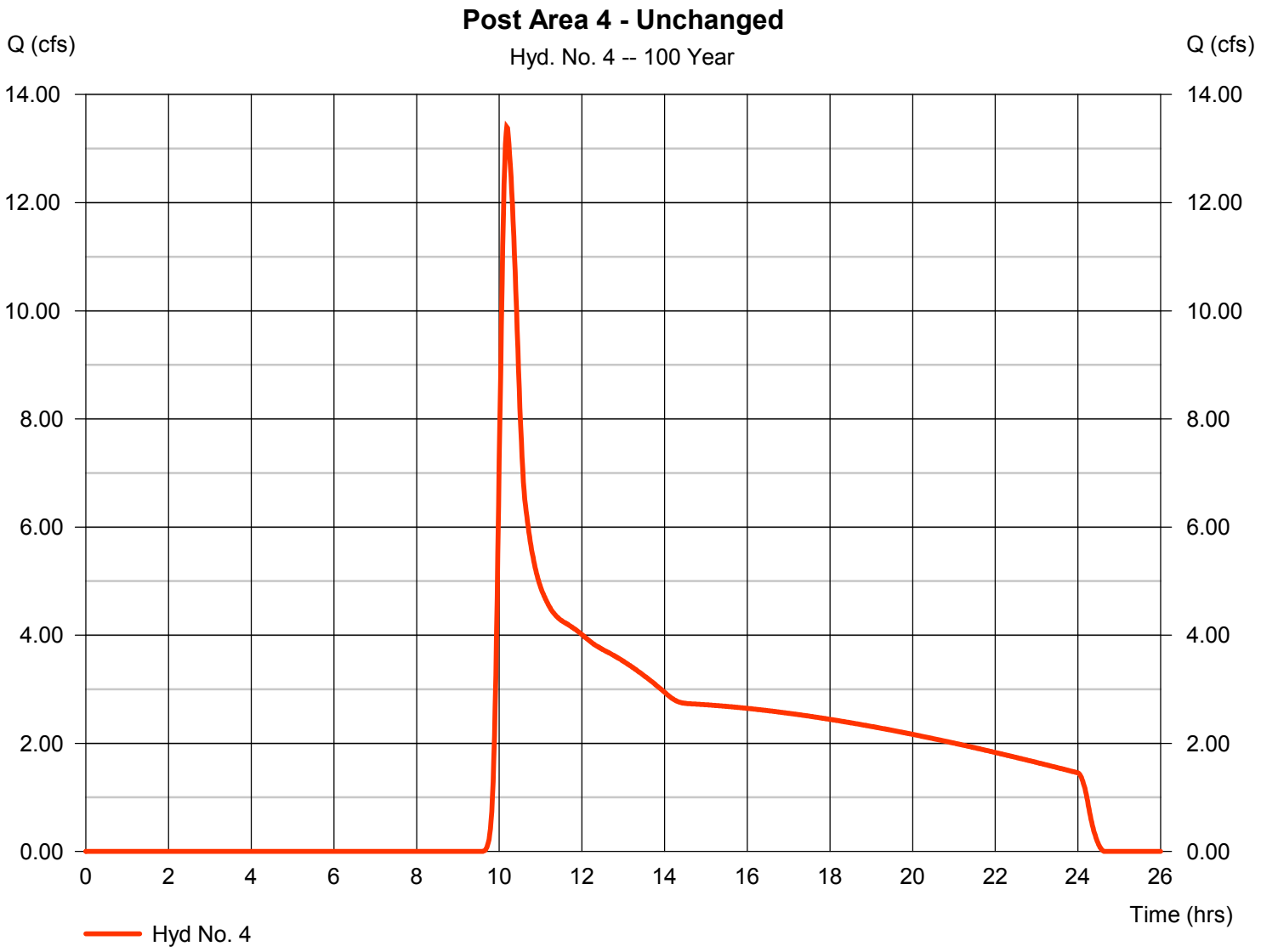
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 4

Post Area 4 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 13.40 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.18 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 156,399 cuft
Drainage area	= 54.880 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 23.80 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



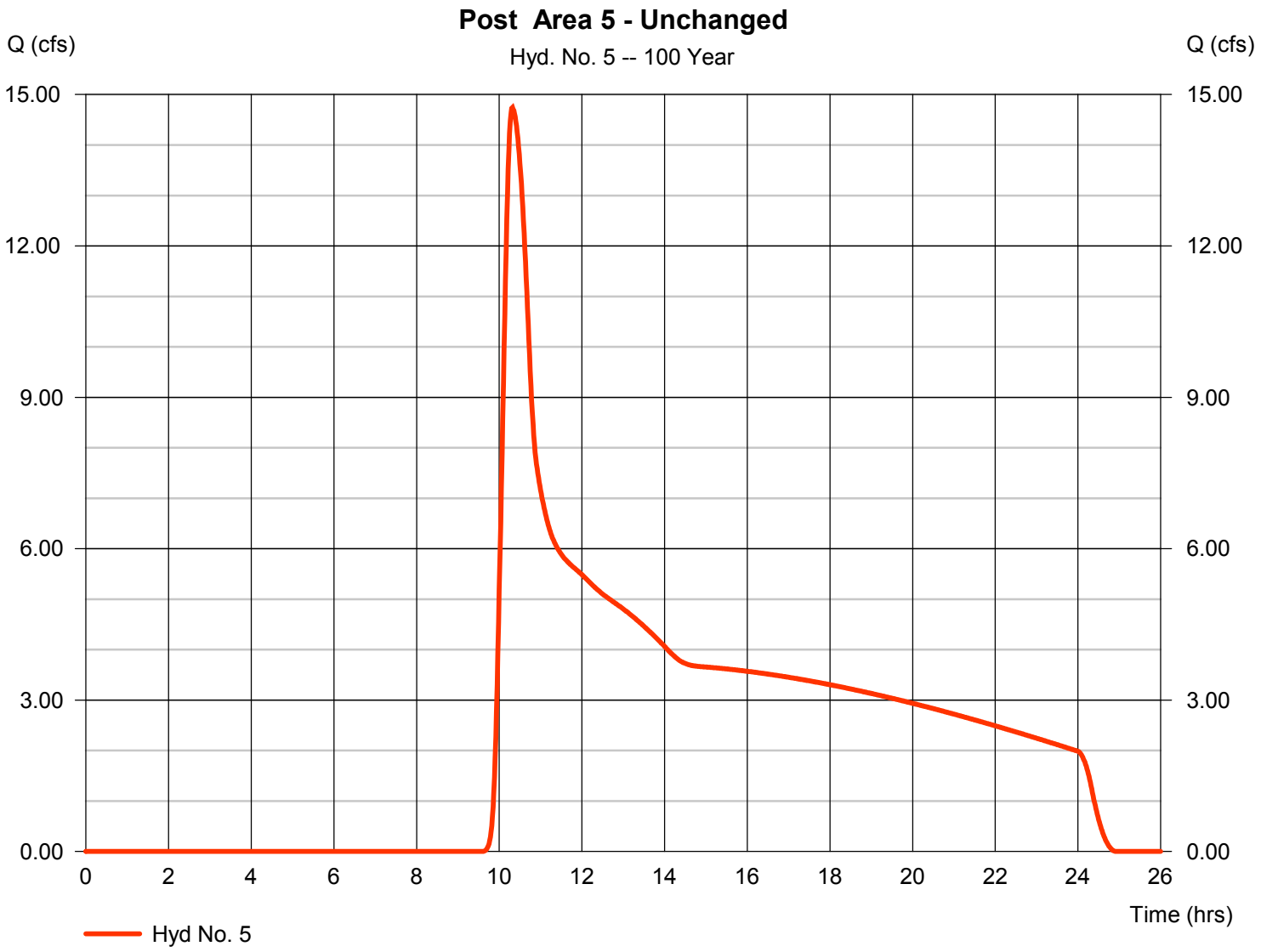
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 5

Post Area 5 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 14.74 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.32 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 210,232 cuft
Drainage area	= 73.770 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 34.40 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



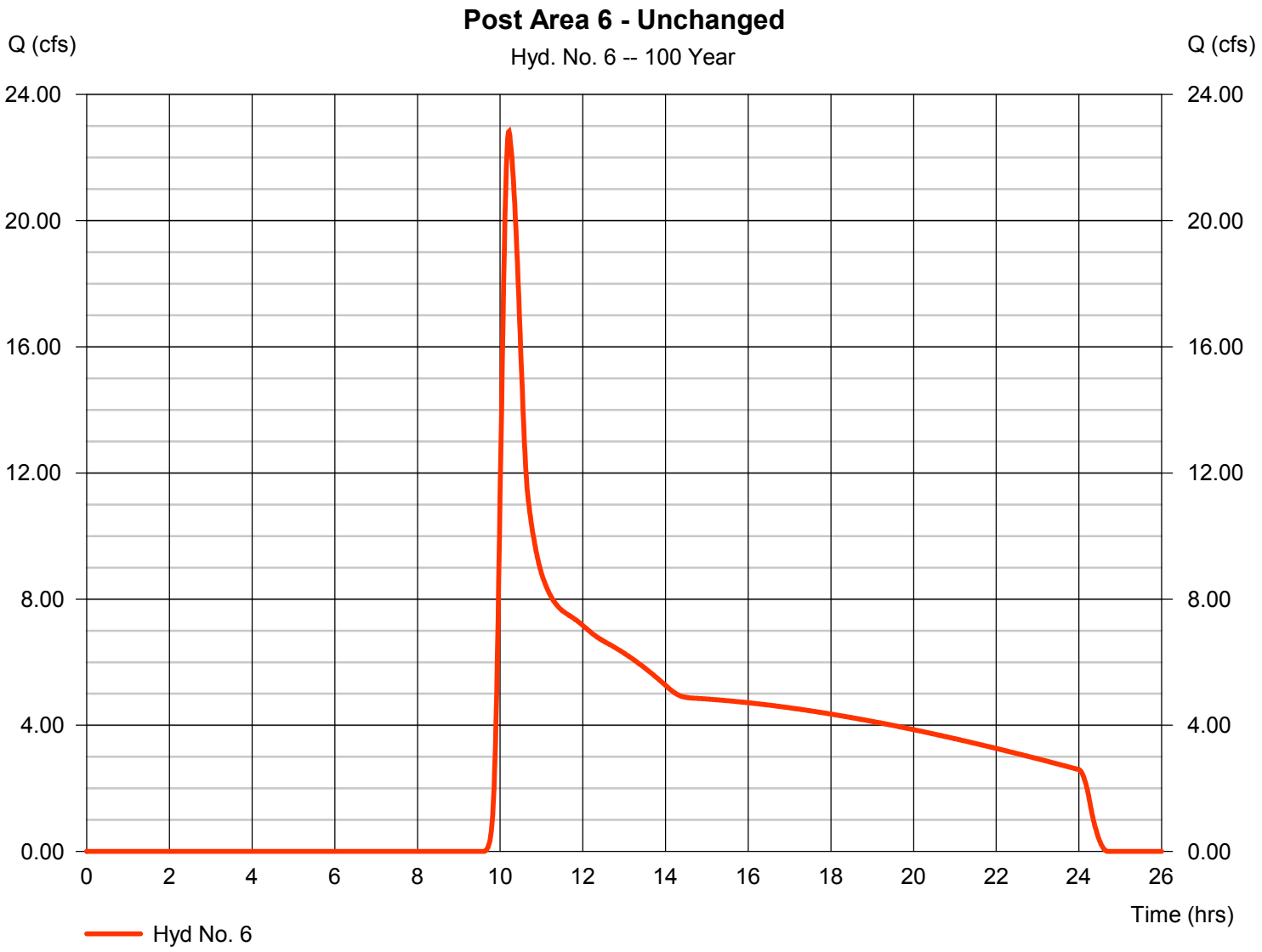
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 6

Post Area 6 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 22.84 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.22 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 278,478 cuft
Drainage area	= 96.960 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 25.70 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



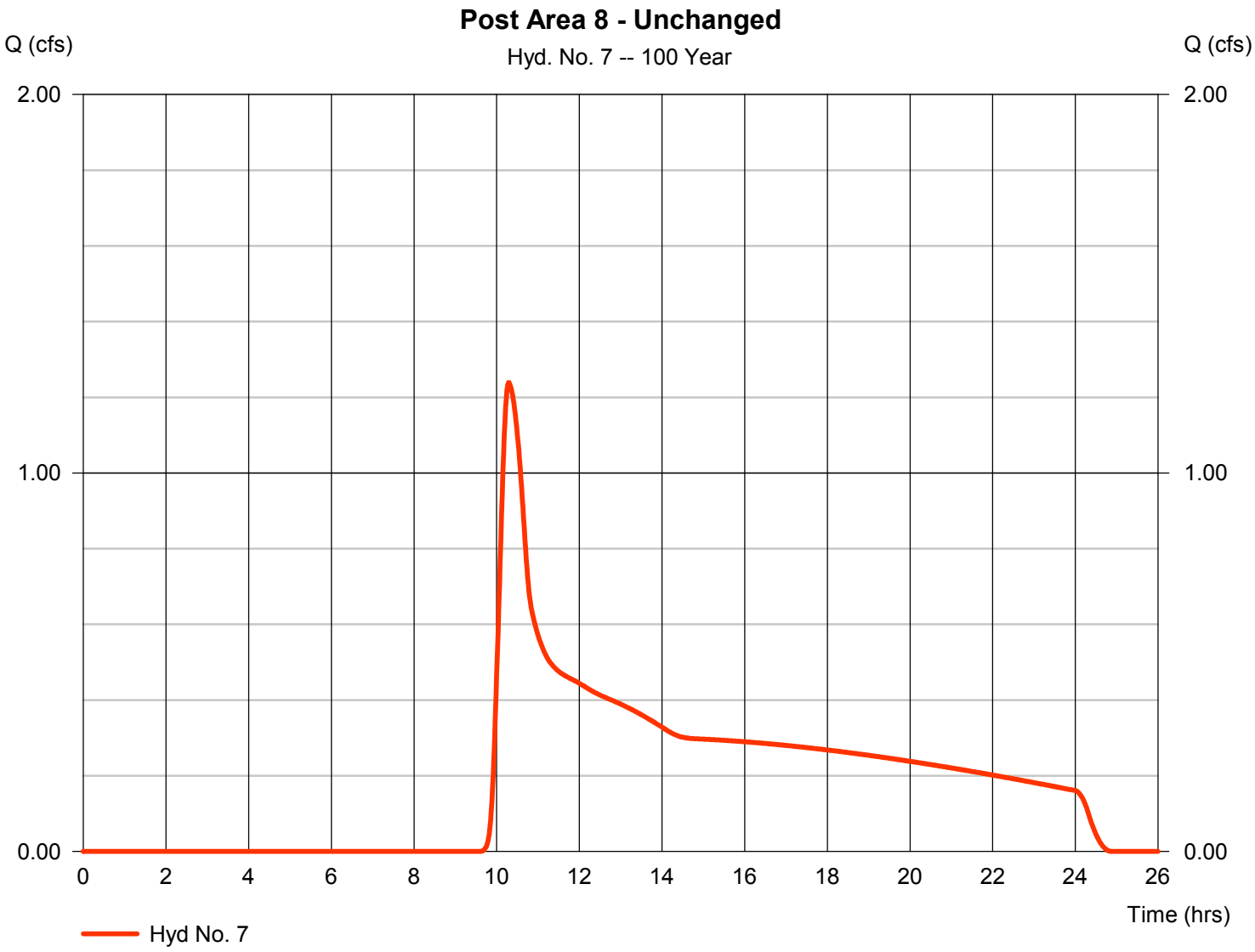
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 7

Post Area 8 - Unchanged

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 1.238 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.28 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 17,077 cuft
Drainage area	= 6.030 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 33.70 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



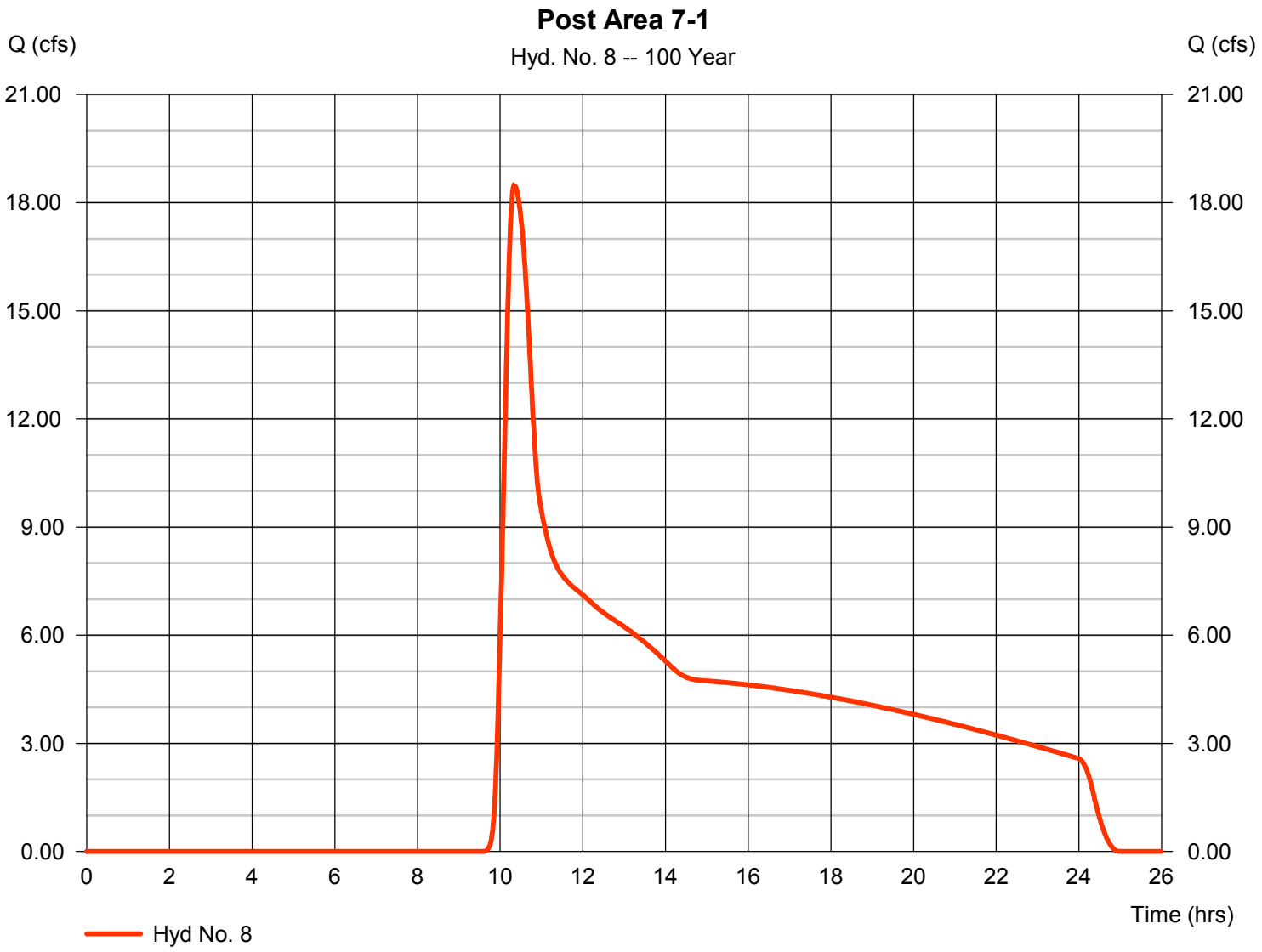
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 8

Post Area 7-1

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 18.48 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.33 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 272,043 cuft
Drainage area	= 94.920 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 37.10 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



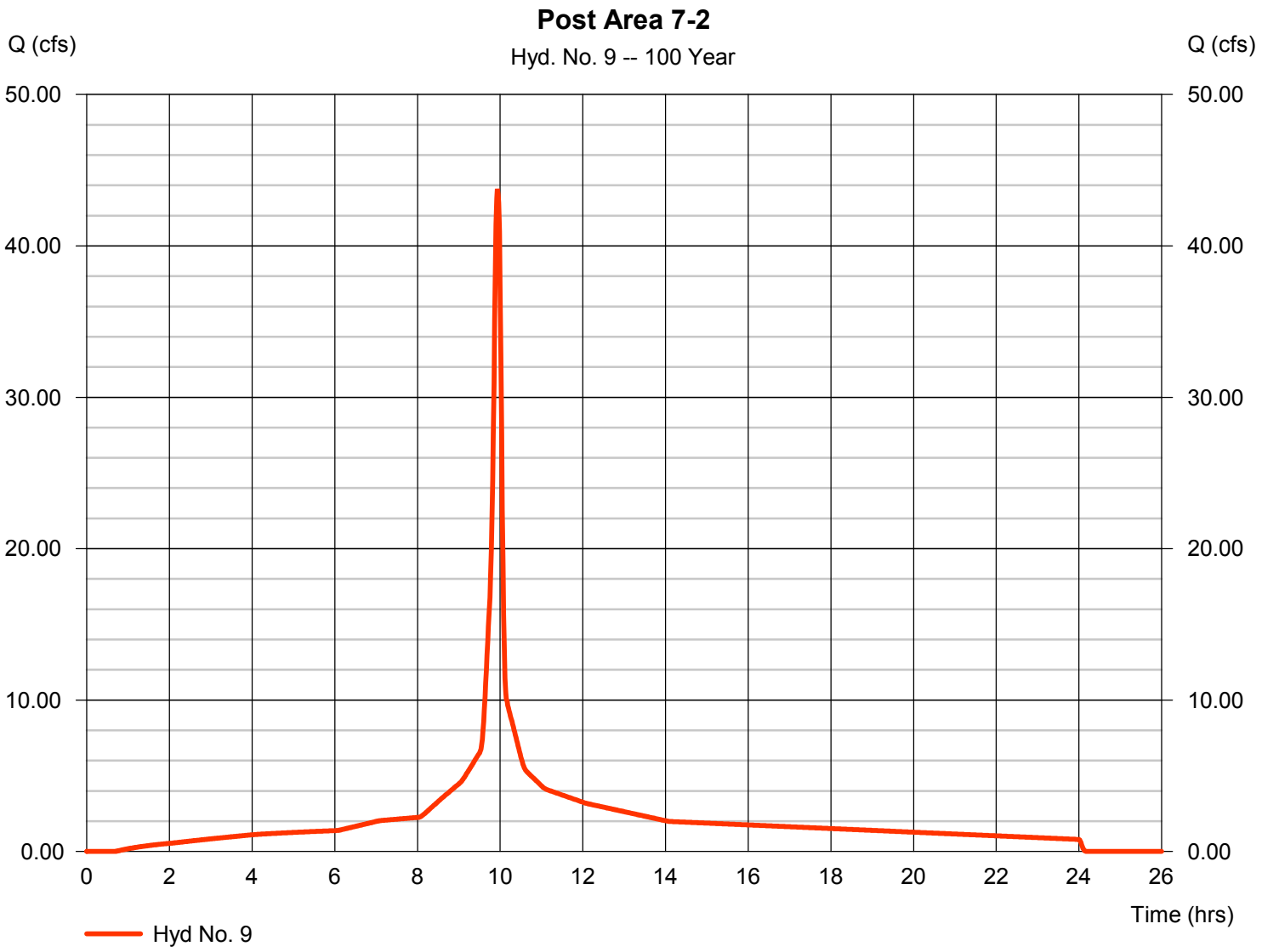
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 9

Post Area 7-2

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 43.78 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 9.93 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 203,600 cuft
Drainage area	= 15.470 ac	Curve number	= 98
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 6.20 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



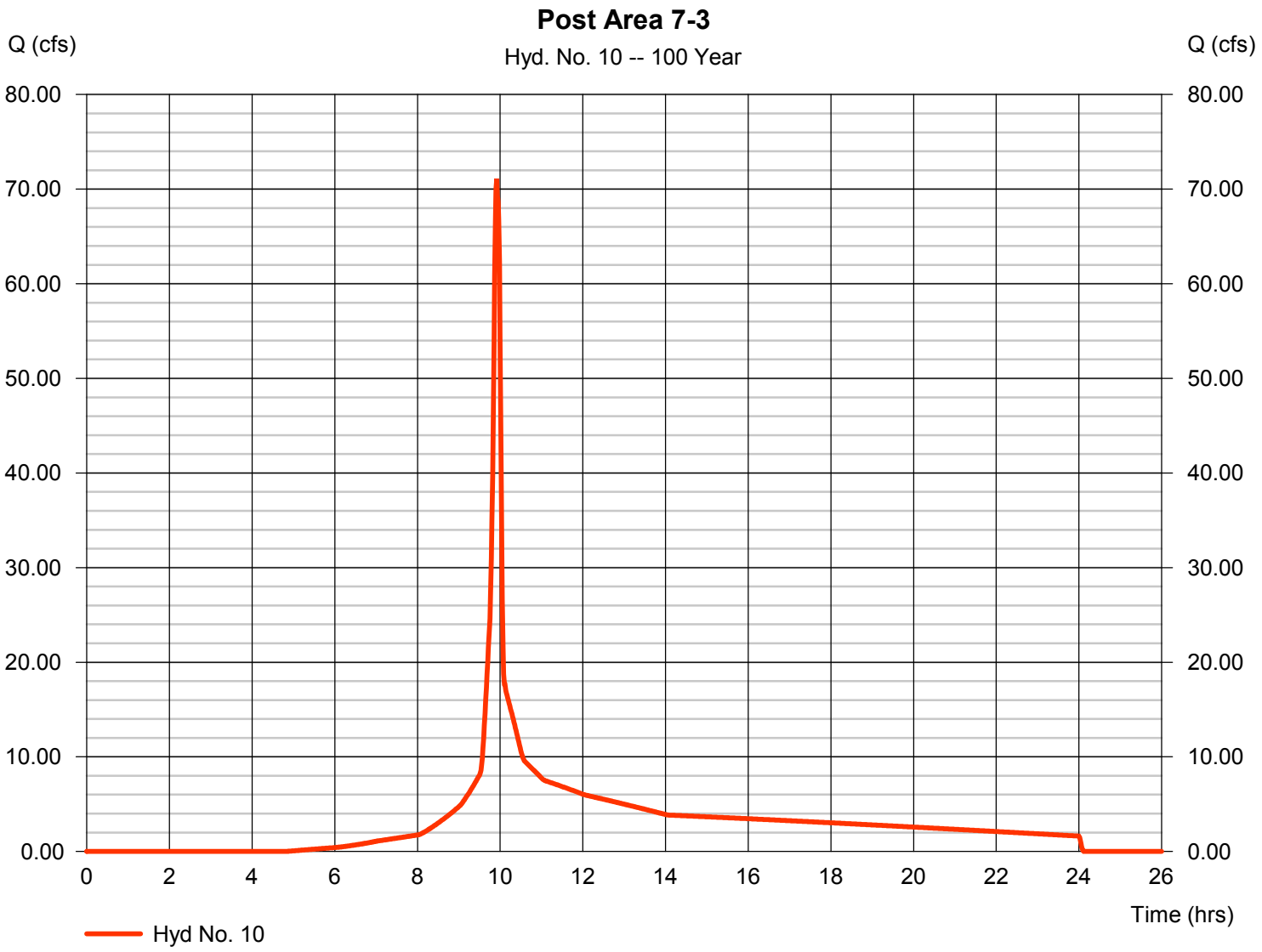
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 10

Post Area 7-3

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 71.09 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 9.92 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 300,841 cuft
Drainage area	= 37.070 ac	Curve number	= 85
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 4.80 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



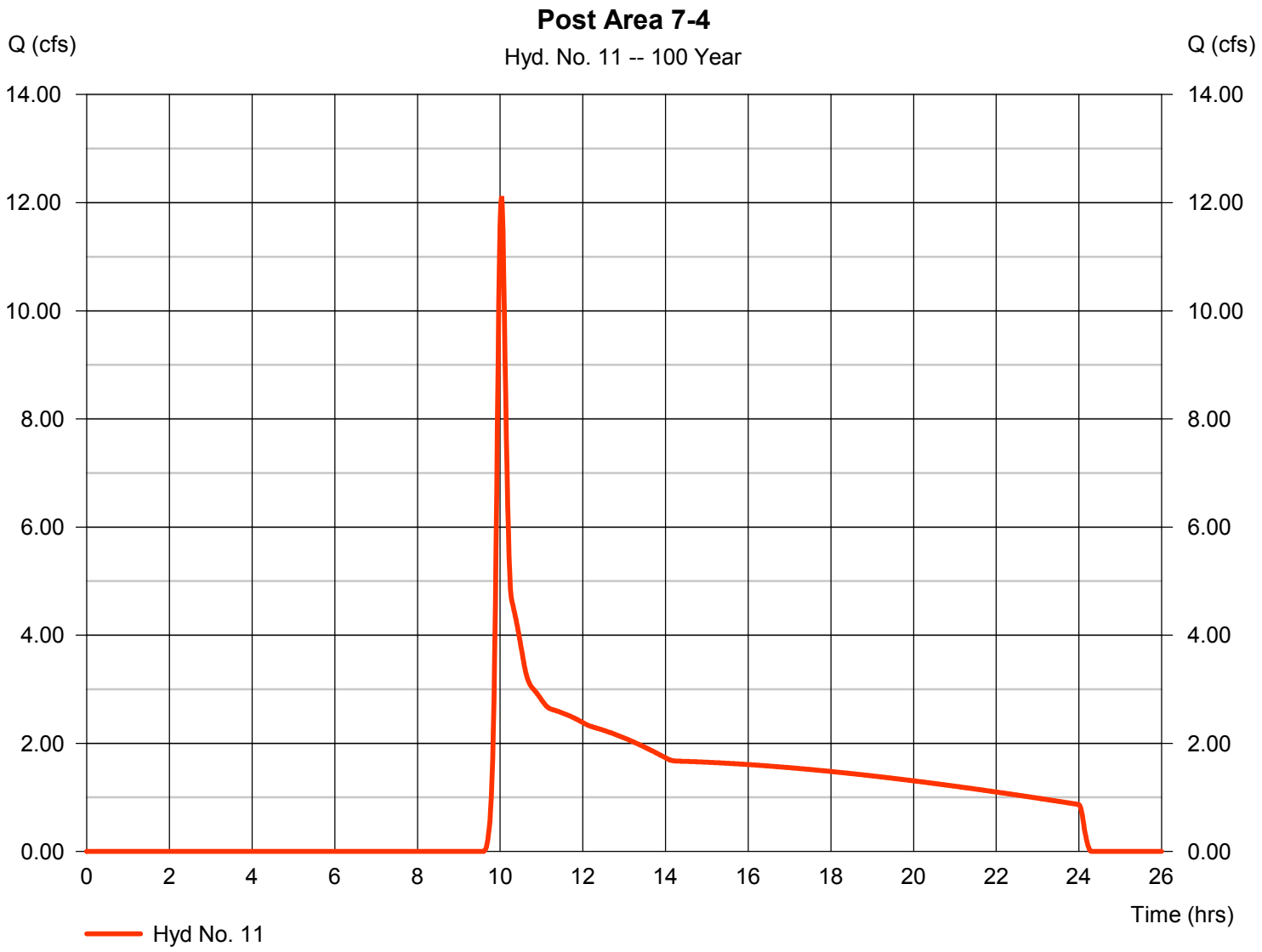
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 11

Post Area 7-4

Hydrograph type	= SCS Runoff	Peak discharge	= 12.12 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 10.03 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 95,434 cuft
Drainage area	= 32.900 ac	Curve number	= 63
Basin Slope	= 0.0 %	Hydraulic length	= 0 ft
Tc method	= TR55	Time of conc. (Tc)	= 11.30 min
Total precip.	= 3.75 in	Distribution	= Type I
Storm duration	= 24 hrs	Shape factor	= 484



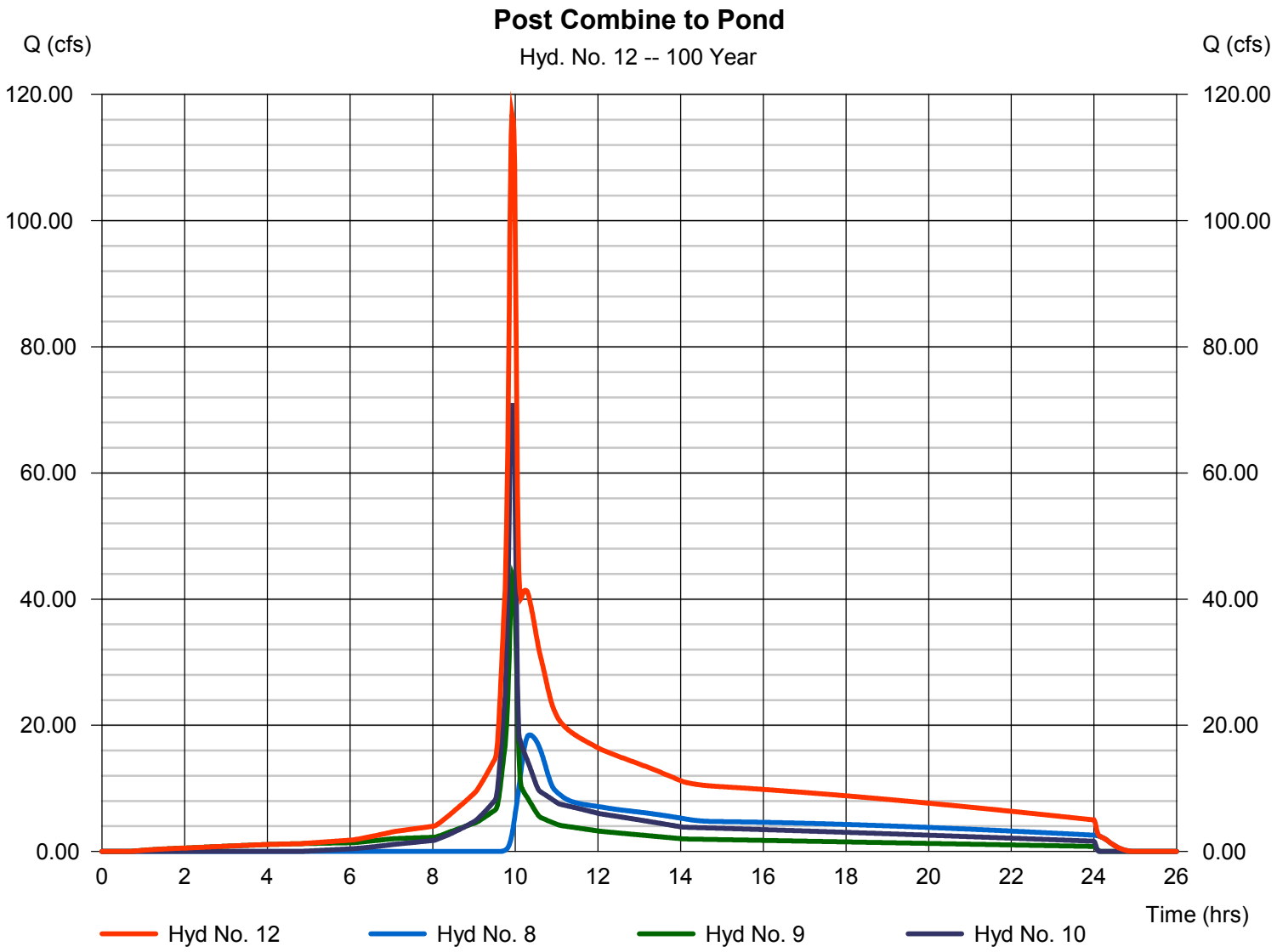
Hydrograph Report

Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 12

Post Combine to Pond

Hydrograph type	= Combine	Peak discharge	= 116.89 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= 9.92 hrs
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 776,484 cuft
Inflow hyds.	= 8, 9, 10	Contrib. drain. area	= 147.460 ac



Hydrograph Report

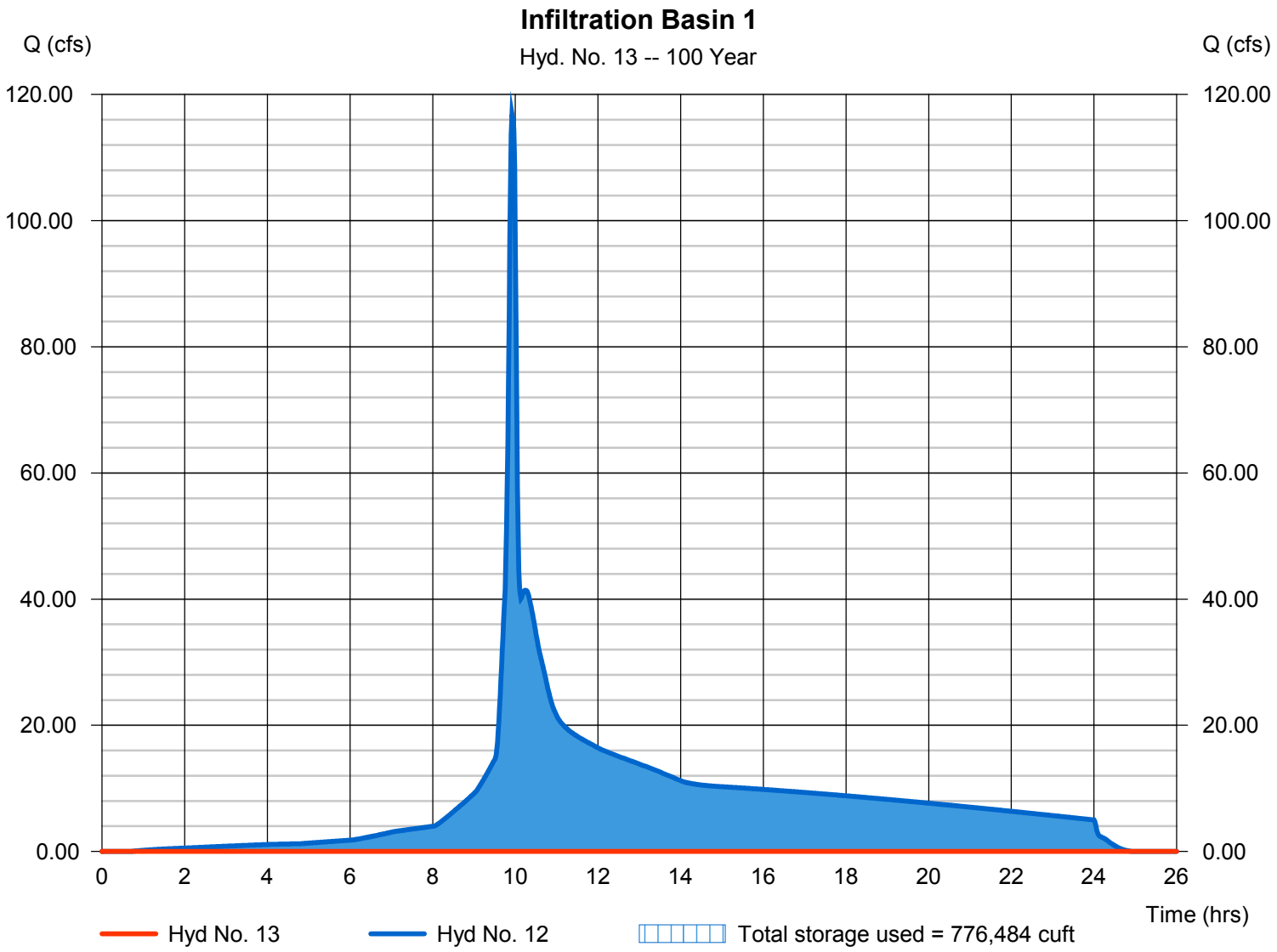
Hydraflow Hydrographs Extension for AutoCAD® Civil 3D® 2015 by Autodesk, Inc. v10.4 Friday, 08 / 7 / 2015

Hyd. No. 13

Infiltration Basin 1

Hydrograph type	= Reservoir	Peak discharge	= 0.000 cfs
Storm frequency	= 100 yrs	Time to peak	= n/a
Time interval	= 1 min	Hyd. volume	= 0 cuft
Inflow hyd. No.	= 12 - Post Combine to Pond	Max. Elevation	= 2500.25 ft
Reservoir name	= <Infiltraion Basin 1>	Max. Storage	= 776,484 cuft

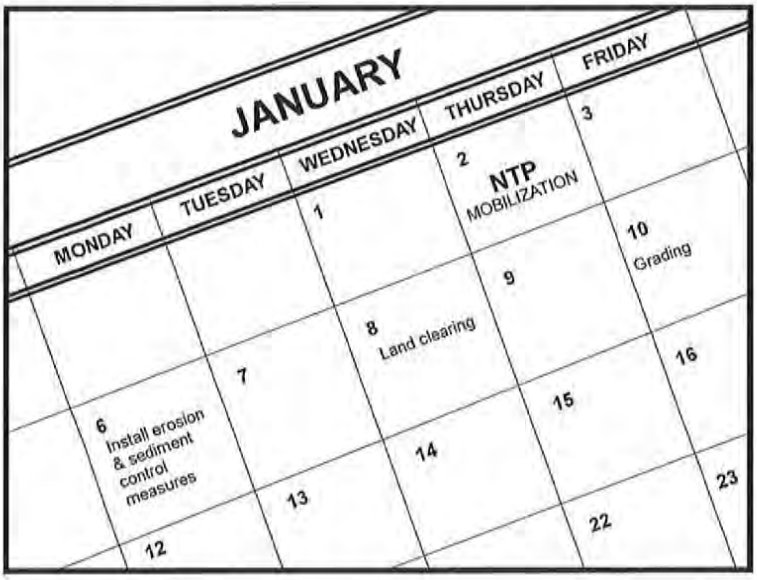
Storage Indication method used.



APPENDIX D

Best Management Practices

Scheduling EC-1



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	☒
WE	Wind Erosion Control	☒
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Scheduling is the development of a written plan that includes sequencing of construction activities and the implementation of BMPs such as erosion control and sediment control while taking local climate (rainfall, wind, etc.) into consideration. The purpose is to reduce the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff, and vehicle tracking, and to perform the construction activities and control practices in accordance with the planned schedule.

Suitable Applications

Proper sequencing of construction activities to reduce erosion potential should be incorporated into the schedule of every construction project especially during rainy season. Use of other, more costly yet less effective, erosion and sediment control BMPs may often be reduced through proper construction sequencing.

Limitations

- Environmental constraints such as nesting season prohibitions reduce the full capabilities of this BMP.

Implementation

- Avoid rainy periods. Schedule major grading operations during dry months when practical. Allow enough time before rainfall begins to stabilize the soil with vegetation or physical means or to install sediment trapping devices.
- Plan the project and develop a schedule showing each phase of construction. Clearly show how the rainy season relates

to soil disturbing and re-stabilization activities. Incorporate the construction schedule into the SWPPP.

- Include on the schedule, details on the rainy season implementation and deployment of:
  - Erosion control BMPs
  - Sediment control BMPs
  - Tracking control BMPs
  - Wind erosion control BMPs
  - Non-stormwater BMPs
  - Waste management and materials pollution control BMPs
- Include dates for activities that may require non-stormwater discharges such as dewatering, sawcutting, grinding, drilling, boring, crushing, blasting, painting, hydro-demolition, mortar mixing, pavement cleaning, etc.
- Work out the sequencing and timetable for the start and completion of each item such as site clearing and grubbing, grading, excavation, paving, foundation pouring utilities installation, etc., to minimize the active construction area during the rainy season.
  - Sequence trenching activities so that most open portions are closed before new trenching begins.
  - Incorporate staged seeding and re-vegetation of graded slopes as work progresses.
  - Schedule establishment of permanent vegetation during appropriate planting time for specified vegetation.
- Non-active areas should be stabilized as soon as practical after the cessation of soil disturbing activities or one day prior to the onset of precipitation.
- Monitor the weather forecast for rainfall.
- When rainfall is predicted, adjust the construction schedule to allow the implementation of soil stabilization and sediment treatment controls on all disturbed areas prior to the onset of rain.
- Be prepared year round to deploy erosion control and sediment control BMPs. Erosion may be caused during dry seasons by un-seasonal rainfall, wind, and vehicle tracking. Keep the site stabilized year round, and retain and maintain rainy season sediment trapping devices in operational condition.
- Apply permanent erosion control to areas deemed substantially complete during the project's defined seeding window.

Costs

Construction scheduling to reduce erosion may increase other construction costs due to reduced economies of scale in performing site grading. The cost effectiveness of scheduling techniques should be compared with the other less effective erosion and sedimentation controls to achieve a cost effective balance.

Inspection and Maintenance

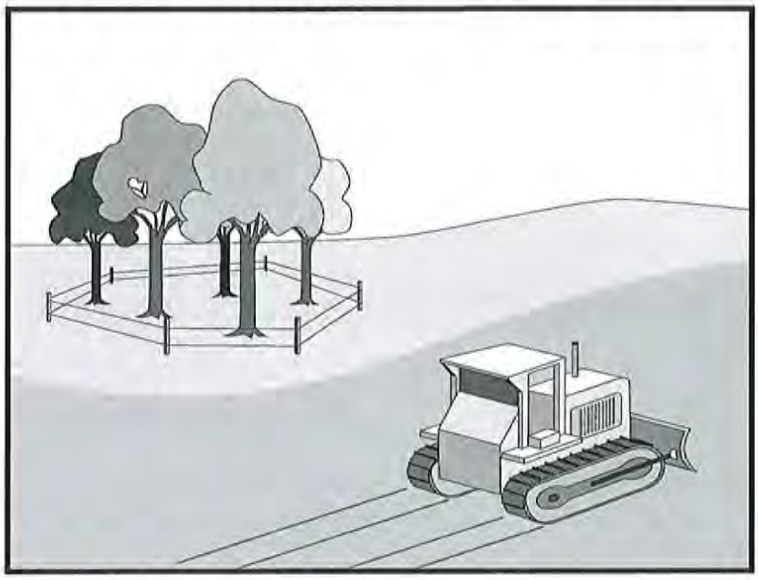
- Verify that work is progressing in accordance with the schedule. If progress deviates, take corrective actions.
- Amend the schedule when changes are warranted.
- Amend the schedule prior to the rainy season to show updated information on the deployment and implementation of construction site BMPs.

References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices (EPA 832-R-92-005), U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, September 1992.

Preservation Of Existing Vegetation EC-2



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Carefully planned preservation of existing vegetation minimizes the potential of removing or injuring existing trees, vines, shrubs, and grasses that protect soil from erosion.

Suitable Applications

Preservation of existing vegetation is suitable for use on most projects. Large project sites often provide the greatest opportunity for use of this BMP. Suitable applications include the following:

- Areas within the site where no construction activity occurs, or occurs at a later date. This BMP is especially suitable to multi year projects where grading can be phased.
- Areas where natural vegetation exists and is designated for preservation. Such areas often include steep slopes, watercourse, and building sites in wooded areas.
- Areas where local, state, and federal government require preservation, such as vernal pools, wetlands, marshes, certain oak trees, etc. These areas are usually designated on the plans, or in the specifications, permits, or environmental documents.
- Where vegetation designated for ultimate removal can be temporarily preserved and be utilized for erosion control and sediment control.

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

Preservation Of Existing Vegetation EC-2

Limitations

- Requires forward planning by the owner/developer, contractor, and design staff.
- Limited opportunities for use when project plans do not incorporate existing vegetation into the site design.
- For sites with diverse topography, it is often difficult and expensive to save existing trees while grading the site satisfactory for the planned development.

Implementation

The best way to prevent erosion is to not disturb the land. In order to reduce the impacts of new development and redevelopment, projects may be designed to avoid disturbing land in sensitive areas of the site (e.g., natural watercourses, steep slopes), and to incorporate unique or desirable existing vegetation into the site's landscaping plan. Clearly marking and leaving a buffer area around these unique areas during construction will help to preserve these areas as well as take advantage of natural erosion prevention and sediment trapping.

Existing vegetation to be preserved on the site must be protected from mechanical and other injury while the land is being developed. The purpose of protecting existing vegetation is to ensure the survival of desirable vegetation for shade, beautification, and erosion control. Mature vegetation has extensive root systems that help to hold soil in place, thus reducing erosion. In addition, vegetation helps keep soil from drying rapidly and becoming susceptible to erosion. To effectively save existing vegetation, no disturbances of any kind should be allowed within a defined area around the vegetation. For trees, no construction activity should occur within the drip line of the tree.

Timing

- Provide for preservation of existing vegetation prior to the commencement of clearing and grubbing operations or other soil disturbing activities in areas where no construction activity is planned or will occur at a later date.

Design and Layout

- Mark areas to be preserved with temporary fencing. Include sufficient setback to protect roots.
  - Orange colored plastic mesh fencing works well.
  - Use appropriate fence posts and adequate post spacing and depth to completely support the fence in an upright position.
- Locate temporary roadways, stockpiles, and layout areas to avoid stands of trees, shrubs, and grass.
- Consider the impact of grade changes to existing vegetation and the root zone.
- Maintain existing irrigation systems where feasible. Temporary irrigation may be required.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors to honor protective devices. Prohibit heavy equipment, vehicular traffic, or storage of construction materials within the protected area.

Costs

There is little cost associated with preserving existing vegetation if properly planned during the project design, and these costs may be offset by aesthetic benefits that enhance property values. During construction, the cost for preserving existing vegetation will likely be less than the cost of applying erosion and sediment controls to the disturbed area. Replacing vegetation inadvertently destroyed during construction can be extremely expensive, sometimes in excess of $10,000 per tree.

Inspection and Maintenance

During construction, the limits of disturbance should remain clearly marked at all times. Irrigation or maintenance of existing vegetation should be described in the landscaping plan. If damage to protected trees still occurs, maintenance guidelines described below should be followed:

- Verify that protective measures remain in place. Restore damaged protection measures immediately.
- Serious tree injuries shall be attended to by an arborist.
- Damage to the crown, trunk, or root system of a retained tree shall be repaired immediately.
- Trench as far from tree trunks as possible, usually outside of the tree drip line or canopy. Curve trenches around trees to avoid large roots or root concentrations. If roots are encountered, consider tunneling under them. When trenching or tunneling near or under trees to be retained, place tunnels at least 18 in. below the ground surface, and not below the tree center to minimize impact on the roots.
- Do not leave tree roots exposed to air. Cover exposed roots with soil as soon as possible. If soil covering is not practical, protect exposed roots with wet burlap or peat moss until the tunnel or trench is ready for backfill.
- Cleanly remove the ends of damaged roots with a smooth cut.
- Fill trenches and tunnels as soon as possible. Careful filling and tamping will eliminate air spaces in the soil, which can damage roots.
- If bark damage occurs, cut back all loosened bark into the undamaged area, with the cut tapered at the top and bottom and drainage provided at the base of the wood. Limit cutting the undamaged area as much as possible.
- Aerate soil that has been compacted over a trees root zone by punching holes 12 in. deep with an iron bar, and moving the bar back and forth until the soil is loosened. Place holes 18 in. apart throughout the area of compacted soil under the tree crown.
- Fertilization
  - Fertilize stressed or damaged broadleaf trees to aid recovery.
  - Fertilize trees in the late fall or early spring.

- Apply fertilizer to the soil over the feeder roots and in accordance with label instructions, but never closer than 3 ft to the trunk. Increase the fertilized area by one-fourth of the crown area for conifers that have extended root systems.

- Retain protective measures until all other construction activity is complete to avoid damage during site cleanup and stabilization.

References

County of Sacramento Tree Preservation Ordinance, September 1981.

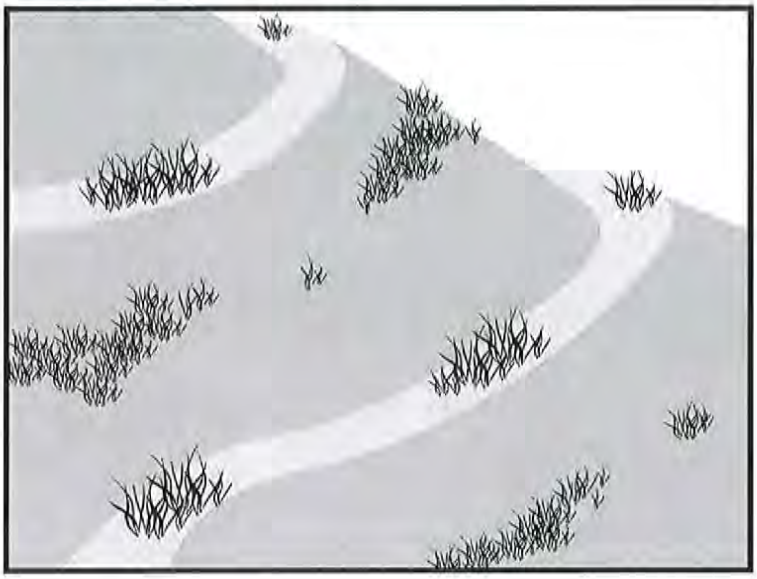
Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for The Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Hydroseeding

EC-4



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	☒
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch

EC-5 Soil Binders

EC-6 Straw Mulch

EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats

EC-8 Wood Mulching

EC-14 Compost Blanket

EC-16 Non-Vegetative Stabilization

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Hydroseeding typically consists of applying a mixture of a hydraulic mulch, seed, fertilizer, and stabilizing emulsion with a hydraulic mulcher, to temporarily protect exposed soils from erosion by water and wind. Hydraulic seeding, or hydroseeding, is simply the method by which temporary or permanent seed is applied to the soil surface.

Suitable Applications

Hydroseeding is suitable for disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established, for disturbed areas that will be re-disturbed following an extended period of inactivity, or to apply permanent stabilization measures. Hydroseeding without mulch or other cover (e.g. EC-7, Erosion Control Blanket) is not a stand-alone erosion control BMP and should be combined with additional measures until vegetation establishment.

Typical applications for hydroseeding include:

- Disturbed soil/graded areas where permanent stabilization or continued earthwork is not anticipated prior to seed germination.
- Cleared and graded areas exposed to seasonal rains or temporary irrigation.
- Areas not subject to heavy wear by construction equipment or high traffic.

Limitations

- Availability of hydroseeding equipment may be limited just prior to the rainy season and prior to storms due to high demand.
- Hydraulic seed should be applied with hydraulic mulch or a stand-alone hydroseed application should be followed by one of the following:
  - Straw mulch (see Straw Mulch EC-6)
  - Rolled erosion control products (see Geotextiles and Mats EC-7)
  - Application of Compost Blanket (see Compost Blanket EC-14)

  Hydraulic seed may be used alone only on small flat surfaces when there is sufficient time in the season to ensure adequate vegetation establishment and coverage to provide adequate erosion control.
- Hydraulic seed without mulch does not provide immediate erosion control.
- Temporary seeding may not be appropriate for steep slopes (i.e., slopes readily prone to rill erosion or without sufficient topsoil).
- Temporary seeding may not be appropriate in dry periods without supplemental irrigation.
- Temporary vegetation may have to be removed before permanent vegetation is applied.
- Temporary vegetation may not be appropriate for short term inactivity (i.e. less than 3-6 months).
- This BMP consists of a mixture of several constituents (e.g., fibers/mulches, tackifiers, and other chemical constituents), some of which may be proprietary and may come pre-mixed by the manufacturer. The water quality impacts of these constituents are relatively unknown and some may have water quality impacts due to their chemical makeup. Additionally these constituents may require non-visible pollutant monitoring. Refer to specific chemical properties identified in the product Material Safety Data Sheet; products should be evaluated for project-specific implementation by the SWPPP Preparer. Refer to factsheet EC-05 for further guidance on selecting soil binders.

Implementation

In order to select appropriate hydraulic seed mixtures, an evaluation of site conditions should be performed with respect to:

- Soil conditions
- Site topography and exposure (sun/wind)
- Season and climate
- Vegetation types
- Maintenance requirements
- Sensitive adjacent areas
- Water availability
- Plans for permanent vegetation

The local office of the U.S.D.A. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), Resource Conservation Districts and Agricultural Extension Service can provide information on appropriate seed mixes.

The following steps should be followed for implementation:

- Where appropriate or feasible, soil should be prepared to receive the seed by disking or otherwise scarifying (See EC-15, Soil Preparation) the surface to eliminate crust, improve air and water infiltration and create a more favorable environment for germination and growth.
- Avoid use of hydraulic seed in areas where the BMP would be incompatible with future earthwork activities.
- Hydraulic seed can be applied using a multiple step or one step process.
  - In a multiple step process, hydraulic seed is applied first, followed by mulch or a Rolled Erosion Control Product (RECP).
  - In the one step process, hydraulic seed is applied with hydraulic mulch in a hydraulic matrix. When the one step process is used to apply the mixture of fiber, seed, etc., the seed rate should be increased to compensate for all seeds not having direct contact with the soil.
- All hydraulically seeded areas should have mulch, or alternate erosion control cover to keep seeds in place and to moderate soil moisture and temperature until the seeds germinate and grow.
- All seeds should be in conformance with the California State Seed Law of the Department of Agriculture. Each seed bag should be delivered to the site sealed and clearly marked as to species, purity, percent germination, dealer's guarantee, and dates of test. The container should be labeled to clearly reflect the amount of Pure Live Seed (PLS) contained. All legume seed should be pellet inoculated. Inoculant sources should be species specific and should be applied at a rate of 2 lb of inoculant per 100 lb seed.
- Commercial fertilizer should conform to the requirements of the California Food and Agricultural Code, which can be found at http://www.leginfo.ca.gov/.html/fac_table_of_contents.html. Fertilizer should be pelleted or granular form.
- Follow up applications should be made as needed to cover areas of poor coverage or germination/vegetation establishment and to maintain adequate soil protection.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

Costs

Average cost for installation and maintenance may vary from as low as $1,900 per acre for flat slopes and stable soils, to $4,000 per acre for moderate to steep slopes and/or erosive soils. Cost of seed mixtures vary based on types of required vegetation.

BMP	Installed Cost per Acre
Hydraulic Seed	$1,900-$4,000

Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004).

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Where seeds fail to germinate, or they germinate and die, the area must be re-seeded, fertilized, and mulched within the planting season, using not less than half the original application rates.
- Irrigation systems, if applicable, should be inspected daily while in use to identify system malfunctions and line breaks. When line breaks are detected, the system must be shut down immediately and breaks repaired before the system is put back into operation.
- Irrigation systems should be inspected for complete coverage and adjusted as needed to maintain complete coverage.

References

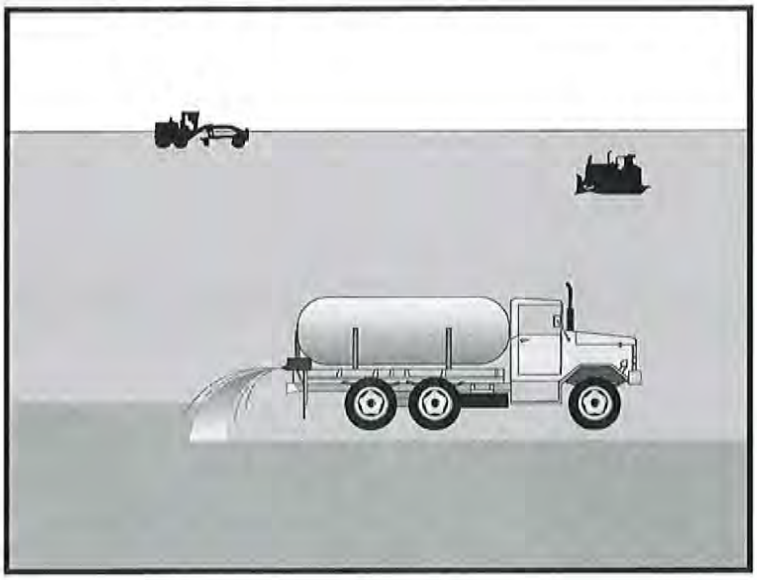
Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.

Soil Binders

EC-5



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	☒
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch

EC-4 Hydroseeding

EC-6 Straw Mulch

EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats

EC-8 Wood Mulching

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Soil binding consists of application and maintenance of a soil stabilizer to exposed soil surfaces. Soil binders are materials applied to the soil surface to temporarily prevent water and wind induced erosion of exposed soils on construction sites.

Suitable Applications

Soil binders are typically applied to disturbed areas requiring temporary protection. Because soil binders, when used as a stand-alone practice, can often be incorporated into the soil, they are a good alternative to mulches in areas where grading activities will soon resume. Soil binders are commonly used in the following areas:

- Rough graded soils that will be inactive for a short period of time
- Soil stockpiles
- Temporary haul roads prior to placement of crushed rock
- Compacted soil road base
- Construction staging, materials storage, and layout areas

Limitations

- Soil binders are temporary in nature and may need reapplication.
- Soil binders require a minimum curing time until fully effective, as prescribed by the manufacturer. Curing time

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

may be 24 hours or longer. Soil binders may need reapplication after a storm event.

- Soil binders will generally experience spot failures during heavy rainfall events. If runoff penetrates the soil at the top of a slope treated with a soil binder, it is likely that the runoff will undercut the stabilized soil layer and discharge at a point further down slope.
- Plant-material-based soil binders do not generally hold up to pedestrian or vehicular traffic across treated areas as well as polymeric emulsion blends or cementitious-based binders.
- Soil binders may not sufficiently penetrate compacted soils.
- Some soil binders are soil texture specific in terms of their effectiveness. For example, polyacrylamides (PAMs) work very well on silt and clayey soils but their performance decreases dramatically in sandy soils.
- Some soil binders may not perform well with low relative humidity. Under rainy conditions, some agents may become slippery or leach out of the soil.
- Soil binders may not cure if low temperatures occur within 24 hours of application.
- The water quality impacts of some chemical soil binders are relatively unknown and some may have water quality impacts due to their chemical makeup. Additionally, these chemical may require non-visible pollutant monitoring. Products should be evaluated for project-specific implementation by the SWPPP Preparer. Refer to the product Material Safety Data Sheet for chemical properties.

Implementation

General Considerations

- Soil binders should conform to local municipality specifications and requirements.
- Site soil types will dictate appropriate soil binders to be used.
- A soil binder must be environmentally benign (non-toxic to plant and animal life), easy to apply, easy to maintain, economical, and should not stain paved or painted surfaces. Soil binders should not pollute stormwater when cured. Obtain a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) from the manufacturer to ensure non-toxicity.
- Stormwater runoff from PAM treated soils should pass through one of the following sediment control BMP prior to discharging to surface waters.
  - When the total drainage area is greater than or equal to 5 acres, PAM treated areas should drain to a sediment basin.
  - Areas less than 5 acres should drain to sediment control BMPs, such as a sediment trap, or a series of check dams. The total number of check dams used should be maximized to achieve the greatest amount of settlement of sediment prior to discharging from the site. Each check dam should be spaced evenly in the drainage channel through which stormwater flows are discharged off site.

- Performance of soil binders depends on temperature, humidity, and traffic across treated areas.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

Selecting a Soil Binder

Properties of common soil binders used for erosion control are provided on Table 1 at the end of this Fact Sheet. Use Table 1 to select an appropriate soil binder. Refer to WE-1, Wind Erosion Control, for dust control soil binders.

Factors to consider when selecting a soil binder include the following:

- Suitability to situation - Consider where the soil binder will be applied, if it needs a high resistance to leaching or abrasion, and whether it needs to be compatible with any existing vegetation. Determine the length of time soil stabilization will be needed, and if the soil binder will be placed in an area where it will degrade rapidly. In general, slope steepness is not a discriminating factor for the listed soil binders.
- Soil types and surface materials - Fines and moisture content are key properties of surface materials. Consider a soil binder's ability to penetrate, likelihood of leaching, and ability to form a surface crust on the surface materials.
- Frequency of application - The frequency of application is related to the functional longevity of the binder, which can be affected by subgrade conditions, surface type, climate, and maintenance schedule.
- Frequent applications could lead to high costs. Application frequency may be minimized if the soil binder has good penetration, low evaporation, and good longevity. Consider also that frequent application will require frequent equipment clean up.

Plant-Material-Based (Short Lived, <6 months) Binders

Guar: Guar is a non-toxic, biodegradable, natural galactomannan-based hydrocolloid treated with dispersant agents for easy field mixing. It should be mixed with water at the rate of 11 to 15 lb per 1,000 gallons. Recommended minimum application rates are as follows:

Application Rates for Guar Soil Stabilizer

Slope (H:V):	Flat	4:1	3:1	2:1	1:1
lb/acre:	40	45	50	60	70

Psyllium: Psyllium is composed of the finely ground muciloid coating of plantago seeds that is applied as a dry powder or in a wet slurry to the surface of the soil. It dries to form a firm but rewettable membrane that binds soil particles together, but permits germination and growth of seed. Psyllium requires 12 to 18 hours drying time. Application rates should be from 80 to 200 lb/acre, with enough water in solution to allow for a uniform slurry flow.

Starch: Starch is non-ionic, cold water soluble (pre-gelatinized) granular cornstarch. The material is mixed with water and applied at the rate of 150 lb/acre. Approximate drying time is 9 to 12 hours.

Plant-Material-Based (Long Lived, 6-12 months) Binders

Pitch and Rosin Emulsion: Generally, a non-ionic pitch and rosin emulsion has a minimum solids content of 48%. The rosin should be a minimum of 26% of the total solids content. The soil stabilizer should be non-corrosive, water dilutable emulsion that upon application cures to a water insoluble binding and cementing agent. For soil erosion control applications, the emulsion is diluted and should be applied as follows:

- For clayey soil: 5 parts water to 1 part emulsion
- For sandy soil: 10 parts water to 1 part emulsion

Application can be by water truck or hydraulic seeder with the emulsion and product mixture applied at the rate specified by the manufacturer.

Polymeric Emulsion Blend Binders

Acrylic Copolymers and Polymers: Polymeric soil stabilizers should consist of a liquid or solid polymer or copolymer with an acrylic base that contains a minimum of 55% solids. The polymeric compound should be handled and mixed in a manner that will not cause foaming or should contain an anti-foaming agent. The polymeric emulsion should not exceed its shelf life or expiration date; manufacturers should provide the expiration date. Polymeric soil stabilizer should be readily miscible in water, non-injurious to seed or animal life, non-flammable, should provide surface soil stabilization for various soil types without totally inhibiting water infiltration, and should not re-emulsify when cured. The applied compound typically requires 12 to 24 hours drying time. Liquid copolymer should be diluted at a rate of 10 parts water to 1 part polymer and the mixture applied to soil at a rate of 1,175 gallons/acre.

Liquid Polymers of Methacrylates and Acrylates: This material consists of a tackifier/sealer that is a liquid polymer of methacrylates and acrylates. It is an aqueous 100% acrylic emulsion blend of 40% solids by volume that is free from styrene, acetate, vinyl, ethoxylated surfactants or silicates. For soil stabilization applications, it is diluted with water in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and applied with a hydraulic seeder at the rate of 20 gallons/acre. Drying time is 12 to 18 hours after application.

Copolymers of Sodium Acrylates and Acrylamides: These materials are non-toxic, dry powders that are copolymers of sodium acrylate and acrylamide. They are mixed with water and applied to the soil surface for erosion control at rates that are determined by slope gradient:

Slope Gradient (H:V)	lb/acre
Flat to 5:1	3.0 – 5.0
5:1 to 3:1	5.0 – 10.0
2:1 to 1:1	10.0 – 20.0

Poly-Acrylamide (PAM) and Copolymer of Acrylamide: Linear copolymer polyacrylamide for use as a soil binder is packaged as a dry flowable solid, as a liquid. Refer to the manufacturer's recommendation for dilution and application rates as they vary based on liquid or dry form, site conditions and climate.

- Limitations specific to PAM are as follows:
  - Do not use PAM on a slope that flows into a water body without passing through a sediment trap or sediment basin.
  - The specific PAM copolymer formulation must be anionic. Cationic PAM should not be used in any application because of known aquatic toxicity problems. Only the highest drinking water grade PAM, certified for compliance with ANSI/NSF Standard 60 for drinking water treatment, should be used for soil applications.
  - PAM designated for erosion and sediment control should be "water soluble" or "linear" or "non-cross linked".
  - PAM should not be used as a stand-alone BMP to protect against water-based erosion. When combined with mulch, its effectiveness increases dramatically.

Hydro-Colloid Polymers: Hydro-Colloid Polymers are various combinations of dry flowable poly-acrylamides, copolymers and hydro-colloid polymers that are mixed with water and applied to the soil surface at rates of 55 to 60 lb/acre. Drying times are 0 to 4 hours.

Cementitious-Based Binders

Gypsum: This is a formulated gypsum based product that readily mixes with water and mulch to form a thin protective crust on the soil surface. It is composed of high purity gypsum that is ground, calcined and processed into calcium sulfate hemihydrate with a minimum purity of 86%. It is mixed in a hydraulic seeder and applied at rates 4,000 to 12,000 lb/acre. Drying time is 4 to 8 hours.

Applying Soil Binders

After selecting an appropriate soil binder, the untreated soil surface must be prepared before applying the soil binder. The untreated soil surface must contain sufficient moisture to assist the agent in achieving uniform distribution. In general, the following steps should be followed:

- Follow manufacturer's written recommendations for application rates, pre-wetting of application area, and cleaning of equipment after use.
- Prior to application, roughen embankment and fill areas.
- Consider the drying time for the selected soil binder and apply with sufficient time before anticipated rainfall. Soil binders should not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, sound walls, existing vegetation, etc.

- Soil binders should not be applied to frozen soil, areas with standing water, under freezing or rainy conditions, or when the temperature is below 40°F during the curing period.
- More than one treatment is often necessary, although the second treatment may be diluted or have a lower application rate.
- Generally, soil binders require a minimum curing time of 24 hours before they are fully effective. Refer to manufacturer's instructions for specific cure time.
- For liquid agents:
  - Crown or slope ground to avoid ponding.
  - Uniformly pre-wet ground at 0.03 to 0.3 gal/yd² or according to manufacturer's recommendations.
  - Apply solution under pressure. Overlap solution 6 to 12 in.
  - Allow treated area to cure for the time recommended by the manufacturer; typically at least 24 hours.
  - Apply second treatment before first treatment becomes ineffective, using 50% application rate.
  - In low humidities, reactivate chemicals by re-wetting with water at 0.1 to 0.2 gal/yd².

Costs

Costs vary according to the soil stabilizer selected for implementation. The following are approximate installed costs:

Soil Binder	Cost per Acre (2004)[1]	Estimated Cost per Acre (2009)[2]
Plant-Material-Based (Short Lived) Binders	$700-$900	$770-$990
Plant-Material-Based (Long Lived) Binders	$1,200-$1,500	$1,320-$1,650
Polymeric Emulsion Blend Binders	$700 -$1,500	$770-$1,650
Cementitious-Based Binders	$800-$1,200	$880-$1,350

1. Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004).
2. 2009 costs reflect a 10% escalation over year 2004 costs. Escalation based on informal survey of industry trends. Note: Expected cost increase is offset by competitive economic conditions.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.

- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Reapply the selected soil binder as needed to maintain effectiveness.

Table 1 Properties of Soil Binders for Erosion Control

Evaluation Criteria	Binder Type			
	Plant Material Based (Short Lived)	Plant Material Based (Long Lived)	Polymeric Emulsion Blends	Cementitious-Based Binders
Relative Cost	Low	Moderate to High	Low to High	Low to Moderate
Resistance to Leaching	High	High	Low to Moderate	Moderate
Resistance to Abrasion	Moderate	Low	Moderate to High	Moderate to High
Longevity	Short to Medium	Medium	Medium to Long	Medium
Minimum Curing Time before Rain	9 to 18 hours	19 to 24 hours	0 to 24 hours	4 to 8 hours
Compatibility with Existing Vegetation	Good	Poor	Poor	Poor
Mode of Degradation	Biodegradable	Biodegradable	Photodegradable/ Chemically Degradable	Photodegradable/ Chemically Degradable
Labor Intensive	No	No	No	No
Specialized Application Equipment	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher
Liquid/Powder	Powder	Liquid	Liquid/Powder	Powder
Surface Crusting	Yes, but dissolves on rewetting	Yes	Yes, but dissolves on rewetting	Yes
Clean Up	Water	Water	Water	Water
Erosion Control Application Rate	Varies (1)	Varies (1)	Varies (1)	4,000 to 12,000 lbs/acre

(1) See Implementation for specific rates.

References

Erosion Control Pilot Study Report, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), June 2000.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control, An Inventory of Current Practices Draft, US EPA, April 1990.

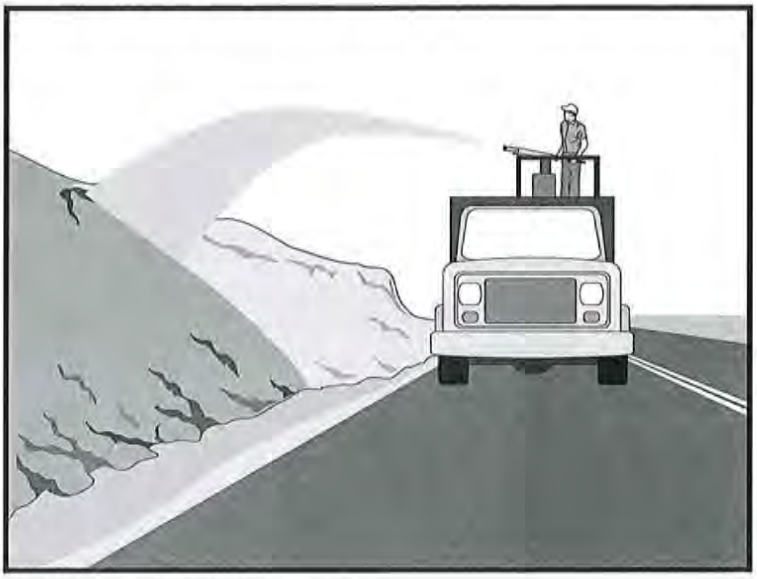
Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Straw Mulch

EC-6



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	☒
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch

EC-4 Hydroseeding

EC-5 Soil Binders

EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats

EC-8 Wood Mulching

EC-14 Compost Blanket

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Straw mulch consists of placing a uniform layer of straw and incorporating it into the soil with a studded roller or crimper, or anchoring it with a tackifier or stabilizing emulsion. Straw mulch protects the soil surface from the impact of rain drops, preventing soil particles from becoming dislodged.

Suitable Applications

Straw mulch is suitable for disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established. Straw mulch can be specified for the following applications:

- As a stand-alone BMP on disturbed areas until soils can be prepared for permanent vegetation. The longevity of straw mulch is typically less than six months.
- Applied in combination with temporary seeding strategies
- Applied in combination with permanent seeding strategies to enhance plant establishment and final soil stabilization
- Applied around containerized plantings to control erosion until the plants become established to provide permanent stabilization

Limitations

Availability of straw and straw blowing equipment may be limited just prior to the rainy season and prior to storms due to high demand.

- There is a potential for introduction of weed seed and unwanted plant material if weed-free agricultural straw is not specified.
- Straw mulch applied by hand is more time intensive and potentially costly.
- Wind may limit application of straw and blow straw into undesired locations.
- May have to be removed prior to permanent seeding or prior to further earthwork.
- "Punching" of straw does not work in sandy soils, necessitating the use of tackifiers.
- Potential fugitive dust control issues associated with straw applications can occur. Application of a stabilizing emulsion or a water stream at the same time straw is being blown can reduce this problem.
- Use of plastic netting should be avoided in areas where wildlife may be entrapped and may be prohibited for projects in certain areas with sensitive wildlife species, especially reptiles and amphibians.

Implementation

- Straw should be derived from weed-free wheat, rice, or barley. Where required by the plans, specifications, permits, or environmental documents, native grass straw should be used.
- Use tackifier to anchor straw mulch to the soil on slopes.
- Crimping, punch roller-type rollers, or track walking may also be used to incorporate straw mulch into the soil on slopes. Track walking can be used where other methods are impractical.
- Avoid placing straw onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, sound walls, existing vegetation, etc.
- Straw mulch with tackifier should not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

Application Procedures

- When using a tackifier to anchor the straw mulch, roughen embankment or fill areas by rolling with a crimping or punching-type roller or by track walking before placing the straw mulch. Track walking should only be used where rolling is impractical.
- Apply straw at a rate of between 3,000 and 4,000 lb/acre, either by machine or by hand distribution and provide 100% ground cover. A lighter application is used for flat surfaces and a heavier application is used for slopes.
- Evenly distribute straw mulch on the soil surface.
- Anchoring straw mulch to the soil surface by "punching" it into the soil mechanically (incorporating) can be used in lieu of a tackifier.

- Methods for holding the straw mulch in place depend upon the slope steepness, accessibility, soil conditions, and longevity.
  - A tackifier acts to glue the straw fibers together and to the soil surface. The tackifier should be selected based on longevity and ability to hold the fibers in place. A tackifier is typically applied at a rate of 125 lb/acre. In windy conditions, the rates are typically 180 lb/acre.
  - On very small areas, a spade or shovel can be used to punch in straw mulch.
  - On slopes with soils that are stable enough and of sufficient gradient to safely support construction equipment without contributing to compaction and instability problems, straw can be "punched" into the ground using a knife blade roller or a straight bladed coulter, known commercially as a "crimper."

Costs

Average annual cost for installation and maintenance is included in the table below. Application by hand is more time intensive and potentially more costly.

BMP	Unit Cost per Acre
Straw mulch, crimped or punched	$2,458-$5,375
Straw mulch with tackifier	$1,823-$4,802

Source: Cost information received from individual product suppliers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004).

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- The key consideration in inspection and maintenance is that the straw needs to last long enough to achieve erosion control objectives. Straw mulch as a stand-alone BMP is temporary and is not suited for long-term erosion control.
- Maintain an unbroken, temporary mulched ground cover while disturbed soil areas are inactive. Repair any damaged ground cover and re-mulch exposed areas.
- Reapplication of straw mulch and tackifier may be required to maintain effective soil stabilization over disturbed areas and slopes.

References

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

Controlling Erosion of Construction Sites, Agricultural Information Bulletin #347, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) (formerly Soil Conservation Service – SCS).

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Control in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

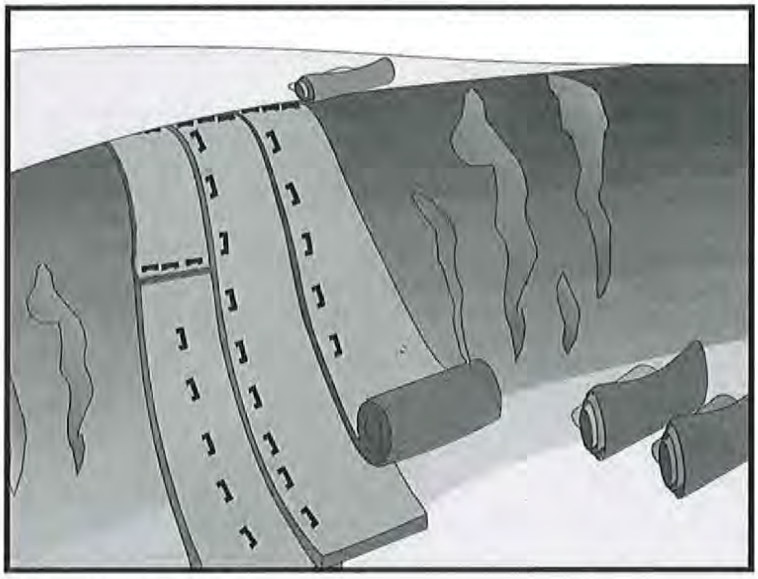
Soil Erosion by Water, Agricultural Information Bulletin #513, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Geotextiles and Mats EC-7



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	☒
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch

EC-4 Hydroseeding

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Mattings, or Rolled Erosion Control Products (RECPs), can be made of natural or synthetic materials or a combination of the two. RECPs are used to cover the soil surface to reduce erosion from rainfall impact, hold soil in place, and absorb and hold moisture near the soil surface. Additionally, RECPs may be used to stabilize soils until vegetation is established or to reinforce non-woody surface vegetation.

Suitable Applications

RECPs are typically applied on slopes where erosion hazard is high and vegetation will be slow to establish. Mattings are also used on stream banks, swales and other drainage channels where moving water at velocities between 3 ft/s and 6 ft/s are likely to cause scour and wash out new vegetation, and in areas where the soil surface is disturbed and where existing vegetation has been removed. RECPs may also be used when seeding cannot occur (e.g., late season construction and/or the arrival of an early rain season). RECPs should be considered when the soils are fine grained and potentially erosive. RECPs should be considered in the following situations.

- Steep slopes, generally steeper than 3:1 (H:V)
- Slopes where the erosion potential is high
- Slopes and disturbed soils where mulch must be anchored
- Disturbed areas where plants are slow to develop

- Channels with flows exceeding 3.3 ft/s
- Channels to be vegetated
- Stockpiles
- Slopes adjacent to water bodies

Limitations

- RECP installed costs are generally higher than other erosion control BMPs, limiting their use to areas where other BMPs are ineffective (e.g. channels, steep slopes).
- RECPs may delay seed germination, due to reduction in soil temperature.
- RECPs are generally not suitable for excessively rocky sites or areas where the final vegetation will be mowed (since staples and netting can catch in mowers). If a staple or pin cannot be driven into the soil because the underlying soil is too hard or rocky, then an alternative BMP should be selected.
- If used for temporary erosion control, RECPs should be removed and disposed of prior to application of permanent soil stabilization measures.
- The use of plastic should be limited to covering stockpiles or very small graded areas for short periods of time (such as through one imminent storm event) until more environmentally friendly measures, such as seeding and mulching, may be installed.
    - Plastic sheeting is easily vandalized, easily torn, photodegradable, and must be disposed of at a landfill.
    - Plastic sheeting results in 100% runoff, which may cause serious erosion problems in the areas receiving the increased flow.
- RECPs may have limitations based on soil type, slope gradient, or channel flow rate; consult the manufacturer for proper selection.
- Not suitable for areas that have foot traffic (tripping hazard) – e.g., pad areas around buildings under construction.
- RECPs that incorporate a plastic netting (e.g. straw blanket typically uses a plastic netting to hold the straw in place) may not be suitable near known wildlife habitat. Wildlife can become trapped in the plastic netting.
- RECPs may have limitations in extremely windy climates. However, when RECPs are properly trenched at the top and bottom and stapled in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, problems with wind can be minimized.

Implementation

Material Selection

- Natural RECPs have been found to be effective where re-vegetation will be provided by re-seeding. The choice of material should be based on the size of area, side slopes, surface conditions such as hardness, moisture, weed growth, and availability of materials.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.
- The following natural and synthetic RECPs are commonly used:

Geotextiles

- Material can be a woven or a non-woven polypropylene fabric with minimum thickness of 0.06 in., minimum width of 12 ft and should have minimum tensile strength of 150 lbs (warp), 80 lbs (fill) in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D 4632. The permittivity of the fabric should be approximately 0.07 sec^{-1} in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D4491. The fabric should have an ultraviolet (UV) stability of 70 percent in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation: D4355. Geotextile blankets must be secured in place with wire staples or sandbags and by keying into tops of slopes to prevent infiltration of surface waters under geotextile. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Geotextiles may be reused if they are suitable for the use intended.

Plastic Covers

- Generally plastic sheeting should only be used as stockpile covering or for very small graded areas for short periods of time (such as through one imminent storm event). If plastic sheeting must be used, choose a plastic that will withstand photo degradation.
- Plastic sheeting should have a minimum thickness of 6 mils, and must be keyed in at the top of slope (when used as a temporary slope protection) and firmly held in place with sandbags or other weights placed no more than 10 ft apart. Seams are typically taped or weighted down their entire length, and there should be at least a 12 in. to 24 in. overlap of all seams. Edges should be embedded a minimum of 6 in. in soil (when used as a temporary slope protection).
- All sheeting must be inspected periodically after installation and after significant rainstorms to check for erosion, undermining, and anchorage failure. Any failures must be repaired immediately. If washout or breakages occur, the material should be re-installed after repairing the damage to the slope.

Erosion Control Blankets/Mats

- Biodegradable RECPs are typically composed of jute fibers, curled wood fibers, straw, coconut fiber, or a combination of these materials. In order for an RECP to be considered 100% biodegradable, the netting, sewing or adhesive system that holds the biodegradable mulch fibers together must also be biodegradable. See typical installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

- **Jute** is a natural fiber that is made into a yarn that is loosely woven into a biodegradable mesh. The performance of jute as a stand-alone RECP is low. Most other RECPs outperform jute as a temporary erosion control product and therefore jute is not commonly used. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which should be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- **Excelsior** (curled wood fiber) blanket material should consist of machine produced mats of curled wood excelsior with 80 percent of the fiber 6 in. or longer. The excelsior blanket should be of consistent thickness. The wood fiber must be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. The top surface of the blanket should be covered with a photodegradable extruded plastic mesh. The blanket should be smolder resistant without the use of chemical additives and should be non-toxic and non-injurious to plant and animal life. Excelsior blankets should be furnished in rolled strips, a minimum of 48 in. wide, and should have an average weight of 0.8 lb/yd^2, ±10 percent, at the time of manufacture. Excelsior blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.

- **Straw blanket** should be machine produced mats of straw with a lightweight biodegradable netting top layer. The straw should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw blanket should be of consistent thickness. The straw should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw blanket should be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd^2. Straw blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.

- **Wood fiber blanket** is composed of biodegradable fiber mulch with extruded plastic netting held together with adhesives. The material is designed to enhance re-vegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured to the ground with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- **Coconut fiber blanket** should be a machine produced mat of 100 percent coconut fiber with biodegradable netting on the top and bottom. The coconut fiber should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The coconut fiber blanket should be of consistent thickness. The coconut fiber should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Coconut fiber blanket should be furnished in rolled strips with a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft. long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd^2. Coconut fiber blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.

- **Coconut fiber mesh** is a thin permeable membrane made from coconut or corn fiber that is spun into a yarn and woven into a biodegradable mat. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation and typically has longevity of several years. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- **Straw coconut fiber blanket** should be machine produced mats of 70 percent straw and 30 percent coconut fiber with a biodegradable netting top layer and a biodegradable bottom net. The straw and coconut fiber should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw coconut fiber blanket should be of consistent thickness. The straw and coconut fiber should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw coconut fiber blanket should be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd^2. Straw coconut fiber blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.

- Non-biodegradable RECPs are typically composed of polypropylene, polyethylene, nylon or other synthetic fibers. In some cases, a combination of biodegradable and synthetic fibers is used to construct the RECP. Netting used to hold these fibers together is typically non-biodegradable as well.

  - **Plastic netting** is a lightweight biaxially oriented netting designed for securing loose mulches like straw or paper to soil surfaces to establish vegetation. The netting is photodegradable. The netting is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Plastic mesh** is an open weave geotextile that is composed of an extruded synthetic fiber woven into a mesh with an opening size of less than ¼ in. It is used with re-vegetation or may be used to secure loose fiber such as straw to the ground. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Synthetic fiber with netting** is a mat that is composed of durable synthetic fibers treated to resist chemicals and ultraviolet light. The mat is a dense, three dimensional mesh of synthetic (typically polyolefin) fibers stitched between two polypropylene nets. The mats are designed to be re-vegetated and provide a permanent composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Bonded synthetic fibers** consist of a three dimensional geomatrix nylon (or other synthetic) matting. Typically it has more than 90 percent open area, which facilitates root growth. It's tough root reinforcing system anchors vegetation and protects against hydraulic lift and shear forces created by high volume discharges. It can be installed over prepared soil, followed by seeding into the mat. Once vegetated, it becomes an invisible composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips that must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Combination synthetic and biodegradable RECPs** consist of biodegradable fibers, such as wood fiber or coconut fiber, with a heavy polypropylene net stitched to the top and a high strength continuous filament geomatrix or net stitched to the bottom. The material is designed to enhance re-vegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips,

which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

Site Preparation

- Proper soil preparation is essential to ensure complete contact of the RECP with the soil. Soil Roughening is not recommended in areas where RECPs will be installed.
- Grade and shape the area of installation.
- Remove all rocks, clods, vegetation or other obstructions so that the installed blankets or mats will have complete, direct contact with the soil.
- Prepare seedbed by loosening 2 to 3 in. of topsoil.

Seeding/Planting

Seed the area before blanket installation for erosion control and re-vegetation. Seeding after mat installation is often specified for turf reinforcement application. When seeding prior to blanket installation, all areas disturbed during blanket installation must be re-seeded. Where soil filling is specified for turf reinforcement mats (TRMs), seed the matting and the entire disturbed area after installation and prior to filling the mat with soil.

Fertilize and seed in accordance with seeding specifications or other types of landscaping plans. The protective matting can be laid over areas where grass has been planted and the seedlings have emerged. Where vines or other ground covers are to be planted, lay the protective matting first and then plant through matting according to design of planting.

Check Slots

Check slots shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

Laying and Securing Matting

- Before laying the matting, all check slots should be installed and the seedbed should be friable, made free from clods, rocks, and roots. The surface should be compacted and finished according to the requirements of the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Mechanical or manual lay down equipment should be capable of handling full rolls of fabric and laying the fabric smoothly without wrinkles or folds. The equipment should meet the fabric manufacturer's recommendations or equivalent standards.

Anchoring

- U-shaped wire staples, metal geotextile stake pins, or triangular wooden stakes can be used to anchor mats and blankets to the ground surface.
- Wire staples should be made of minimum 11 gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Metal stake pins should be 0.188 in. diameter steel with a 1.5 in. steel washer at the head of the pin, and 8 in. in length.
- Wire staples and metal stakes should be driven flush to the soil surface.

Installation on Slopes

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Begin at the top of the slope and anchor the blanket in a 6 in. deep by 6 in. wide trench. Backfill trench and tamp earth firmly.
- Unroll blanket down slope in the direction of water flow.
- Overlap the edges of adjacent parallel rolls 2 to 3 in. and staple every 3 ft (or greater, per manufacturer's specifications).
- When blankets must be spliced, place blankets end over end (shingle style) with 6 in. overlap. Staple through overlapped area, approximately 12 in. apart.
- Lay blankets loosely and maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
- Staple blankets sufficiently to anchor blanket and maintain contact with the soil. Staples should be placed down the center and staggered with the staples placed along the edges. Steep slopes, 1:1 (H:V) to 2:1 (H:V), require a minimum of 2 staples/yd^2. Moderate slopes, 2:1 (H:V) to 3:1 (H:V), require a minimum of 1 ½ staples/yd^2. Check manufacturer's specifications to determine if a higher density staple pattern is required.

Installation in Channels

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Dig initial anchor trench 12 in. deep and 6 in. wide across the channel at the lower end of the project area.
- Excavate intermittent check slots, 6 in. deep and 6 in. wide across the channel at 25 to 30 ft intervals along the channels.
- Cut longitudinal channel anchor trenches 4 in. deep and 4 in. wide along each side of the installation to bury edges of matting, whenever possible extend matting 2 to 3 in. above the crest of the channel side slopes.
- Beginning at the downstream end and in the center of the channel, place the initial end of the first roll in the anchor trench and secure with fastening devices at 12 in. intervals. Note: matting will initially be upside down in anchor trench.
- In the same manner, position adjacent rolls in anchor trench, overlapping the preceding roll a minimum of 3 in.
- Secure these initial ends of mats with anchors at 12 in. intervals, backfill and compact soil.
- Unroll center strip of matting upstream. Stop at next check slot or terminal anchor trench. Unroll adjacent mats upstream in similar fashion, maintaining a 3 in. overlap.

- Fold and secure all rolls of matting snugly into all transverse check slots. Lay mat in the bottom of the slot then fold back against itself. Anchor through both layers of mat at 12 in. intervals, then backfill and compact soil. Continue rolling all mat widths upstream to the next check slot or terminal anchor trench.
- Alternate method for non-critical installations: Place two rows of anchors on 6 in. centers at 25 to 30 ft. intervals in lieu of excavated check slots.
- Staple shingled lap spliced ends a minimum of 12 in. apart on 12 in. intervals.
- Place edges of outside mats in previously excavated longitudinal slots; anchor using prescribed staple pattern, backfill, and compact soil.
- Anchor, fill, and compact upstream end of mat in a 12 in. by 6 in. terminal trench.
- Secure mat to ground surface using U-shaped wire staples, geotextile pins, or wooden stakes.
- Seed and fill turf reinforcement matting with soil, if specified.

Soil Filling (if specified for turf reinforcement mat (TRM))

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Typical installation guidelines are as follows:

- After seeding, spread and lightly rake ½-3/4 inches of fine topsoil into the TRM apertures to completely fill TRM thickness. Use backside of rake or other flat implement.
- Alternatively, if allowed by product specifications, spread topsoil using lightweight loader, backhoe, or other power equipment. Avoid sharp turns with equipment.
- Always consult the manufacturer's recommendations for installation.
- Do not drive tracked or heavy equipment over mat.
- Avoid any traffic over matting if loose or wet soil conditions exist.
- Use shovels, rakes, or brooms for fine grading and touch up.
- Smooth out soil filling just exposing top netting of mat.

Temporary Soil Stabilization Removal

- Temporary soil stabilization removed from the site of the work must be disposed of if necessary.

Costs

Installed costs can be relatively high compared to other BMPs. Approximate costs for installed materials are shown below:

Rolled Erosion Control Products		Installed Cost per Acre (2004)[1]	Estimated Cost per Acre (2009)[2]
Biodegradable	Jute Mesh	$6,000-$7,000	$6,600-$7,700
	Curled Wood Fiber	$8,000-$10,500	$8,800-$11,050
	Straw	$8,000-$10,500	$8,800-$11,050
	Wood Fiber	$8,000-$10,500	$8,800-$11,050
	Coconut Fiber	$13,000-$14,000	$14,300-$15,400
	Coconut Fiber Mesh	$30,000-$33,000	$33,000-$36,300
	Straw Coconut Fiber	$10,000-$12,000	$11,000-$13,200
Non-Biodegradable	Plastic Netting	$2,000-$2,200	$2,200-$2,220
	Plastic Mesh	$3,000-$3,500	$3,300-$3,850
	Synthetic Fiber with Netting	$34,000-$40,000	$37,400-$44,000
	Bonded Synthetic Fibers	$45,000-$55,000	$49,500-$60,500
	Combination with Biodegradable	$30,000-$36,000	$33,000-$39,600

1. Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004).
2. 2009 costs reflect a 10% escalation over year 2004 costs. Escalation based on informal survey of industry trends. Note: Expected cost increase is offset by competitive economic conditions.

Inspection and Maintenance

- RECPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs reapplied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require reapplication of BMPs.
- If washout or breakage occurs, re-install the material after repairing the damage to the slope or channel.
- Make sure matting is uniformly in contact with the soil.
- Check that all the lap joints are secure.
- Check that staples are flush with the ground.

References

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005

Erosion Control Pilot Study Report, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), June 2000.

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Controls in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

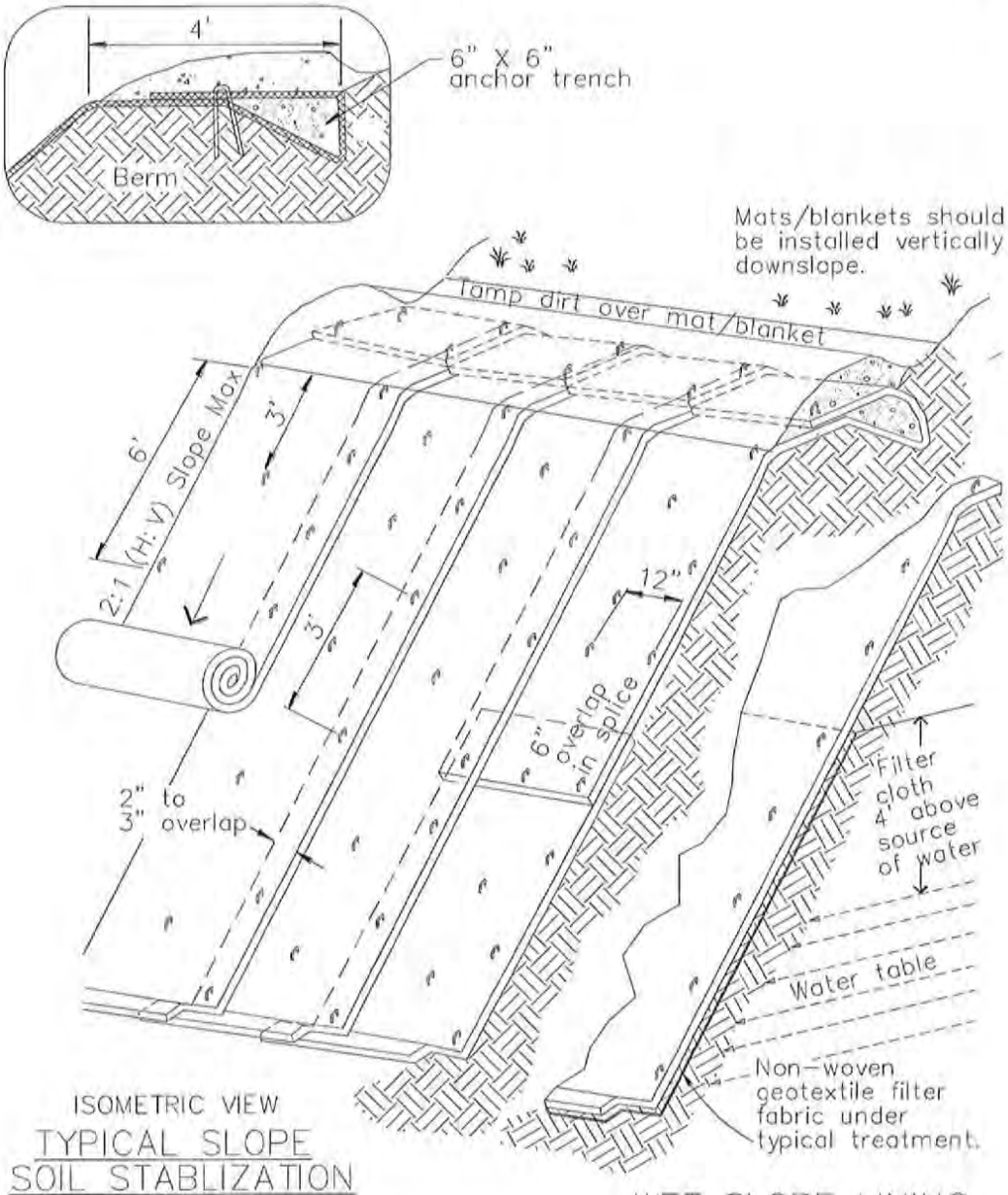
National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for The Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



ISOMETRIC VIEW

TYPICAL SLOPE SOIL STABLIZATION

NTS

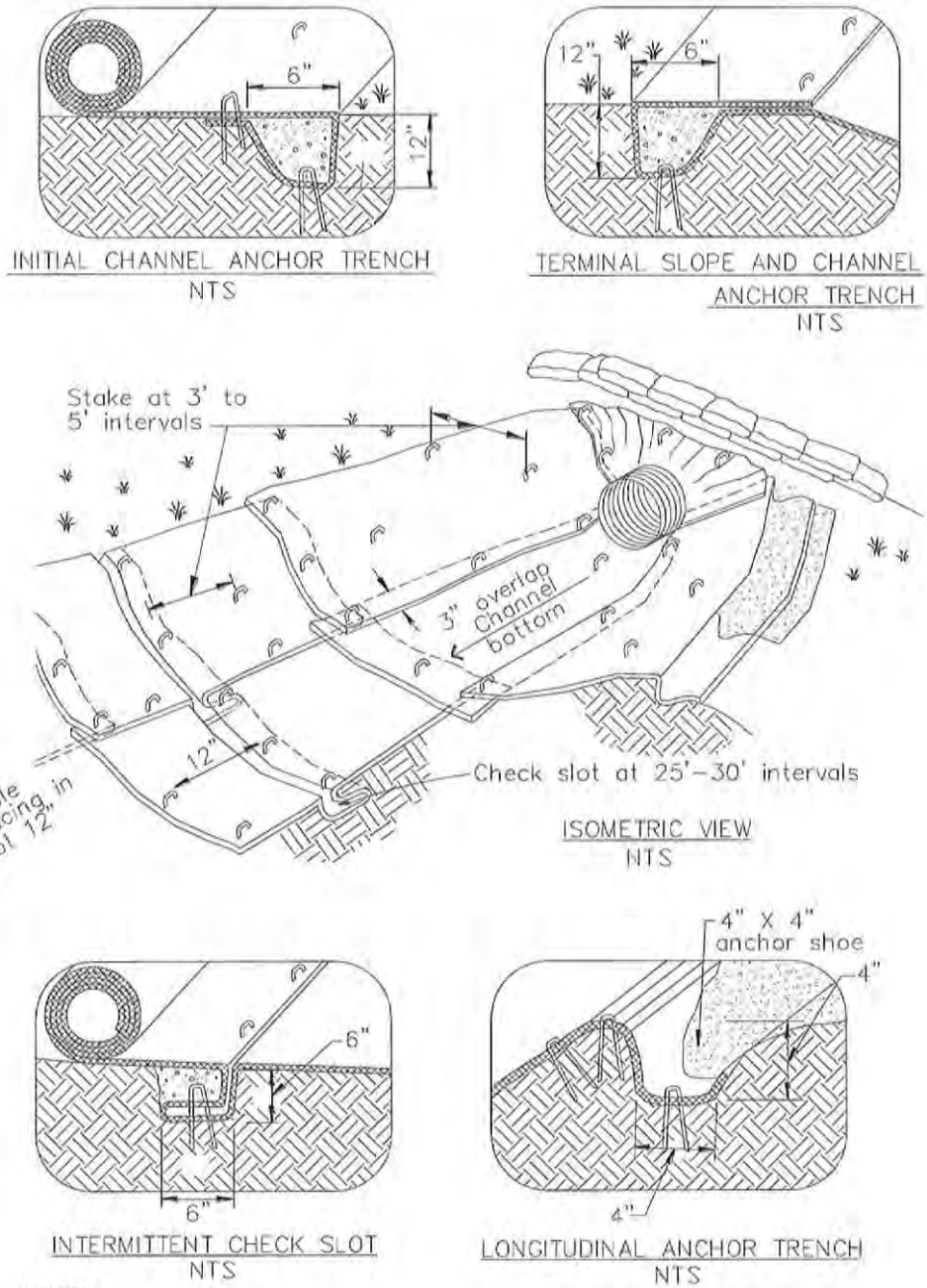
WET SLOPE LINING

NTS

NOTES:

1. Slope surface shall be free of rocks, clods, sticks and grass. Mats/blankets shall have good soil contact.
2. Lay blankets loosely and stake or staple to maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

TYPICAL INSTALLATION DETAIL

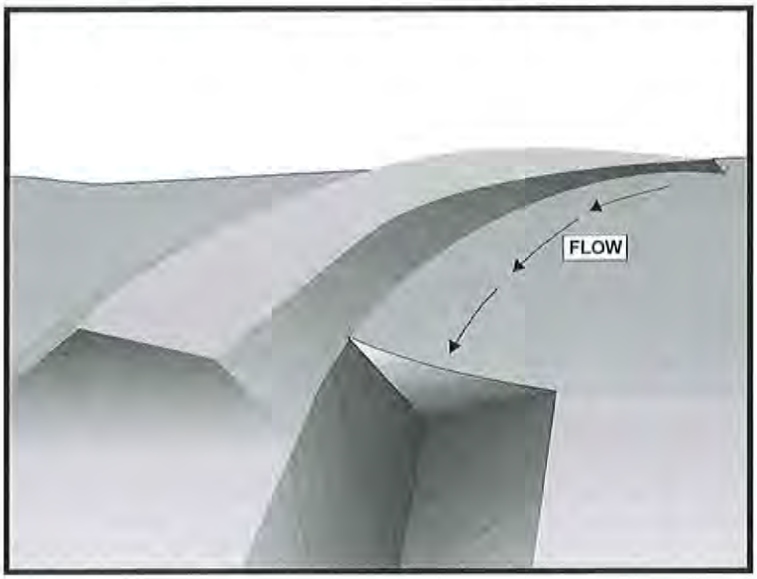


NOTES:

1. Check slots to be constructed per manufacturers specifications.
2. Staking or stapling layout per manufacturers specifications.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

TYPICAL INSTALLATION DETAIL

Earth Dikes and Drainage Swales EC-9



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

An earth dike is a temporary berm or ridge of compacted soil used to divert runoff or channel water to a desired location. A drainage swale is a shaped and sloped depression in the soil surface used to convey runoff to a desired location. Earth dikes and drainage swales are used to divert off site runoff around the construction site, divert runoff from stabilized areas and disturbed areas, and direct runoff into sediment basins or traps.

Suitable Applications

Earth dikes and drainage swales are suitable for use, individually or together, where runoff needs to be diverted from one area and conveyed to another.

- Earth dikes and drainage swales may be used:
  - To convey surface runoff down sloping land
  - To intercept and divert runoff to avoid sheet flow over sloped surfaces
  - To divert and direct runoff towards a stabilized watercourse, drainage pipe or channel
  - To intercept runoff from paved surfaces
  - Below steep grades where runoff begins to concentrate
  - Along roadways and facility improvements subject to flood drainage

- At the top of slopes to divert runon from adjacent or undisturbed slopes
- At bottom and mid slope locations to intercept sheet flow and convey concentrated flows
- Divert sediment laden runoff into sediment basins or traps

Limitations

Dikes should not be used for drainage areas greater than 10 acres or along slopes greater than 10 percent. For larger areas more permanent drainage structures should be built. All drainage structures should be built in compliance with local municipal requirements.

- Earth dikes may create more disturbed area on site and become barriers to construction equipment.
- Earth dikes must be stabilized immediately, which adds cost and maintenance concerns.
- Diverted stormwater may cause downstream flood damage.
- Dikes should not be constructed of soils that may be easily eroded.
- Regrading the site to remove the dike may add additional cost.
- Temporary drains and swales or any other diversion of runoff should not adversely impact upstream or downstream properties.
- Temporary drains and swales must conform to local floodplain management requirements.
- Earth dikes/drainage swales are not suitable as sediment trapping devices.
- It may be necessary to use other soil stabilization and sediment controls such as check dams, plastics, and blankets, to prevent scour and erosion in newly graded dikes, swales, and ditches.
- Sediment accumulation, scour depressions, and/or persistent non-stormwater discharges can result in areas of standing water suitable for mosquito production in drainage swales.

Implementation

The temporary earth dike is a berm or ridge of compacted soil, located in such a manner as to divert stormwater to a sediment trapping device or a stabilized outlet, thereby reducing the potential for erosion and offsite sedimentation. Earth dikes can also be used to divert runoff from off site and from undisturbed areas away from disturbed areas and to divert sheet flows away from unprotected slopes.

An earth dike does not itself control erosion or remove sediment from runoff. A dike prevents erosion by directing runoff to an erosion control device such as a sediment trap or directing runoff away from an erodible area. Temporary diversion dikes should not adversely impact adjacent properties and must conform to local floodplain management regulations, and should not be used in areas with slopes steeper than 10%.

Slopes that are formed during cut and fill operations should be protected from erosion by runoff. A combination of a temporary drainage swale and an earth dike at the top of a slope can divert

runoff to a location where it can be brought to the bottom of the slope (see EC-11, Slope Drains). A combination dike and swale is easily constructed by a single pass of a bulldozer or grader and compacted by a second pass of the tracks or wheels over the ridge. Diversion structures should be installed when the site is initially graded and remain in place until post construction BMPs are installed and the slopes are stabilized.

Diversion practices concentrate surface runoff, increasing its velocity and erosive force. Thus, the flow out of the drain or swale must be directed onto a stabilized area or into a grade stabilization structure. If significant erosion will occur, a swale should be stabilized using vegetation, chemical treatment, rock rip-rap, matting, or other physical means of stabilization. Any drain or swale that conveys sediment laden runoff must be diverted into a sediment basin or trap before it is discharged from the site.

General

- Care must be applied to correctly size and locate earth dikes, drainage swales. Excessively steep, unlined dikes, and swales are subject to erosion and gully formation.
- Conveyances should be stabilized.
- Use a lined ditch for high flow velocities.
- Select flow velocity based on careful evaluation of the risks due to erosion of the measure, soil types, overtopping, flow backups, washout, and drainage flow patterns for each project site.
- Compact any fills to prevent unequal settlement.
- Do not divert runoff onto other property without securing written authorization from the property owner.
- When possible, install and utilize permanent dikes, swales, and ditches early in the construction process.
- Provide stabilized outlets.

Earth Dikes

Temporary earth dikes are a practical, inexpensive BMP used to divert stormwater runoff. Temporary diversion dikes should be installed in the following manner:

- All dikes should be compacted by earth moving equipment.
- All dikes should have positive drainage to an outlet.
- All dikes should have 2:1 or flatter side slopes, 18 in. minimum height, and a minimum top width of 24 in. Wide top widths and flat slopes are usually needed at crossings for construction traffic.
- The outlet from the earth dike must function with a minimum of erosion. Runoff should be conveyed to a sediment trapping device such as a Sediment Trap (SE-3) or Sediment Basin

(SE-2) when either the dike channel or the drainage area above the dike are not adequately stabilized.

- Temporary stabilization may be achieved using seed and mulching for slopes less than 5% and either rip-rap or sod for slopes in excess of 5%. In either case, stabilization of the earth dike should be completed immediately after construction or prior to the first rain.
- If riprap is used to stabilize the channel formed along the toe of the dike, the following typical specifications apply:

Channel Grade	Riprap Stabilization
0.5-1.0%	4 in. Rock
1.1-2.0%	6 in. Rock
2.1-4.0%	8 in. Rock
4.1-5.0%	8 in. -12 in. Riprap

- The stone riprap, recycled concrete, etc. used for stabilization should be pressed into the soil with construction equipment.
- Filter cloth may be used to cover dikes in use for long periods.
- Construction activity on the earth dike should be kept to a minimum.

Drainage Swales

Drainage swales are only effective if they are properly installed. Swales are more effective than dikes because they tend to be more stable. The combination of a swale with a dike on the downhill side is the most cost effective diversion.

Standard engineering design criteria for small open channel and closed conveyance systems should be used (see the local drainage design manual). Unless local drainage design criteria state otherwise, drainage swales should be designed as follows:

- No more than 5 acres may drain to a temporary drainage swale.
- Place drainage swales above or below, not on, a cut or fill slope.
- Swale bottom width should be at least 2 ft
- Depth of the swale should be at least 18 in.
- Side slopes should be 2:1 or flatter.
- Drainage or swales should be laid at a grade of at least 1 percent, but not more than 15 percent.
- The swale must not be overtopped by the peak discharge from a 10-year storm, irrespective of the design criteria stated above.

- Remove all trees, stumps, obstructions, and other objectionable material from the swale when it is built.
- Compact any fill material along the path of the swale.
- Stabilize all swales immediately. Seed and mulch swales at a slope of less than 5 percent, and use rip-rap or sod for swales with a slope between 5 and 15 percent. For temporary swales, geotextiles and mats (EC-7) may provide immediate stabilization.
- Irrigation may be required to establish sufficient vegetation to prevent erosion.
- Do not operate construction vehicles across a swale unless a stabilized crossing is provided.
- Permanent drainage facilities must be designed by a professional engineer (see the local drainage design criteria for proper design).
- At a minimum, the drainage swale should conform to predevelopment drainage patterns and capacities.
- Construct the drainage swale with a positive grade to a stabilized outlet.
- Provide erosion protection or energy dissipation measures if the flow out of the drainage swale can reach an erosive velocity.

Costs

- Cost ranges from $15 to $55 per ft for both earthwork and stabilization and depends on availability of material, site location, and access.
- Small dikes: $2.50 - $6.50/linear ft; Large dikes: $2.50/yd^3.
- The cost of a drainage swale increases with drainage area and slope. Typical swales for controlling internal erosion are inexpensive, as they are quickly formed during routine earthwork.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs prior to forecast rain, daily during extended rain events, after rain events, weekly during the rainy season, and at two-week intervals during the non-rainy season.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.
- Inspect ditches and berms for washouts. Replace lost riprap, damaged linings or soil stabilizers as needed.
- Inspect channel linings, embankments, and beds of ditches and berms for erosion and accumulation of debris and sediment. Remove debris and sediment and repair linings and embankments as needed.
- Temporary conveyances should be completely removed as soon as the surrounding drainage area has been stabilized or at the completion of construction

References

Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook, S.J. Goldman, K. Jackson, T.A. Bursetynsky, P.E., McGraw Hill Book Company, 1986.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Metzger, M.E. 2004. Managing mosquitoes in stormwater treatment devices. University of California Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources, Publication 8125. On-line: http://anrcatalog.ucdavis.edu/pdf/8125.pdf

National Association of Home Builders (NAHB). Stormwater Runoff & Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Guide for Builders and Developers. National Association of Home Builders, Washington, D.C., 1995

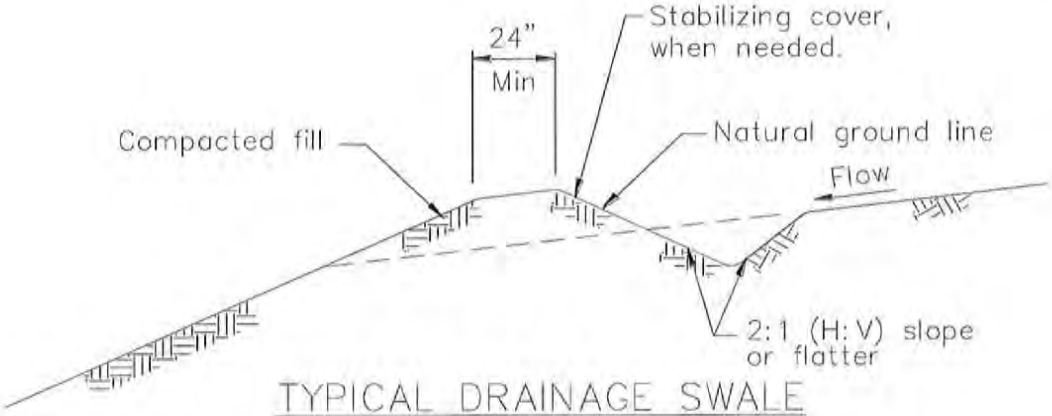
National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission (SWRPC). Costs of Urban Nonpoint Source Water Pollution Control Measures. Technical Report No. 31. Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI. 1991

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

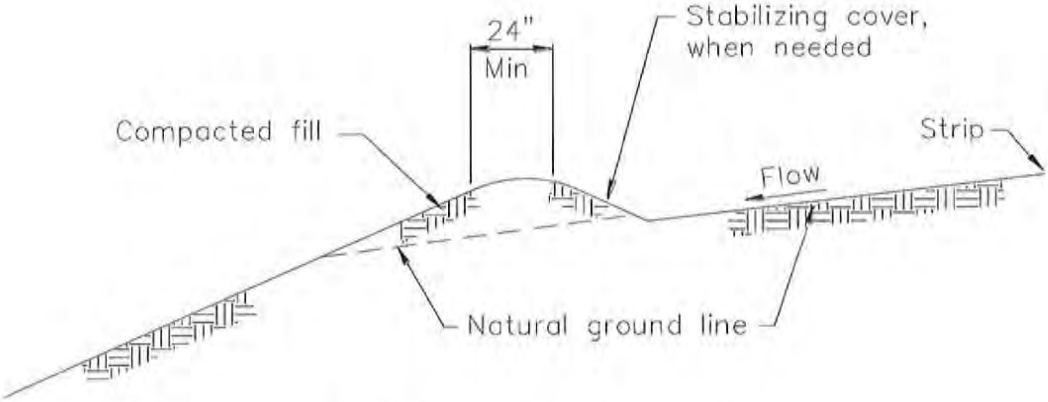
Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



TYPICAL DRAINAGE SWALE
NOT TO SCALE

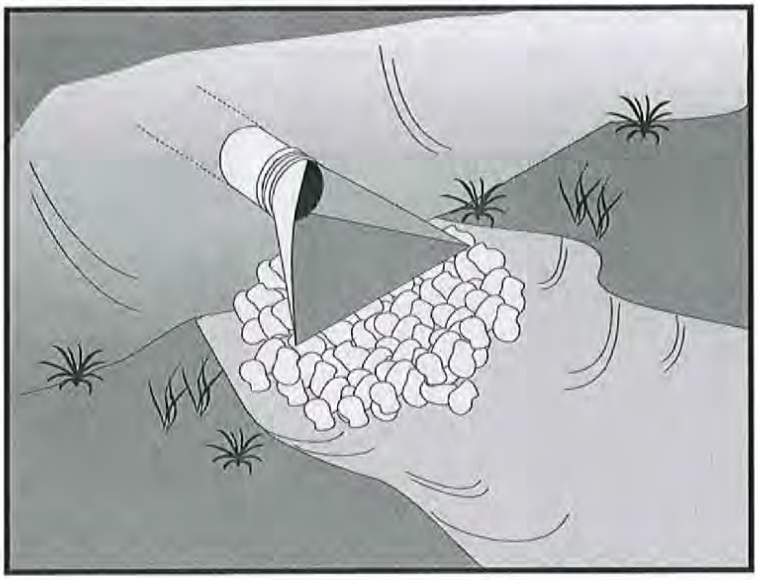
NOTES:

1. Stabilize inlet, outlets and slopes.
2. Properly compact the subgrade.



TYPICAL EARTH DIKE
NOT TO SCALE

Velocity Dissipation Devices EC-10



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☑
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Outlet protection is a physical device composed of rock, grouted riprap, or concrete rubble, which is placed at the outlet of a pipe or channel to prevent scour of the soil caused by concentrated, high velocity flows.

Suitable Applications

Whenever discharge velocities and energies at the outlets of culverts, conduits, or channels are sufficient to erode the next downstream reach. This includes temporary diversion structures to divert runon during construction.

- These devices may be used at the following locations:
  - Outlets of pipes, drains, culverts, slope drains, diversion ditches, swales, conduits, or channels.
  - Outlets located at the bottom of mild to steep slopes.
  - Discharge outlets that carry continuous flows of water.
  - Outlets subject to short, intense flows of water, such as flash floods.
  - Points where lined conveyances discharge to unlined conveyances

Limitations

- Large storms or high flows can wash away the rock outlet protection and leave the area susceptible to erosion.

- Sediment captured by the rock outlet protection may be difficult to remove without removing the rock.
- Outlet protection may negatively impact the channel habitat.
- Grouted riprap may break up in areas of freeze and thaw.
- If there is not adequate drainage, and water builds up behind grouted riprap, it may cause the grouted riprap to break up due to the resulting hydrostatic pressure.
- Sediment accumulation, scour depressions, and/or persistent non-stormwater discharges can result in areas of standing water suitable for mosquito production in velocity dissipation devices.

Implementation

General

Outlet protection is needed where discharge velocities and energies at the outlets of culverts, conduits or channels are sufficient to erode the immediate downstream reach. This practice protects the outlet from developing small eroded pools (plange pools), and protects against gully erosion resulting from scouring at a culvert mouth.

Design and Layout

As with most channel design projects, depth of flow, roughness, gradient, side slopes, discharge rate, and velocity should be considered in the outlet design. Compliance to local and state regulations should also be considered while working in environmentally sensitive streambeds. General recommendations for rock size and length of outlet protection mat are shown in the rock outlet protection figure in this BMP and should be considered minimums. The apron length and rock size gradation are determined using a combination of the discharge pipe diameter and estimate discharge rate: Select the longest apron length and largest rock size suggested by the pipe size and discharge rate. Where flows are conveyed in open channels such as ditches and swales, use the estimated discharge rate for selecting the apron length and rock size. Flows should be same as the culvert or channel design flow but never the less than the peak 5 year flow for temporary structures planned for one rainy season, or the 10 year peak flow for temporary structures planned for two or three rainy seasons.

- There are many types of energy dissipaters, with rock being the one that is represented in the attached figure.
- Best results are obtained when sound, durable, and angular rock is used.
- Install riprap, grouted riprap, or concrete apron at selected outlet. Riprap aprons are best suited for temporary use during construction. Grouted or wired tied rock riprap can minimize maintenance requirements.
- Rock outlet protection is usually less expensive and easier to install than concrete aprons or energy dissipaters. It also serves to trap sediment and reduce flow velocities.
- Carefully place riprap to avoid damaging the filter fabric.

- Stone 4 in. to 6 in. may be carefully dumped onto filter fabric from a height not to exceed 12 in.
- Stone 8 in. to 12 in. must be hand placed onto filter fabric, or the filter fabric may be covered with 4 in. of gravel and the 8 in. to 12 in. rock may be dumped from a height not to exceed 16 in.
- Stone greater than 12 in. shall only be dumped onto filter fabric protected with a layer of gravel with a thickness equal to one half the D_{50} rock size, and the dump height limited to twice the depth of the gravel protection layer thickness.

- For proper operation of apron: Align apron with receiving stream and keep straight throughout its length. If a curve is needed to fit site conditions, place it in upper section of apron.
- Outlets on slopes steeper than 10 percent should have additional protection.

Costs

Costs are low if material is readily available. If material is imported, costs will be higher. Average installed cost is $150 per device.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect BMPs subjected to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges occur. Minimize areas of standing water by removing sediment blockages and filling scour depressions.
- Inspect apron for displacement of the riprap and damage to the underlying fabric. Repair fabric and replace riprap that has washed away. If riprap continues to wash away, consider using larger material.
- Inspect for scour beneath the riprap and around the outlet. Repair damage to slopes or underlying filter fabric immediately.
- Temporary devices should be completely removed as soon as the surrounding drainage area has been stabilized or at the completion of construction.

References

County of Sacramento Improvement Standards, Sacramento County, May 1989.

Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook, S.J. Goldman, K. Jackson, T.A. Bursztynsky, P.E., McGraw Hill Book Company, 1986.

Handbook of Steel Drainage & Highway Construction, American Iron and Steel Institute, 1983.

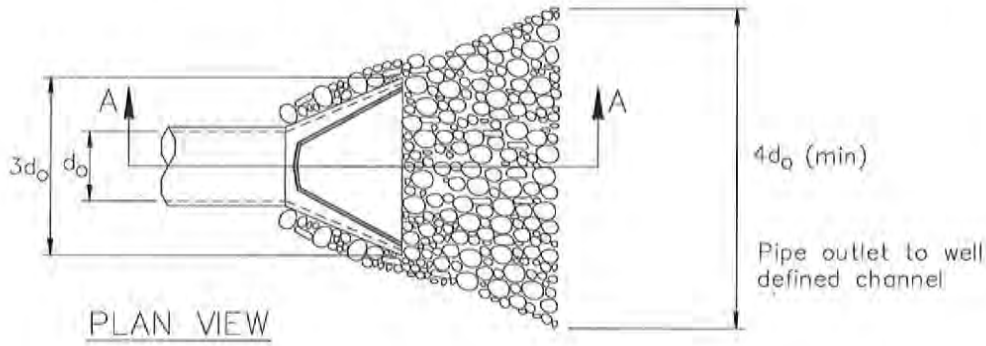
Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

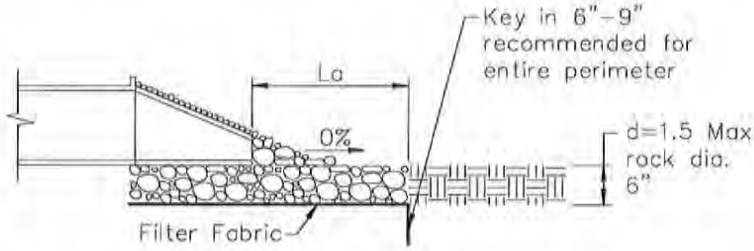
Metzger, M.E. 2004. Managing mosquitoes in stormwater treatment devices. University of California Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources, Publication 8125. On-line: http://anrcatalog.ucdavis.edu/pdf/8125.pdf

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, state of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



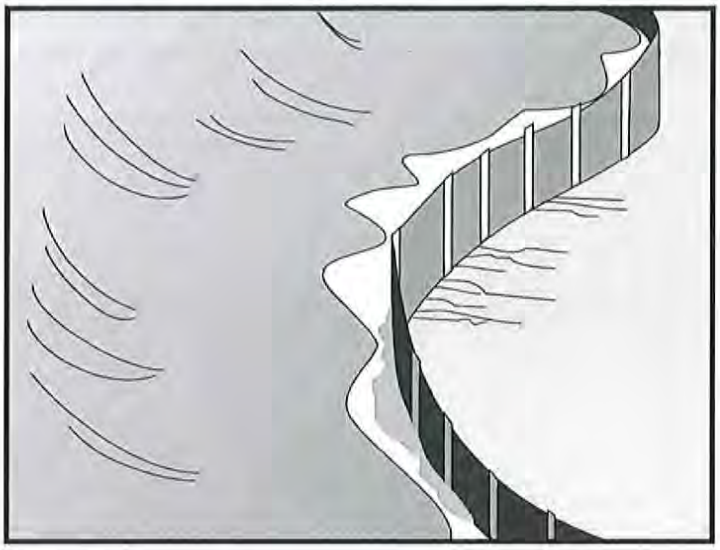


Pipe Diameter inches	Discharge ft^3/s	Apron Length, La ft	Rip Rap D_{50} Diameter Min inches
12	5	10	4
	10	13	6
18	10	10	6
	20	16	8
	30	23	12
	40	26	16
24	30	16	8
	40	26	8
	50	26	12
	60	30	16

For larger or higher flows consult a Registered Civil Engineer
Source: USDA - SCS

Silt Fence

SE-1



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Description and Purpose

A silt fence is made of a woven geotextile that has been entrenched, attached to supporting poles, and sometimes backed by a plastic or wire mesh for support. The silt fence detains water, promoting sedimentation of coarse sediment behind the fence. Silt fence does not retain soil fine particles like clays or silts.

Suitable Applications

Silt fences are suitable for perimeter control, placed below areas where sheet flows discharge from the site. They could also be used as interior controls below disturbed areas where runoff may occur in the form of sheet and rill erosion and around inlets within disturbed areas (SE-10). Silt fences should not be used in locations where the flow is concentrated. Silt fences should always be used in combination with erosion controls. Suitable applications include:

- At perimeter of a project.
- Below the toe or down slope of exposed and erodible slopes.
- Along streams and channels.
- Around temporary spoil areas and stockpiles.
- Around inlets.
- Below other small cleared areas.

Targeted Constituents

Sediment (coarse sediment)	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-5 Fiber Rolls

SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls

SE-13 Compost Socks and Berms

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Limitations

- Do not use in streams, channels, drain inlets, or anywhere flow is concentrated.
- Do not use in locations where ponded water may cause a flooding hazard.
- Do not use silt fence to divert water flows or place across any contour line.
- Improperly installed fences are subject to failure from undercutting, overtopping, or collapsing.
- Must be trenched and keyed in.
- Not intended for use as a substitute for Fiber Rolls (SE-5), when fiber rolls are being used as a slope interruption device.
- Do not use on slopes subject to creeping, slumping, or landslides.

Implementation

General

A silt fence is a temporary sediment barrier consisting of woven geotextile stretched across and attached to supporting posts, trenched-in, and, depending upon the strength of fabric used, supported with plastic or wire mesh fence. Silt fences trap coarse sediment by intercepting and detaining sediment-laden runoff from disturbed areas in order to promote sedimentation behind the fence.

The following layout and installation guidance can improve performance and should be followed:

- Silt fence should be used in combination with erosion controls up-slope in order to provide the most effective sediment control.
- Silt fence alone is not effective at reducing turbidity. (Barrett and Malina, 2004)
- Designers should consider diverting sediment laden water to a temporary sediment basin or trap. (EPA, 2012)
- Use principally in areas where sheet flow occurs.
- Install along a level contour, so water does not pond more than 1.5 ft at any point along the silt fence.
- Provide sufficient room for runoff to pond behind the fence and to allow sediment removal equipment to pass between the silt fence and toes of slopes or other obstructions. About 1200 ft^2 of ponding area should be provided for every acre draining to the fence.
- Efficiency of silt fences is primarily dependent on the detention time of the runoff behind the control. (Barrett and Malina, 2004)
- The drainage area above any fence should not exceed a quarter of an acre. (Rule of Thumb-100-feet of silt fence per 10,000 square feet of disturbed area.) (EPA 2012)

- The maximum length of slope draining to any point along the silt fence should be 100 ft per foot of silt fence.
- Turn the ends of the filter fence uphill to prevent stormwater from flowing around the fence.
- Leave an undisturbed or stabilized area immediately down slope from the fence where feasible.
- Silt fences should remain in place until the disturbed area draining to the silt fence is permanently stabilized, after which, the silt fence fabric and posts should be removed and properly disposed.
- J-Hooks, which have ends turning up the slope to break up long runs of fence and provide multiple storage areas that work like mini-retention areas, may be used to increase the effectiveness of silt fence.
- Be aware of local regulations regarding the type and installation requirements of silt fence, which may differ from those presented in this fact sheet.

Design and Layout

In areas where high winds are anticipated the fence should be supported by a plastic or wire mesh. The geotextile fabric of the silt fence should contain ultraviolet inhibitors and stabilizers to provide longevity equivalent to the project life or replacement schedule.

- Layout in accordance with the attached figures.
- For slopes that contain a high number of rocks or large dirt clods that tend to dislodge, it may be necessary to protect silt fence from rocks (e.g., rockfall netting) ensure the integrity of the silt fence installation.

Standard vs. Heavy Duty Silt Fence

Standard Silt Fence

- Generally applicable in cases where the area draining to fence produces moderate sediment loads.

Heavy Duty Silt Fence

- Heavy duty silt fence usually has 1 or more of the following characteristics, not possessed by standard silt fence.
  - Fabric is reinforced with wire backing or additional support.
  - Posts are spaced closer than pre-manufactured, standard silt fence products.
- Use is generally limited to areas affected by high winds.
- Area draining to fence produces moderate sediment loads.

Materials

Standard Silt Fence

- Silt fence material should be woven geotextile with a minimum width of 36 in. The fabric should conform to the requirements in ASTM designation D6461.
- Wooden stakes should be commercial quality lumber of the size and shape shown on the plans. Each stake should be free from decay, splits or cracks longer than the

thickness of the stake or other defects that would weaken the stakes and cause the stakes to be structurally unsuitable.

- Staples used to fasten the fence fabric to the stakes should be not less than 1.75 in. long and should be fabricated from 15 gauge or heavier wire. The wire used to fasten the tops of the stakes together when joining two sections of fence should be 9 gauge or heavier wire. Galvanizing of the fastening wire will not be required.

Heavy-Duty Silt Fence

- Some silt fence has a wire backing to provide additional support, and there are products that may use prefabricated plastic holders for the silt fence and use metal posts instead of wood stakes.

Installation Guidelines – Traditional Method

Silt fences are to be constructed on a level contour. Sufficient area should exist behind the fence for ponding to occur without flooding or overtopping the fence.

- A trench should be excavated approximately 6 in. wide and 6 in. deep along the line of the proposed silt fence (trenches should not be excavated wider or deeper than necessary for proper silt fence installation).
- Bottom of the silt fence should be keyed-in a minimum of 12 in.
- Posts should be spaced a maximum of 6 ft apart and driven securely into the ground a minimum of 18 in. or 12 in. below the bottom of the trench.
- When standard strength geotextile is used, a plastic or wire mesh support fence should be fastened securely to the upslope side of posts using heavy–duty wire staples at least 1 in. long. The mesh should extend into the trench.
- When extra-strength geotextile and closer post spacing are used, the mesh support fence may be eliminated.
- Woven geotextile should be purchased in a long roll, then cut to the length of the barrier. When joints are necessary, geotextile should be spliced together only at a support post, with a minimum 6 in. overlap and both ends securely fastened to the post.
- The trench should be backfilled with native material and compacted.
- Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed 1/3 the height of the barrier; in no case should the reach exceed 500 ft.
- Cross barriers should be a minimum of 1/3 and a maximum of ½ the height of the linear barrier.
- See typical installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

Installation Guidelines - Static Slicing Method

- Static Slicing is defined as insertion of a narrow blade pulled behind a tractor, similar to a plow blade, at least 10 inches into the soil while at the same time pulling silt geotextile fabric into the ground through the opening created by the blade to the depth of the blade. Once the geotextile is installed, the soil is compacted using tractor tires.
- This method will not work with pre-fabricated, wire backed silt fence.
- Benefits:
    - Ease of installation (most often done with a 2 person crew).
    - Minimal soil disturbance.
    - Better level of compaction along fence, less susceptible to undercutting
    - Uniform installation.
- Limitations:
    - Does not work in shallow or rocky soils.
    - Complete removal of geotextile material after use is difficult.
    - Be cautious when digging near potential underground utilities.

Costs

- It should be noted that costs vary greatly across regions due to available supplies and labor costs.
- Average annual cost for installation using the traditional silt fence installation method (assumes 6 month useful life) is $7 per linear foot based on vendor research. Range of cost is $3.50 - $9.10 per linear foot.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Repair undercut silt fences.
- Repair or replace split, torn, slumping, or weathered fabric. The lifespan of silt fence fabric is generally 5 to 8 months.
- Silt fences that are damaged and become unsuitable for the intended purpose should be removed from the site of work, disposed, and replaced with new silt fence barriers.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches 1/3 of the barrier height.
- Silt fences should be left in place until the upgradient area is permanently stabilized. Until then, the silt fence should be inspected and maintained regularly.

- Remove silt fence when upgradient areas are stabilized. Fill and compact post holes and anchor trench, remove sediment accumulation, grade fence alignment to blend with adjacent ground, and stabilize disturbed area.

References

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Monitoring Data on Effectiveness of Sediment Control Techniques, Proceedings of World Water and Environmental Resources Congress, Barrett M. and Malina J. 2004.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group-Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control Practices, and Inventory of Current Practices (Draft), USEPA, 1990.

Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission (SWRPC). Costs of Urban Nonpoint Source Water Pollution Control Measures. Technical Report No. 31. Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI. 1991.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management Manual for The Puget Sound Basin, Washington State Department of Ecology, Public Review Draft, 1991.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Stormwater Best Management Practices: Silt Fences. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 2012.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Stormwater Management for Industrial Activities: Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1992.

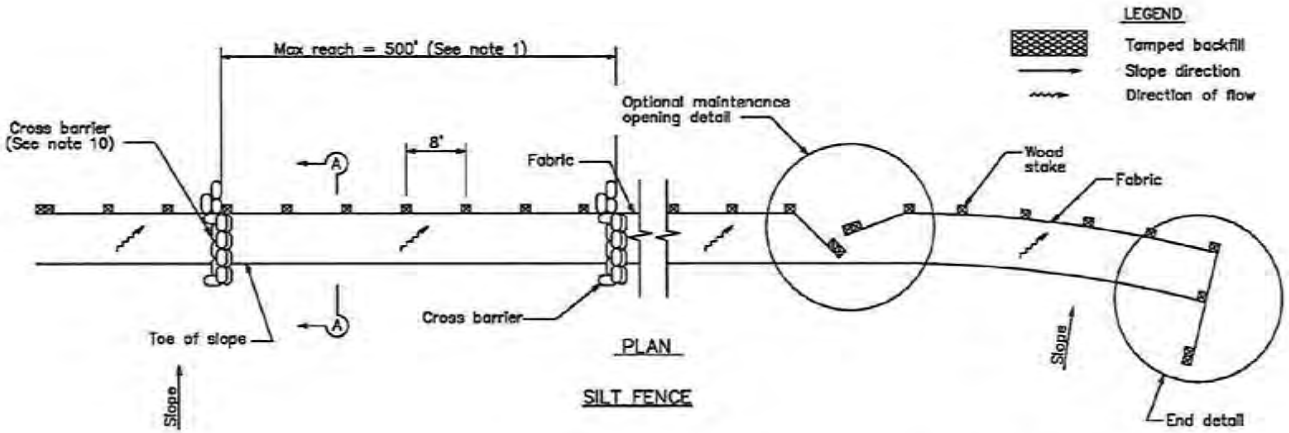
Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

Silt Fence

SE-1

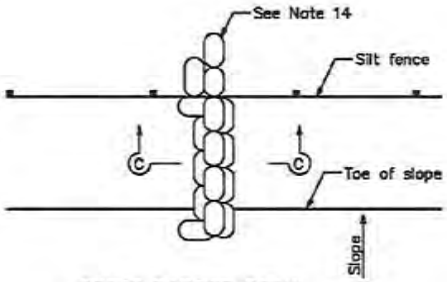


PLAN

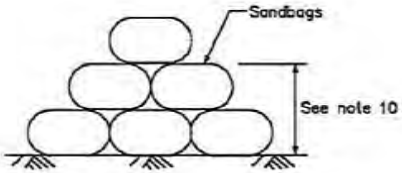
SILT FENCE

NOTES

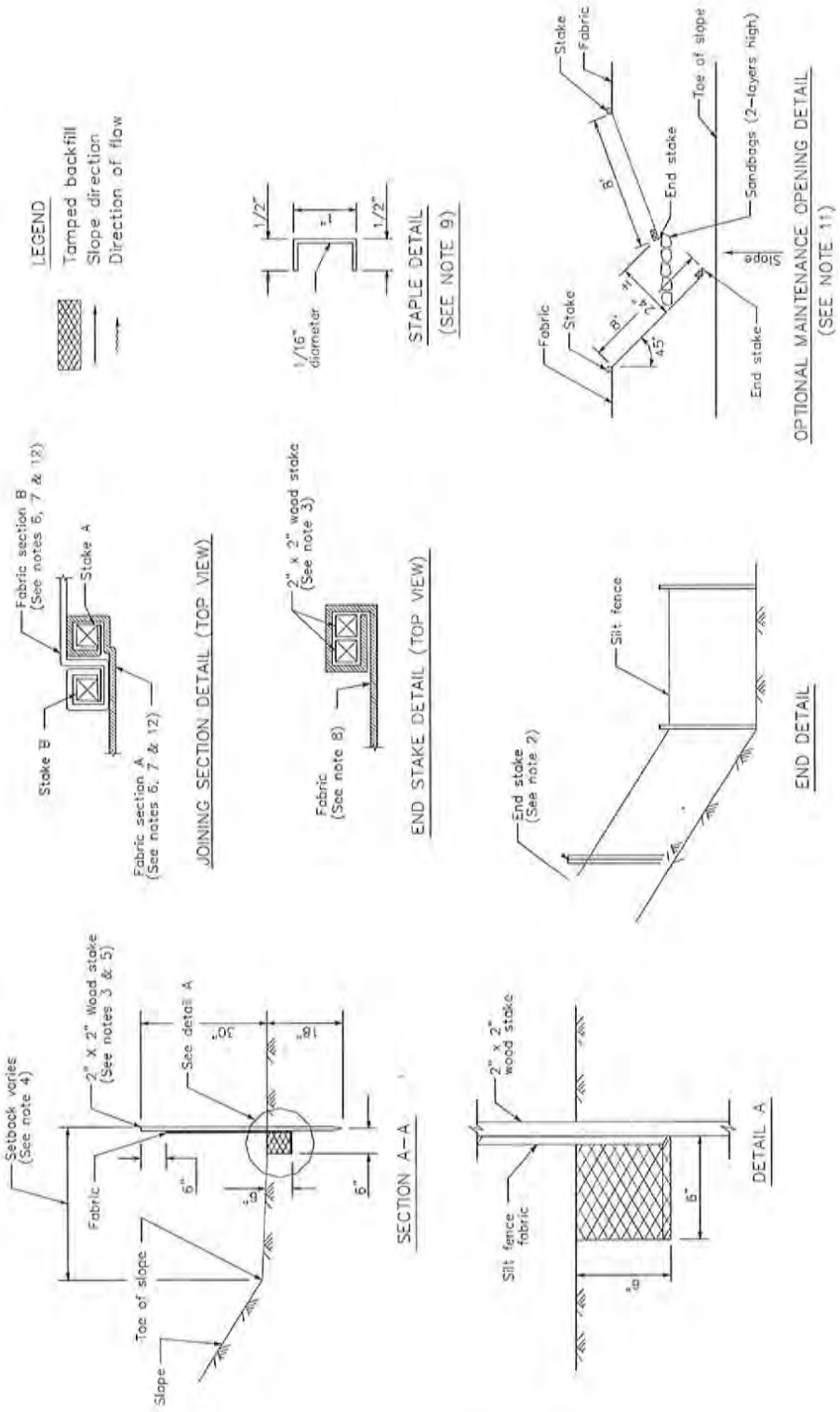
1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed 1/3 the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. The last 8'-0" of fence shall be turned up slope.
3. Stake dimensions are nominal.
4. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
5. Stakes shall be spaced at 8'-0" maximum and shall be positioned on downstream side of fence.
6. Stakes to overlap and fence fabric to fold around each stake one full turn. Secure fabric to stake with 4 staples.
7. Stakes shall be driven tightly together to prevent potential flow-through of sediment at joint. The tops of the stakes shall be secured with wire.
8. For end stake, fence fabric shall be folded around two stakes one full turn and secured with 4 staples.
9. Minimum 4 staples per stake. Dimensions shown are typical.
10. Cross barriers shall be a minimum of 1/3 and a maximum of 1/2 the height of the linear barrier.
11. Maintenance openings shall be constructed in a manner to ensure sediment remains behind silt fence.
12. Joining sections shall not be placed at sump locations.
13. Sandbag rows and layers shall be offset to eliminate gaps.
14. Add 3-4 bags to cross barrier on downgradient side of silt fence as needed to prevent bypass or undermining and as allowable based on site limits of disturbance.

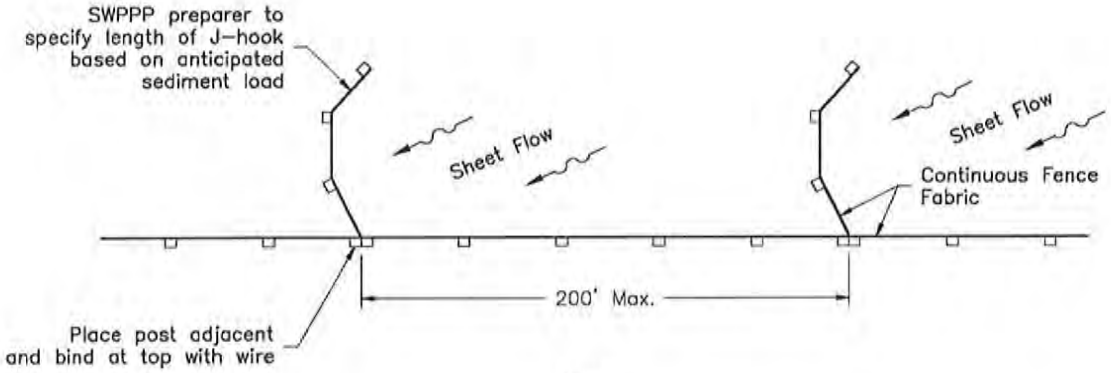


CROSS BARRIER DETAIL



SECTION C-C

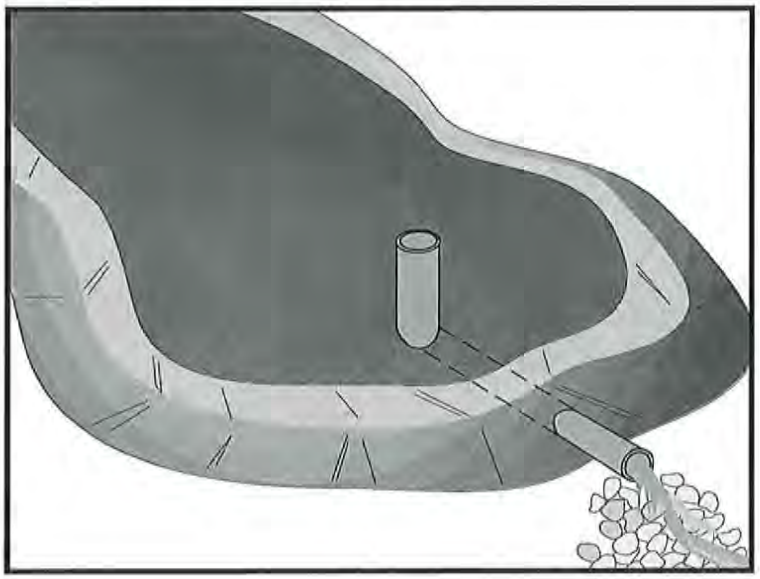

LEGEND
Tamped backfill
Slope direction
Direction of flow
1/2"
1/16" diameter
1/2"
STAPLE DETAIL
(SEE NOTE 9)
Stake
Fabric
Toe of slope
Sandbags (2-layers high)
End stake
Slope
Fabric
Stake
End stake
OPTIONAL MAINTENANCE OPENING DETAIL
(SEE NOTE 11)
Fabric section B
(See notes 6, 7 & 12)
Stake A
Stake B
Fabric section A
(See notes 6, 7 & 12)
JOINING SECTION DETAIL (TOP VIEW)
2" x 2" wood stake
(See note 3)
Fabric
(See note 8)
END STAKE DETAIL (TOP VIEW)
Silt fence
End stake
(See note 2)
END DETAIL
Setback varies
(See note 4)
2" X 2" Wood stake
(See notes 3 & 5)
See detail A
Fabric
Toe of slope
Slope
SECTION A-A
2" x 2"
wood stake
Silt fence
fabric
DETAIL A


SWPPP preparer to specify length of J-hook based on anticipated sediment load
Sheet Flow
Sheet Flow
Continuous Fence Fabric
200' Max.
Place post adjacent and bind at top with wire

Plan

J-HOOK

Sediment Basin SE-2



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	☑
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-3 Sediment Trap (for smaller areas)

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A sediment basin is a temporary basin formed by excavation or by constructing an embankment so that sediment-laden runoff is temporarily detained under quiescent conditions, allowing sediment to settle out before the runoff is released.

Sediment basin design guidance presented in this fact sheet is intended to provide options, methods, and techniques to optimize temporary sediment basin performance and basin sediment removal. Basin design guidance provided in this fact sheet is not intended to guarantee basin effluent compliance with numeric discharge limits (numeric action levels or numeric effluent limits for turbidity). Compliance with discharge limits requires a thoughtful approach to comprehensive BMP planning, implementation, and maintenance. Therefore, optimally designed and maintained sediment basins should be used in conjunction with a comprehensive system of BMPs that includes:

- Diverting runoff from undisturbed areas away from the basin
- Erosion control practices to minimize disturbed areas on-site and to provide temporary stabilization and interim sediment controls (e.g., stockpile perimeter control, check dams, perimeter controls around individual lots) to reduce the basin's influent sediment concentration.

At some sites, sediment basin design enhancements may be required to adequately remove sediment. Traditional

(a.k.a. "physical") enhancements such as alternative outlet configurations or flow deflection baffles increase detention time and other techniques such as outlet skimmers preferentially drain flows with lower sediment concentrations. These "physical" enhancement techniques are described in this fact sheet. To further enhance sediment removal particularly at sites with fine soils or turbidity sensitive receiving waters, some projects may need to consider implementing Active Treatment Systems (ATS) whereby coagulants and flocculants are used to enhance settling and removal of suspended sediments. Guidance on implementing ATS is provided in SE-11.

Suitable Applications

Sediment basins may be suitable for use on larger projects with sufficient space for constructing the basin. Sediment basins should be considered for use:

- Where sediment-laden water may enter the drainage system or watercourses
- On construction projects with disturbed areas during the rainy season
- At the outlet of disturbed watersheds between 5 acres and 75 acres and evaluated on a site by site basis
- Where post construction detention basins are required
- In association with dikes, temporary channels, and pipes used to convey runoff from disturbed areas

Limitations

Sediment basins must be installed only within the property limits and where failure of the structure will not result in loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities. In addition, sediment basins are attractive to children and can be very dangerous. Local ordinances regarding health and safety must be adhered to. If fencing of the basin is required, the type of fence and its location should be shown in the SWPPP and in the construction specifications.

- As a general guideline, sediment basins are suitable for drainage areas of 5 acres or more, but not appropriate for drainage areas greater than 75 acres. However, the tributary area should be evaluated on a site by site basis.
- Sediment basins may become an "attractive nuisance" and care must be taken to adhere to all safety practices. If safety is a concern, basin may require protective fencing.
- Sediment basins designed according to this fact sheet are only effective in removing sediment down to about the silt size fraction. Sediment-laden runoff with smaller size fractions (fine silt and clay) may not be adequately treated unless chemical (or other appropriate method) treatment is used in addition to the sediment basin.
- Basins with a height of 25 ft or more or an impounding capacity of 50 ac-ft or more must obtain approval from California Department of Water Resources Division of Safety of Dams (http://www.water.ca.gov/damsafety/).

- Water that stands in sediment basins longer than 96 hours may become a source of mosquitoes (and midges), particularly along perimeter edges, in shallow zones, in scour or below-grade pools, around inlet pipes, along low-flow channels, and among protected habitats created by emergent or floating vegetation (e.g. cattails, water hyacinth), algal mats, riprap, etc.
- Basins require large surface areas to permit settling of sediment. Size may be limited by the available area.

Implementation

General

A sediment basin is a controlled stormwater release structure formed by excavation or by construction of an embankment of compacted soil across a drainage way, or other suitable location. It is intended to trap sediment before it leaves the construction site. The basin is a temporary measure expected to be used during active construction in most cases and is to be maintained until the site area is permanently protected against erosion or a permanent detention basin is constructed.

Sediment basins are suitable for nearly all types of construction projects. Whenever possible, construct the sediment basins before clearing and grading work begins. Basins should be located at the stormwater outlet from the site but not in any natural or undisturbed stream. A typical application would include temporary dikes, pipes, and/or channels to convey runoff to the basin inlet.

Many development projects in California are required by local ordinances to provide a stormwater detention basin for post-construction flood control, desilting, or stormwater pollution control. A temporary sediment basin may be constructed by rough grading the post-construction control basins early in the project.

Sediment basins if properly designed and maintained can trap a significant amount of the sediment that flows into them. However, traditional basins do not remove all inflowing sediment. Therefore, they should be used in conjunction with erosion control practices such as temporary seeding, mulching, diversion dikes, etc., to reduce the amount of sediment flowing into the basin.

Planning

To improve the effectiveness of the basin, it should be located to intercept runoff from the largest possible amount of disturbed area. Locations best suited for a sediment basin are generally in lower elevation areas of the site (or basin tributary area) where site drainage would not require significant diversion or other means to direct water to the basin but outside jurisdictional waterways. However, as necessary, drainage into the basin can be improved by the use of earth dikes and drainage swales (see BMP EC-9). . The basin should not be located where its failure would result in the loss of life or interruption of the use or service of public utilities or roads.

Construct before clearing and grading work begins when feasible.

- Do not locate the basin in a jurisdictional stream.

- Basin sites should be located where failure of the structure will not cause loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities.
- Basins with a height of 25 ft or more or an impounding capacity of 50 ac-ft must obtain approval from the Division of Dam Safety. Local dam safety requirements may be more stringent.
- Limit the contributing area to the sediment basin to only the runoff from the disturbed soil areas. Use temporary concentrated flow conveyance controls to divert runoff from undisturbed areas away from the sediment basin.
- The basin should be located: (1) by excavating a suitable area or where a low embankment can be constructed across a swale, (2) where post-construction (permanent) detention basins will be constructed, and (3) where the basins can be maintained on a year-round basis to provide access for maintenance, including sediment removal and sediment stockpiling in a protected area, and to maintain the basin to provide the required capacity.

Design

When designing a sediment basin, designers should evaluate the site constraints that could affect the efficiency of the BMP. Some of these constraints include: the relationship between basin capacity, anticipated sediment load, and freeboard, available footprint for the basin, maintenance frequency and access, and hydraulic capacity and efficiency of the temporary outlet infrastructure. Sediment basins should be designed to maximize sediment removal and to consider sediment load retained by the basin as it affects basin performance.

Three Basin Design Options (Part A) are presented below along with a Typical Sediment/Detention Basin Design Methodology (Part B). Regardless of the design option that is selected, designers also need to evaluate the sediment basin capacity with respect to sediment accumulation (See "*Step 3. Evaluate the Capacity of the Sediment Basin*"), and should incorporate approaches identified in "*Step 4. Other Design Considerations*" to enhance basin performance.

A) Basin Design Options:

Option 1:

Design sediment basin(s) using the standard equation:

$$A_s = \frac{1.2Q}{V_s} \qquad \text{(Eq. 1)}$$

Where:

A_s = Minimum surface area for trapping soil particles of a certain size

V_s = Settling velocity of the design particle size chosen (V_s = 0.00028 ft/s for a design particle size of 0.01 mm at 68°F)

1.2 = Factor of safety recommended by USEPA to account for the reduction in basin efficiency caused due to turbulence and other non ideal conditions.

$Q = CIA$ (Eq.2)

Where

Q = Peak basin influent flow rate measured in cubic feet per second (ft^3/s)

C = Runoff coefficient (unitless)

I = Peak rainfall intensity for the 10-year, 6-hour rain event (in/hr)

A = Area draining into the sediment basin in acres

The design particle size should be the smallest soil grain size determined by wet sieve analysis, or the fine silt sized (0.01 mm [or 0.0004 in.]) particle, and the Vs used should be 100 percent of the calculated settling velocity.

This sizing basin method is dependent on the outlet structure design or the total basin length with an appropriate outlet. If the designer chooses to utilize the outlet structure to control the flow duration in the basin, the basin length (distance between the inlet and the outlet) should be a minimum of twice the basin width; the depth should not be less than 3 ft nor greater than 5 ft for safety reasons and for maximum efficiency (2 ft of sediment storage, 2 ft of capacity). If the designer chooses to utilize the basin length (with appropriate basin outlet) to control the flow duration in the basin, the basin length (distance between the inlet and the outlet) should be a specifically designed to capture 100% of the design particle size; the depth should not be less than 3 ft nor greater than 5 ft for safety reasons and for maximum efficiency (2 ft of sediment storage, 2 ft of capacity).

Basin design guidance provided herein assumes standard water properties (e.g., estimated average water temperature, kinematic viscosity, etc.) as a basis of the design. Designers can use an alternative design (Option 3) with site specific water properties as long as the design is as protective as Option 1.

The design guidance uses the peak influent flow rate to size sediment basins. Designers can use an alternative design (Option 3) with site specific average flow rates as long as the design is as protective as Option 1.

The basin should be located on the site where it can be maintained on a year-round basis and should be maintained on a schedule to retain the 2 ft of capacity.

Option 2:

Design pursuant to local ordinance for sediment basin design and maintenance, provided that the design efficiency is as protective or more protective of water quality than Option 1.

Option 3:

The use of an equivalent surface area design or equation provided that the design efficiency is as protective or more protective of water quality than Option 1.

B) Typical Sediment/Detention Basin Design Methodology:

Design of a sediment basin requires the designer to have an understanding of the site constraints, knowledge of the local soil (e.g., particle size distribution of potentially contributing soils), drainage area of the basin, and local hydrology. Designers should not assume that a sediment basin for location A is applicable to location B. Therefore, designers can use this factsheet as guidance but will need to apply professional judgment and knowledge of the site to design an effective and efficient sediment basin. The following provides a general overview of typical design methodologies:

Step 1. Hydrologic Design

- Evaluate the site constraints and assess the drainage area for the sediment basin. Designers should consider on- and off-site flows as well as changes in the drainage area associated with site construction/disturbance. To minimize additional construction during the course of the project, the designer should consider identifying the maximum drainage area when calculating the basin dimensions.

- If a local hydrology manual is not available it is recommended to follow standard rational method procedures to estimate the flow rate. The references section of this factsheet provides a reference to standard hydrology textbooks that can provide standard methodologies. If local rainfall depths are not available, values can be obtained from standard precipitation frequency maps from NOAA (downloaded from http://www.wrcc.dri.edu/pcpnfreq.html).

Step 2. Hydraulic Design

- Calculate the surface area required for the sediment basin using Equation 1. In which the flow rate is estimated for a 10-yr 6-hr event using rational method procedure listed in local hydrology manual and Vs is estimated using Stokes Law presented in Equation 3.

$$V_s = 2.81d^2 \qquad \text{(Eq.3)}$$

Where

V_s = Settling velocity in feet per second at 68°F

d = diameter of sediment particle in millimeters (smallest soil grain size determined by wet sieve analysis or fine silt (0.01 mm [or 0.0004 in.])

- In general the basin outlet design requires an iterative trial and error approach that considered the maximum water surface elevation, the elevation versus volume (stage-storage) relationship, the elevation verses basin outflow (a.k.a.-discharge) relationship, and the estimated inflow hydrograph. To adequately design the basins to settle sediment, the outlet configuration and associated outflow rates can be estimated by numerous methodologies. The following provides some guidance for design the basin outlet:

  - An outlet should have more than one orifice.

  - An outlet design typically utilizes multiple horizontal rows of orifices (approximately 3 or more) with at least 2 orifices per row (see Figures 1 and 2 at the end of this fact sheet).

- Orifices can vary in shape.
- Select the appropriate orifice diameter and number of perforations per row with the objective of minimizing the number of rows while maximizing the detention time.
- The diameter of each orifice is typically a maximum of 3-4 inches and a minimum of 0.25-0.5 inches.
- If a rectangular orifice is used, it is recommended to have minimum height of 0.5 inches and a maximum height of 6 inches.
- Rows are typically spaced at three times the diameter center to center vertically with a minimum distance of approximately 4 inches on center and a maximum distance of 1 foot on center.
- To estimate the outflow rate, each row is calculated separately based on the flow through a single orifice then multiplied by the number of orifices in the row. This step is repeated for each of the rows. Once all of the orifices are estimated, the total outflow rate versus elevation (stage-discharge curve) is developed to evaluate the detention time within the basin.
- Flow through a single orifice can be estimated using an Equation 4:

$$Q = BC' A(2gH)^{0.5} \qquad \text{(Eq.4)}$$

Where
Q = Outflow rate in ft^3/s
C′ = Orifice coefficient (unitless)
A = Area of the orifice (ft^2)
g = acceleration due to gravity (ft^3/s)
H = Head above the orifice (ft)
B = Anticipated Blockage or clogging factor (unitless), It is dependent on anticipated sediment and debris load, trash rack configuration etc, so the value is dependent on design engineers professional judgment and/or local requirements (B is never greater than 1 and a value of 0.5 is generally used)

  - Care must be taken in the selection of orifice coefficient ("C′"); 0.60 is most often recommended and used. However, based on actual tests, Young and Graziano (1989), "Outlet Hydraulics of Extended Detention Facilities for Northern Virginia Planning District Commission", recommends the following:
    - C′ = 0.66 for thin materials; where the thickness is equal to or less than the orifice diameter, or
    - C′ = 0.80 when the material is thicker than the orifice diameter
- If different sizes of orifices are used along the riser then they have to be sized such that not more than 50 percent of the design storm event drains in one-third of the drawdown time (to provide adequate settling time for events smaller than the design storm event)

and the entire volume drains within 96 hours or as regulated by the local vector control agency. If a basin fails to drain within 96 hours, the basin must be pumped dry.

- Because basins are not maintained for infiltration, water loss by infiltration should be disregarded when designing the hydraulic capacity of the outlet structure.
- Floating Outlet Skimmer: The floating skimmer (see Figure 3 at the end of this fact sheet is an alternative outlet configuration (patented) that drains water from upper portion of the water column. This configuration has been used for temporary and permanent basins and can improve basin performance by eliminating bottom orifices which have the potential of discharging solids. Some design considerations for this alternative outlet device includes the addition of a sand filter or perforated under drain at the low point in the basin and near the floating skimmer. These secondary drains allow the basin to fully drain. More detailed guidelines for sizing the skimmer can be downloaded from http://www.fairclothskimmer.com/.
- Hold and Release Valve: An ideal sediment/detention basin would hold all flows to the design storm level for sufficient time to settle solids, and then slowly release the storm water. Implementing a reliable valve system for releasing detention basins is critical to eliminate the potential for flooding in such a system. Some variations of hold and release valves include manual valves, bladder devices or electrically operated valves. When a precipitation event is forecast, the valve would be close for the duration of the storm and appropriate settling time. When the settling duration is met (approximately 24 or 48 hours), the valve would be opened and allow the stormwater to be released at a rate that does not resuspend settled solids and in a non-erosive manner. If this type of system is used the valve should be designed to empty the entire basin within 96 hours or as stipulated by local vector control regulations.

Step 3. Evaluate the Capacity of the Sediment Basin

- Typically, sediment basins do not perform as designed when they are not properly maintained or the sediment yield to the basin is larger than expected. As part of a good sediment basin design, designers should consider maintenance cycles, estimated soil loss and/or sediment yield, and basin sediment storage volume. The two equations below can be used to quantify the amount of soil entering the basin.
- The Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE, Eq.5) can be used to estimate annual soil loss and the Modified Universal Soil Equation (MUSLE, Eq.6) can be used to estimate sediment yield from a single storm event.

$$A = R \times K \times LS \times C \times P \qquad \text{(Eq.5)}$$

$$Y = 95 Q \times q_p^{0.56} \times K \times LS \times C \times P \qquad \text{(Eq.6)}$$

Where:

A = annual soil loss, tons/acre-year

R = rainfall erosion index, in 100 ft.tons/acre.in/hr

K = soil erodibility factor, tons/acre per unit of R

LS = slope length and steepness factor (unitless)

C = vegetative cover factor (unitless)

P = erosion control practice factor (unitless)

Y = single storm sediment yield in tons

Q = runoff volume in acre-feet

q_p = peak flow in cfs

- Detailed descriptions and methodologies for estimating the soil loss can be obtained from standard hydrology text books (See References section).
- Determination of the appropriate equation should consider construction duration and local environmental factors (soils, hydrology, etc.). For example, if a basin is planned for a project duration of 1 year and the designer specifies one maintenance cycle, RUSLE could be used to estimate the soil loss and thereby the designer could indicate that the sediment storage volume would be half of the soil loss value estimated. As an example for use of MUSLE, a project may have a short construction duration thereby requiring fewer maintenance cycles and a reduced sediment storage volume. MUSLE would be used to estimate the anticipated soil loss based on a specific storm event to evaluate the sediment storage volume and appropriate maintenance frequency.
- The soil loss estimates are an essential step in the design and it is essential that the designer provide construction contractors with enough information to understand maintenance frequency and/or depths within the basin that would trigger maintenance. Providing maintenance methods, frequency and specification should be included in design bid documents such as the SWPPP Site Map.
- Once the designer has quantified the amount of soil entering the basin, the depth required for sediment storage can be determined by dividing the estimated sediment loss by the surface area of the basin.

Step 4. Other Design Considerations

- Consider designing the volume of the settling zone for the total storm volume associated with the 2-year event or other appropriate design storms specified by the local agency. This volume can be used as a guide for sizing the basin without iterative routing calculations. The depth of the settling zone can be estimated by dividing the estimated 2-yr storm volume by the surface area of the basin.
- The basin volume consists of two zones:
  - A sediment storage zone at least 1 ft deep.
  - A settling zone at least 2 ft deep.

- The basin depth must be no less than 3 ft (not including freeboard).

- Proper hydraulic design of the outlet is critical to achieving the desired performance of the basin. The outlet should be designed to drain the basin within 24 to 96 hours (also referred to as "drawdown time"). The 24-hour limit is specified to provide adequate settling time; the 96-hour limit is specified to mitigate vector control concerns.

- Confirmation of the basin performance can be evaluated by routing the design storm (10-yr 6-hr, or as directed by local regulations) through the basin based on the basin volume (stage-storage curve) and the outlet design (stage-discharge curve based on the orifice configuration or equivalent outlet design).

- Sediment basins, regardless of size and storage volume, should include features to accommodate overflow or bypass flows that exceed the design storm event.

  - Include an emergency spillway to accommodate flows not carried by the principal spillway. The spillway should consist of an open channel (earthen or vegetated) over undisturbed material (not fill) or constructed of a non-erodible riprap (or equivalent protection) on fill slopes.

  - The spillway control section, which is a level portion of the spillway channel at the highest elevation in the channel, should be a minimum of 20 ft in length.

- Rock, vegetation or appropriate erosion control should be used to protect the basin inlet, outlet, and slopes against erosion.

- The total depth of the sediment basin should include the depth required for sediment storage, depth required for settling zone and freeboard of at least 1 foot or as regulated by local flood control agency for a flood event specified by the local agency.

- The basin alignment should be designed such that the length of the basin is more than twice the width of the basin; the length should be determined by measuring the distance between the inlet and the outlet. If the site topography does not allow for this configuration baffles should be installed so that the ratio is satisfied. If a basin has more than one inflow point, any inflow point that conveys more than 30 percent of the total peak inflow rate has to meet the required length to width ratio.

- An alternative basin sizing method proposed by Fifield (2004) can be consulted to estimate an alternative length to width ratio and basin configuration. These methods can be considered as part of Option 3 which allows for alternative designs that are protective or more protective of water quality.

- Baffles (see Figure 4 at the end of this fact sheet) can be considered at project sites where the existing topography or site constraints limit the length to width ratio. Baffles should be constructed of earthen berms or other structural material within the basin to divert flow in the basin, thus increasing the effective flow length from the basin inlet to the outlet riser. Baffles also reduce the change of short circuiting and allows for settling throughout the basin.

- Baffles are typically constructed from the invert of the basin to the crest of the emergency spillway (i.e., design event flows are meant to flow around the baffles and flows greater than the design event would flow over the baffles to the emergency spillway).
- Use of other materials for construction of basin baffles (such as silt fence) may not be appropriate based on the material specifications and will require frequent maintenance (maintain after every storm event). Maintenance may not be feasible when required due to flooded conditions resulting from frequent (i.e., back to back) storm events. Use of alternative baffle materials should not deviate from the intended purpose of the material, as described by the manufacturer.
- Sediment basins are best used in conjunction with erosion controls.
- Basins with an impounding levee greater than 4.5 ft tall, measured from the lowest point to the impounding area to the highest point of the levee, and basins capable of impounding more than 35,000 ft^3, should be designed by a Registered Civil Engineer. The design should include maintenance requirements, including sediment and vegetation removal, to ensure continuous function of the basin outlet and bypass structures.
- A forebay, constructed upstream of the basin, may be provided to remove debris and larger particles.
- The outflow from the sediment basin should be provided with velocity dissipation devices (see BMP EC-10) to prevent erosion and scouring of the embankment and channel.
- The principal outlet should consist of a corrugated metal, high density polyethylene (HDPE), or reinforced concrete riser pipe with dewatering holes and an anti-vortex device and trash rack attached to the top of the riser, to prevent floating debris from flowing out of the basin or obstructing the system. This principal structure should be designed to accommodate the inflow design storm.
- A rock pile or rock-filled gabions can serve as alternatives to the debris screen, although the designer should be aware of the potential for extra maintenance involved should the pore spaces in the rock pile clog.
- The outlet structure should be placed on a firm, smooth foundation with the base securely anchored with concrete or other means to prevent floatation.
- Attach riser pipe (watertight connection) to a horizontal pipe (barrel). Provide anti-seep collars on the barrel.
- Cleanout level should be clearly marked on the riser pipe.

Installation

- Securely anchor and install an anti-seep collar on the outlet pipe/riser and provide an emergency spillway for passing major floods (see local flood control agency).
- Areas under embankments must be cleared and stripped of vegetation.

- Chain link fencing should be provided around each sediment basin to prevent unauthorized entry to the basin or if safety is a concern.

Costs

The cost of a sediment basin is highly variable and is dependent of the site configuration. To decrease basin construction costs, designers should consider using existing site features such as berms or depressed area to site the sediment basin. Designers should also consider potential savings associated with designing the basin to minimize the number of maintenance cycles and siting the basin in a location where a permanent BMP (e.g., extended detention basin) is required for the project site.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level and as required by local requirements. It is recommended that at a minimum, basins be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Examine basin banks for seepage and structural soundness.
- Check inlet and outlet structures and spillway for any damage or obstructions. Repair damage and remove obstructions as needed.
- Check inlet and outlet area for erosion and stabilize if required.
- Check fencing for damage and repair as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the basin must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when sediment accumulation reaches one-half the designated sediment storage volume. Sediment removed during maintenance should be managed properly. The sediment should be appropriately evaluated and used or disposed of accordingly. Options include: incorporating sediment into earthwork on the site (only if there is no risk that sediment is contaminated); or off-site export/disposal at an appropriate location (e.g., sediment characterization and disposal to an appropriate landfill).
- Remove standing water from basin within 96 hours after accumulation.
- If the basin does not drain adequately (e.g., due to storms that are more frequent or larger than the design storm or other unforeseen site conditions), dewatering should be conducted in accordance with appropriate dewatering BMPs (see NS-2) and in accordance with local permits as applicable.
- To minimize vector production:
  - Remove accumulation of live and dead floating vegetation in basins during every inspection.
  - Remove excessive emergent and perimeter vegetation as needed or as advised by local or state vector control agencies.

References

A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices: Techniques for Reducing Nonpoint Source Pollution in the Coastal Zones, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, March 1992.

Draft-Sedimentation and Erosion Control, an Inventory of Current Practices, USEPA. April 1990.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Erosion and Sediment Control, Surface Mining in the Eastern U.S., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC,Washington, D.C., 1976.

Fifield, J.S. Designing for Effective Sediment and Erosion Control on Construction Sites. Forester Press, Santa Barbara, CA. 2004.

Goldman S.J., Jackson K. and Bursztynsky T.A. Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1986.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters. EPA 840-B-9-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1993.

Guidelines for the Design and Construction of Small Embankment Dams, Division of Safety of Dams, California Department of Water Resources, March 1986.

Haan C.T., Barfield B.J. and Hayes J.C. Design Hydrology and Sedimentology for Small Catchments. Academic Press. 1994.

Inlet/Outlet Alternatives for Extended Detention Basins. State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), 2001.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

McLean, J., 2000. Mosquitoes in Constructed Wetlands: A Management Bugaboo? In T.R. Schueler and H.K. Holland [eds.], The Practice of Watershed Protection. pp. 29-33. Center for Watershed Protection, Ellicott City, MD, 2000.

Metzger, M.E., D. F. Messer, C. L. Beitia, C. M. Myers, and V. L. Kramer. The Dark Side of Stormwater Runoff Management: Disease Vectors Associated with Structural BMPs, 2002.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Water, Work Group-Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Young, G.K. and Graziano, F., Outlet Hydraulics of Extended Detention Facilities for Northern Virginia Planning District Commission, 1989.

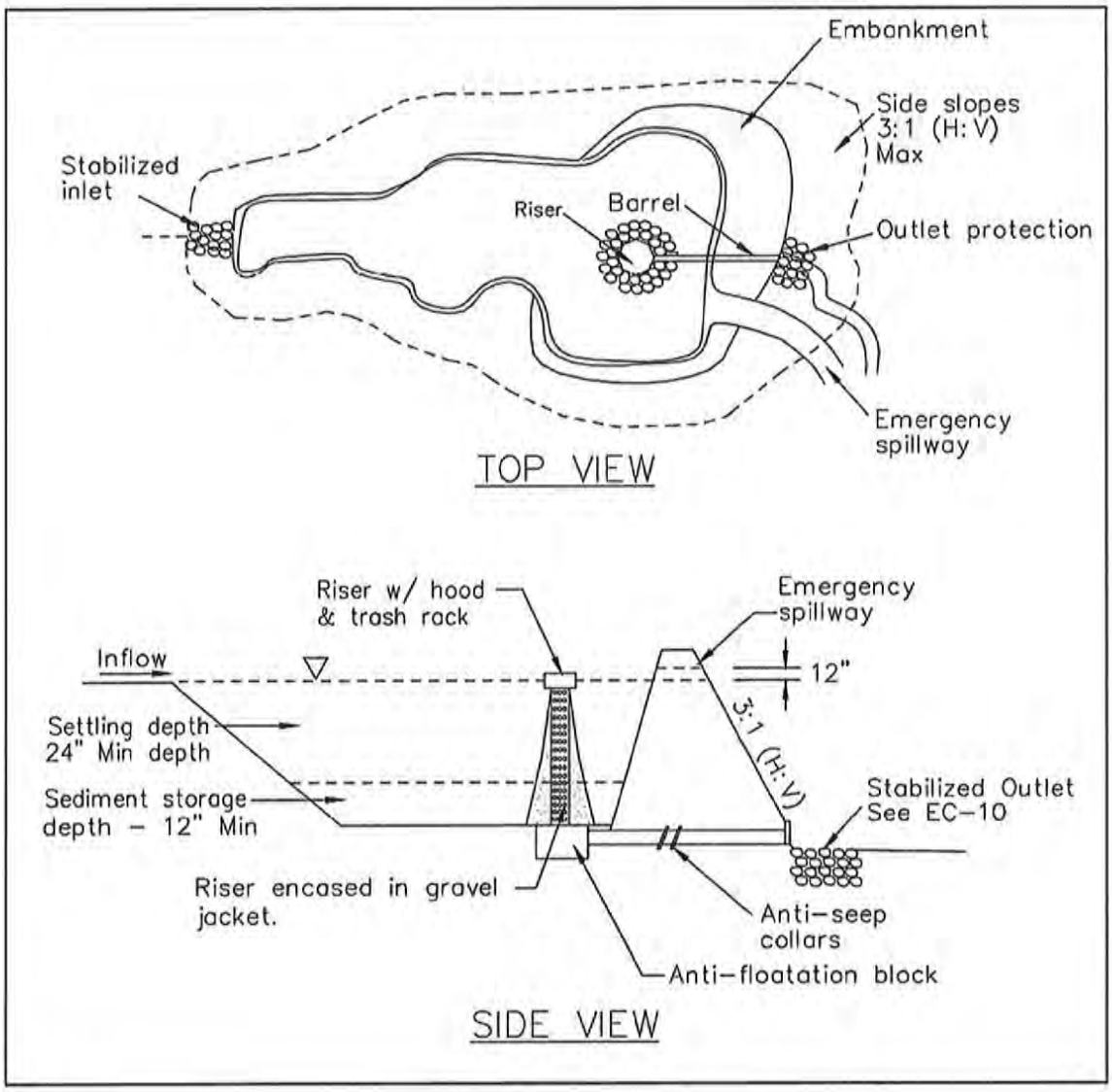


FIGURE 1: TYPICAL TEMPORARY SEDIMENT BASIN
MULTIPLE ORIFICE DESIGN
NOT TO SCALE

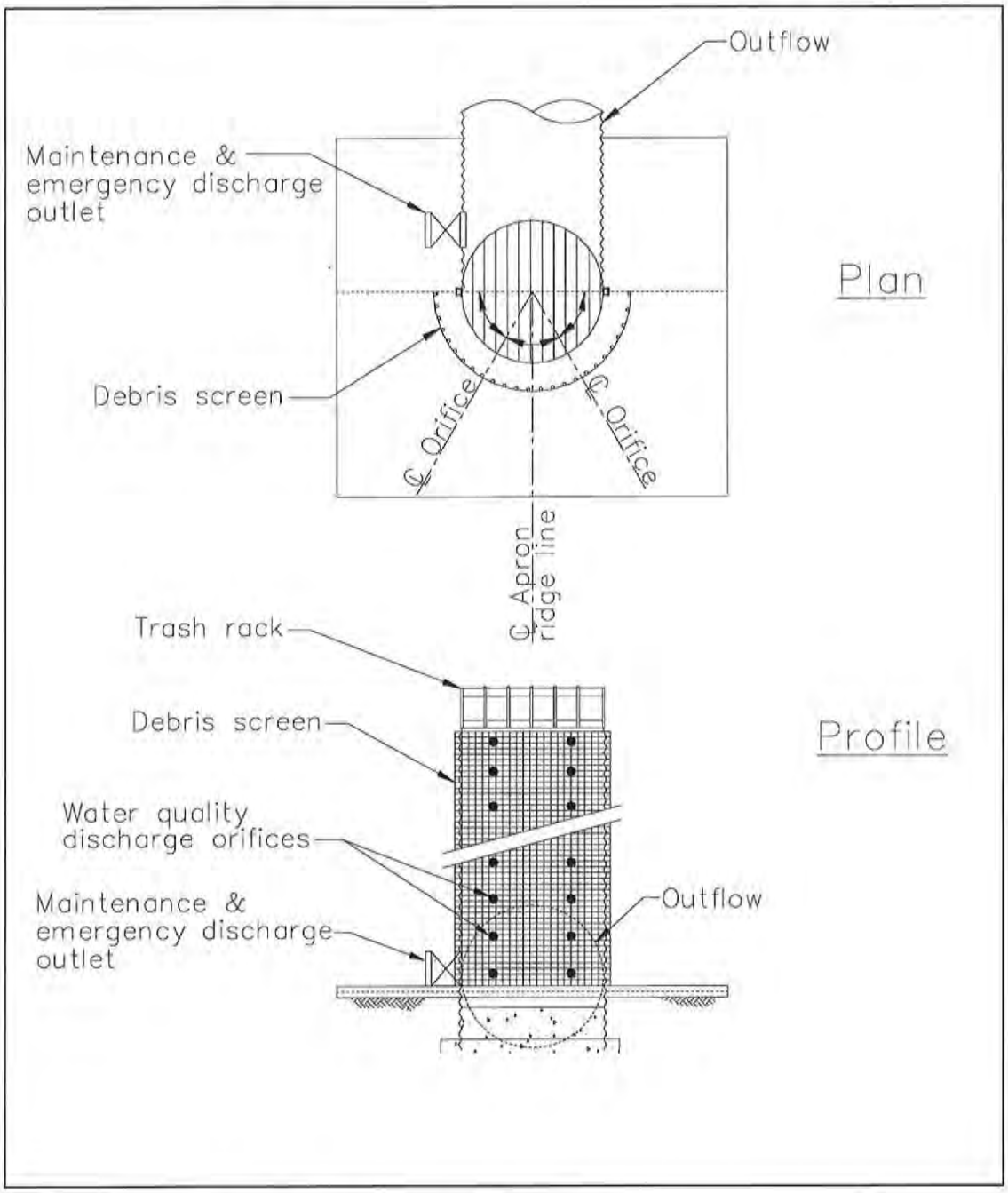


FIGURE 2: MULTIPLE ORIFICE OUTLET RISER

NOT TO SCALE

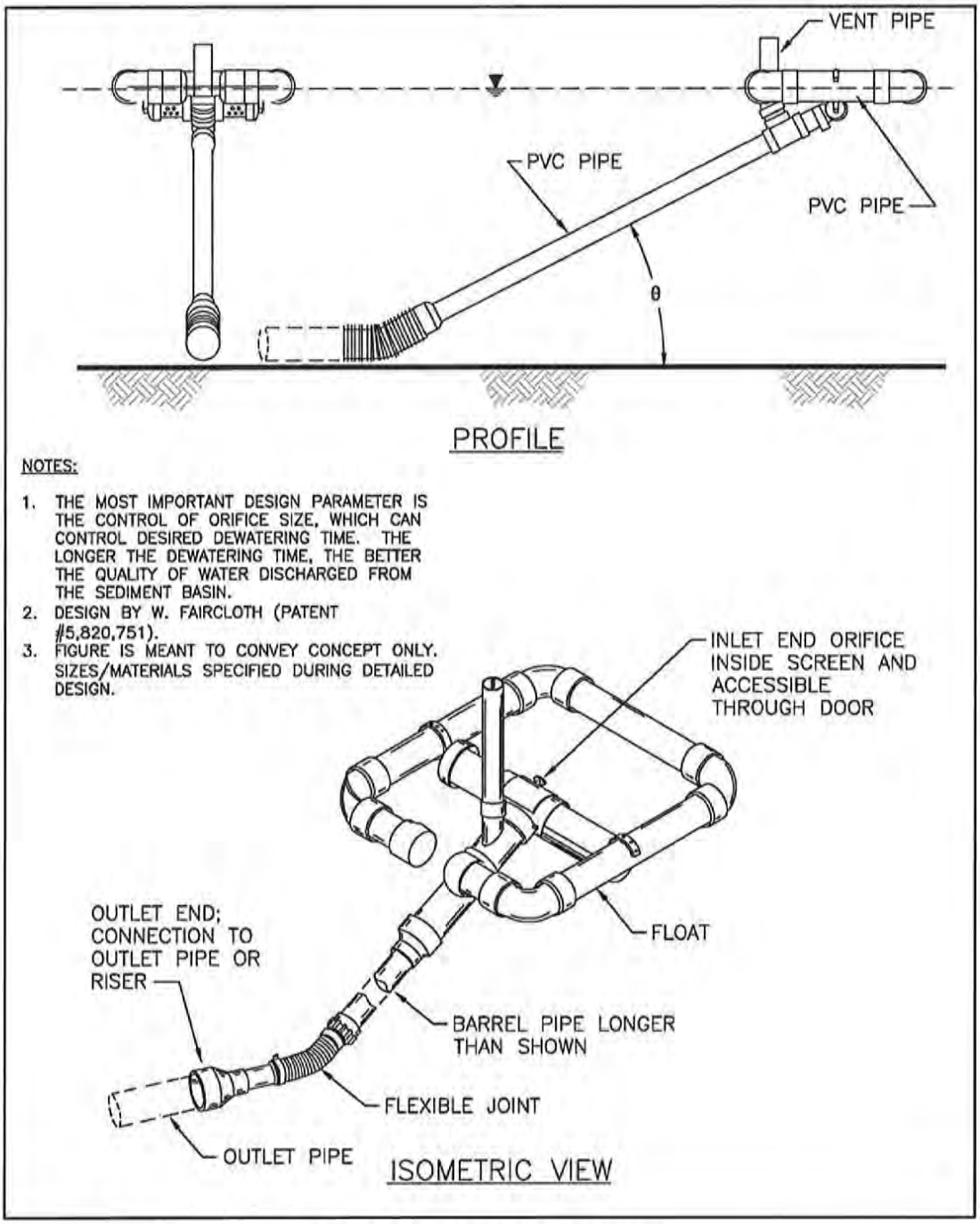


FIGURE 3: TYPICAL SKIMMER
NOT TO SCALE

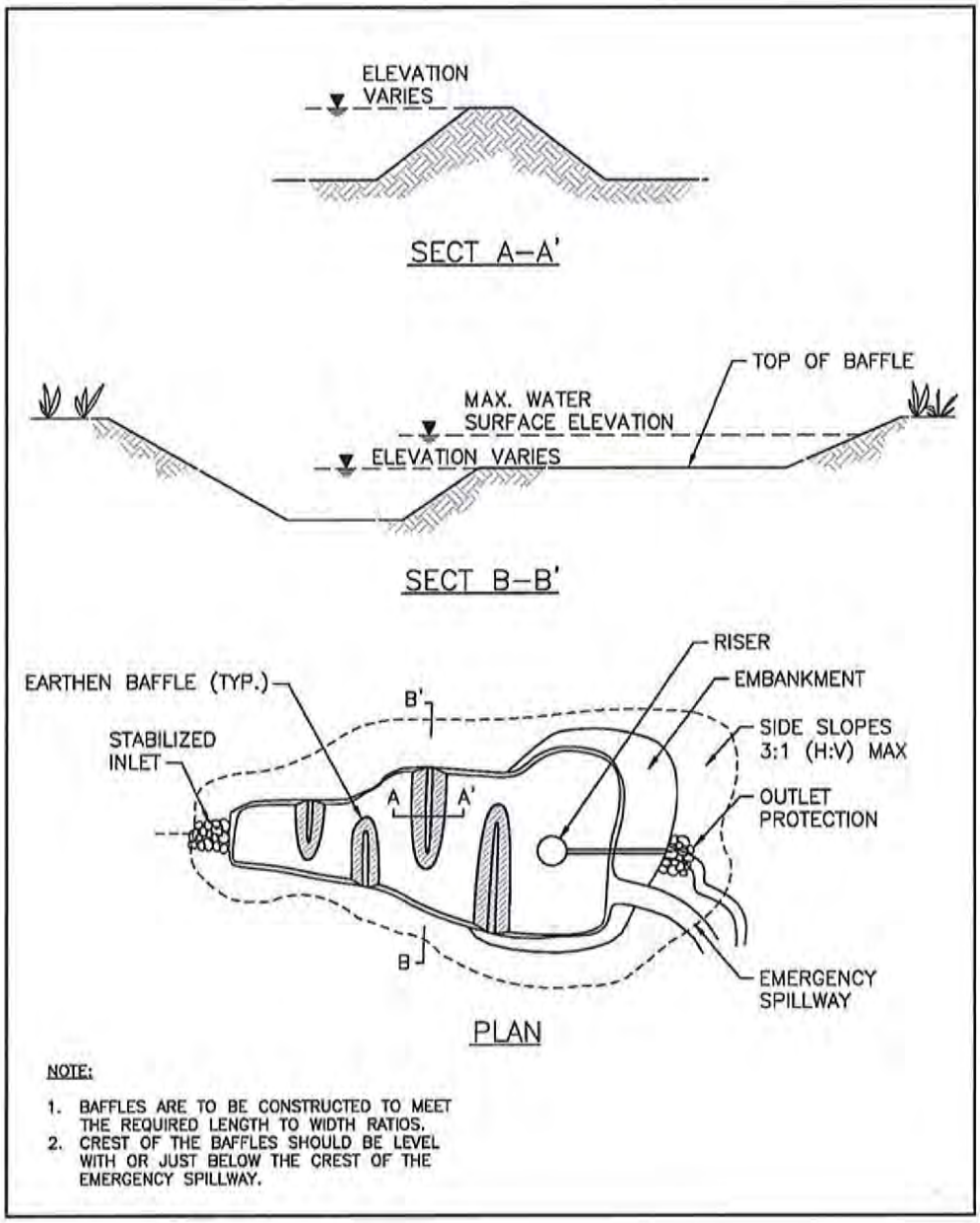
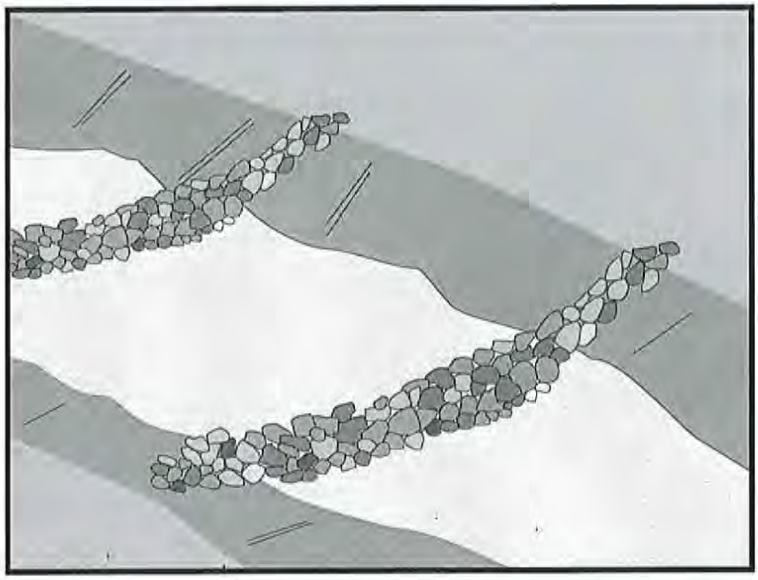


FIGURE 4: TYPICAL TEMPORARY SEDIMENT BASIN WITH BAFFLES

NOT TO SCALE

Check Dams

SE-4



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-5 Fiber Rolls

SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm

SE-8 Sandbag Barrier

SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A check dam is a small barrier constructed of rock, gravel bags, sandbags, fiber rolls, or other proprietary products, placed across a constructed swale or drainage ditch. Check dams reduce the effective slope of the channel, thereby reducing scour and channel erosion by reducing flow velocity and increasing residence time within the channel, allowing sediment to settle.

Suitable Applications

Check dams may be appropriate in the following situations:

- To promote sedimentation behind the dam.
- To prevent erosion by reducing the velocity of channel flow in small intermittent channels and temporary swales.
- In small open channels that drain 10 acres or less.
- In steep channels where stormwater runoff velocities exceed 5 ft/s.
- During the establishment of grass linings in drainage ditches or channels.
- In temporary ditches where the short length of service does not warrant establishment of erosion-resistant linings.
- To act as a grade control structure.

Limitations

- Not to be used in live streams or in channels with extended base flows.
- Not appropriate in channels that drain areas greater than 10 acres.
- Not appropriate in channels that are already grass-lined unless erosion potential or sediment-laden flow is expected, as installation may damage vegetation.
- Require extensive maintenance following high velocity flows.
- Promotes sediment trapping which can be re-suspended during subsequent storms or removal of the check dam.
- Do not construct check dams with straw bales or silt fence.
- Water suitable for mosquito production may stand behind check dams, particularly if subjected to daily non-stormwater discharges.

Implementation

General

Check dams reduce the effective slope and create small pools in swales and ditches that drain 10 acres or less. Using check dams to reduce channel slope reduces the velocity of stormwater flows, thus reducing erosion of the swale or ditch and promoting sedimentation. Thus, check dams are dual-purpose and serve an important role as erosion controls as well as as sediment controls. Note that use of 1-2 isolated check dams for sedimentation will likely result in little net removal of sediment because of the small detention time and probable scour during longer storms. Using a series of check dams will generally increase their effectiveness. A sediment trap (SE-3) may be placed immediately upstream of the check dam to increase sediment removal efficiency.

Design and Layout

Check dams work by decreasing the effective slope in ditches and swales. An important consequence of the reduced slope is a reduction in capacity of the ditch or swale. This reduction in capacity should be considered when using this BMP, as reduced capacity can result in overtopping of the ditch or swale and resultant consequences. In some cases, such as a "permanent" ditch or swale being constructed early and used as a "temporary" conveyance for construction flows, the ditch or swale may have sufficient capacity such that the temporary reduction in capacity due to check dams is acceptable. When check dams reduce capacities beyond acceptable limits, either:

- Don't use check dams. Consider alternative BMPs, or.
- Increase the size of the ditch or swale to restore capacity.

Maximum slope and velocity reduction is achieved when the toe of the upstream dam is at the same elevation as the top of the downstream dam (see "Spacing Between Check Dams" detail at the end of this fact sheet). The center section of the dam should be lower than the edge sections (at least 6 inches), acting as a spillway, so that the check dam will direct flows to the center of

the ditch or swale (see "Typical Rock Check Dam" detail at the end of this fact sheet). Bypass or side-cutting can occur if a sufficient spillway is not provided in the center of the dam.

Check dams are usually constructed of rock, gravel bags, sandbags, and fiber rolls. A number of products can also be used as check dams (e.g. HDPE check dams, temporary silt dikes (SE-12)), and some of these products can be removed and reused. Check dams can also be constructed of logs or lumber, and have the advantage of a longer lifespan when compared to gravel bags, sandbags, and fiber rolls. Check dams should not be constructed from straw bales or silt fences, since concentrated flows quickly wash out these materials.

Rock check dams are usually constructed of 8 to 12 in. rock. The rock is placed either by hand or mechanically, but never just dumped into the channel. The dam should completely span the ditch or swale to prevent washout. The rock used should be large enough to stay in place given the expected design flow through the channel. It is recommended that abutments be extended 18 in. into the channel bank. Rock can be graded such that smaller diameter rock (e.g. 2-4 in) is located on the upstream side of larger rock (holding the smaller rock in place); increasing residence time.

Log check dams are usually constructed of 4 to 6 in. diameter logs, installed vertically. The logs should be embedded into the soil at least 18 in. Logs can be bolted or wired to vertical support logs that have been driven or buried into the soil.

See fiber rolls, SE-5, for installation of fiber roll check dams.

Gravel bag and sand bag check dams are constructed by stacking bags across the ditch or swale, shaped as shown in the drawings at the end of this fact sheet (see "Gravel Bag Check Dam" detail at the end of this fact sheet).

Manufactured products, such as temporary silt dikes (SE-12), should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Installation typically requires anchoring or trenching of products, as well as regular maintenance to remove accumulated sediment and debris.

If grass is planted to stabilize the ditch or swale, the check dam should be removed when the grass has matured (unless the slope of the swales is greater than 4%).

The following guidance should be followed for the design and layout of check dams:

- Install the first check dam approximately 16 ft from the outfall device and at regular intervals based on slope gradient and soil type.
- Check dams should be placed at a distance and height to allow small pools to form between each check dam.
- For multiple check dam installation, backwater from a downstream check dam should reach the toes of the upstream check dam.
- A sediment trap provided immediately upstream of the check dam will help capture sediment. Due to the potential for this sediment to be resuspended in subsequent storms, the sediment trap should be cleaned following each storm event.

- High flows (typically a 2-year storm or larger) should safely flow over the check dam without an increase in upstream flooding or damage to the check dam.
- Where grass is used to line ditches, check dams should be removed when grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale.

Materials

- Rock used for check dams should typically be 8-12 in rock and be sufficiently sized to stay in place given expected design flows in the channel. Smaller diameter rock (e.g. 2 to 4 in) can be placed on the upstream side of larger rock to increase residence time.
- Gravel bags used for check dams should conform to the requirements of SE-6, Gravel Bag Berms.
- Sandbags used for check dams should conform to SE-8, Sandbag Barrier.
- Fiber rolls used for check dams should conform to SE-5, Fiber Rolls.
- Temporary silt dikes used for check dams should conform to SE-12, Temporary Silt Dikes.

Installation

- Rock should be placed individually by hand or by mechanical methods (no dumping of rock) to achieve complete ditch or swale coverage.
- Tightly abut bags and stack according to detail shown in the figure at the end of this section (pyramid approach). Gravel bags and sandbags should not be stacked any higher than 3 ft.
- Upper rows or gravel and sand bags shall overlap joints in lower rows.
- Fiber rolls should be trenched in, backfilled, and firmly staked in place.
- Install along a level contour.
- HDPE check dams, temporary silt dikes, and other manufactured products should be used and installed per manufacturer specifications.

Costs

Cost consists of labor costs if materials are readily available (such as gravel on-site). If material must be imported, costs will increase. For other material and installation costs, see SE-5, SE-6, SE-8, SE-12, and SE-14.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Replace missing rock, bags, rolls, etc. Replace bags or rolls that have degraded or have become damaged.

- If the check dam is used as a sediment capture device, sediment that accumulates behind the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.
- If the check dam is used as a grade control structure, sediment removal is not required as long as the system continues to control the grade.
- Inspect areas behind check dams for pools of standing water, especially if subjected to daily non-stormwater discharges.
- Remove accumulated sediment prior to permanent seeding or soil stabilization.
- Remove check dam and accumulated sediment when check dams are no longer needed.

References

Draft – Sedimentation and Erosion Control, and Inventory of Current Practices, USEPA, April 1990.

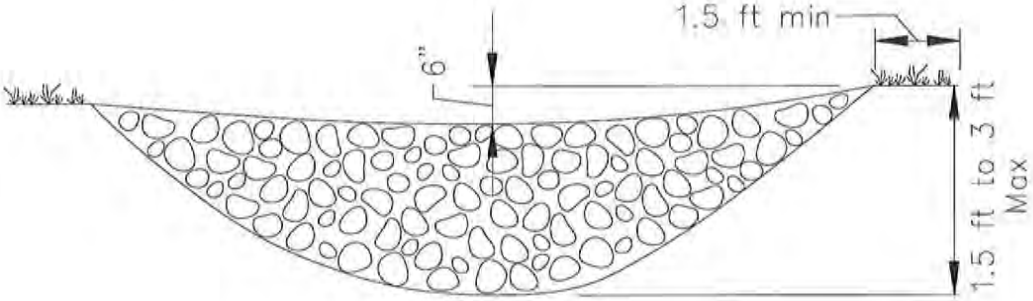
Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

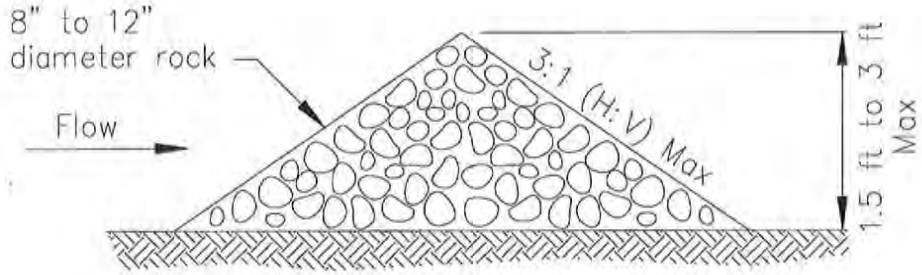
Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

Metzger, M.E. 2004. Managing mosquitoes in stormwater treatment devices. University of California Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources, Publication 8125. On-line: http://anrcatalog.ucdavis.edu/pdf/8125.pdf

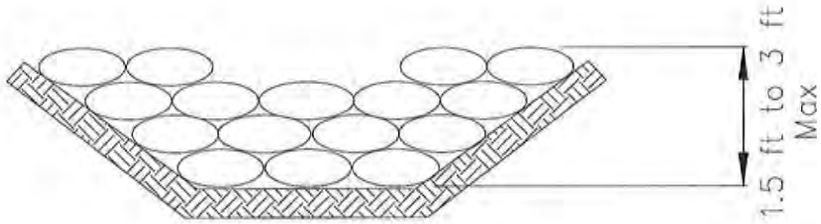


ELEVATION

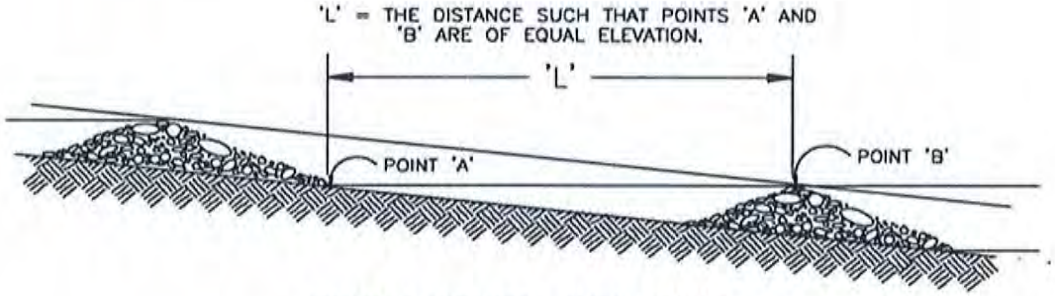


TYPICAL ROCK CHECK DAM SECTION

ROCK CHECK DAM
NOT TO SCALE



GRAVEL BAG CHECK DAM ELEVATION
NOT TO SCALE



SPACING BETWEEN CHECK DAMS

Fiber Rolls

SE-5

Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-1 Silt Fence

SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm

SE-8 Sandbag Barrier

SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A fiber roll consists of straw, coir, or other biodegradable materials bound into a tight tubular roll wrapped by netting, which can be photodegradable or natural. Additionally, gravel core fiber rolls are available, which contain an imbedded ballast material such as gravel or sand for additional weight when staking the rolls are not feasible (such as use as inlet protection). When fiber rolls are placed at the toe and on the face of slopes along the contours, they intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff (through sedimentation). By interrupting the length of a slope, fiber rolls can also reduce sheet and rill erosion until vegetation is established.

Suitable Applications

Fiber rolls may be suitable:

- Along the toe, top, face, and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.
- At the end of a downward slope where it transitions to a steeper slope.
- Along the perimeter of a project.
- As check dams in unlined ditches with minimal grade.
- Down-slope of exposed soil areas.
- At operational storm drains as a form of inlet protection.

- Around temporary stockpiles.

Limitations

- Fiber rolls are not effective unless trenched in and staked.
- Not intended for use in high flow situations.
- Difficult to move once saturated.
- If not properly staked and trenched in, fiber rolls could be transported by high flows.
- Fiber rolls have a very limited sediment capture zone.
- Fiber rolls should not be used on slopes subject to creep, slumping, or landslide.
- Rolls typically function for 12-24 months depending upon local conditions.

Implementation

Fiber Roll Materials

- Fiber rolls should be prefabricated.
- Fiber rolls may come manufactured containing polyacrylamide (PAM), a flocculating agent within the roll. Fiber rolls impregnated with PAM provide additional sediment removal capabilities and should be used in areas with fine, clayey or silty soils to provide additional sediment removal capabilities. Monitoring may be required for these installations.
- Fiber rolls are made from weed free rice straw, flax, or a similar agricultural material bound into a tight tubular roll by netting.
- Typical fiber rolls vary in diameter from 9 in. to 20 in. Larger diameter rolls are available as well.

Installation

- Locate fiber rolls on level contours spaced as follows:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Fiber rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft.
  - Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Fiber Rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective).
  - Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Fiber Rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective).
- Prepare the slope before beginning installation.
- Dig small trenches across the slope on the contour. The trench depth should be ¼ to 1/3 of the thickness of the roll, and the width should equal the roll diameter, in order to provide area to backfill the trench.

- It is critical that rolls are installed perpendicular to water movement, and parallel to the slope contour.
- Start building trenches and installing rolls from the bottom of the slope and work up.
- It is recommended that pilot holes be driven through the fiber roll. Use a straight bar to drive holes through the roll and into the soil for the wooden stakes.
- Turn the ends of the fiber roll up slope to prevent runoff from going around the roll.
- Stake fiber rolls into the trench.
  - Drive stakes at the end of each fiber roll and spaced 4 ft maximum on center.
  - Use wood stakes with a nominal classification of 0.75 by 0.75 in. and minimum length of 24 in.
- If more than one fiber roll is placed in a row, the rolls should be overlapped, not abutted.
- See typical fiber roll installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

Removal

- Fiber rolls can be left in place or removed depending on the type of fiber roll and application (temporary vs. permanent installation). Typically, fiber rolls encased with plastic netting are used for a temporary application because the netting does not biodegrade. Fiber rolls used in a permanent application are typically encased with a biodegradeable material and are left in place. Removal of a fiber roll used in a permanent application can result in greater disturbance.
- Temporary installations should only be removed when up gradient areas are stabilized per General Permit requirements, and/or pollutant sources no longer present a hazard. But, they should also be removed before vegetation becomes too mature so that the removal process does not disturb more soil and vegetation than is necessary.

Costs

Material costs for regular fiber rolls range from $20 - $30 per 25 ft roll.

Material costs for PAM impregnated fiber rolls range between 7.00-$9.00 per linear foot, based upon vendor research.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Repair or replace split, torn, unraveling, or slumping fiber rolls.
- If the fiber roll is used as a sediment capture device, or as an erosion control device to maintain sheet flows, sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed

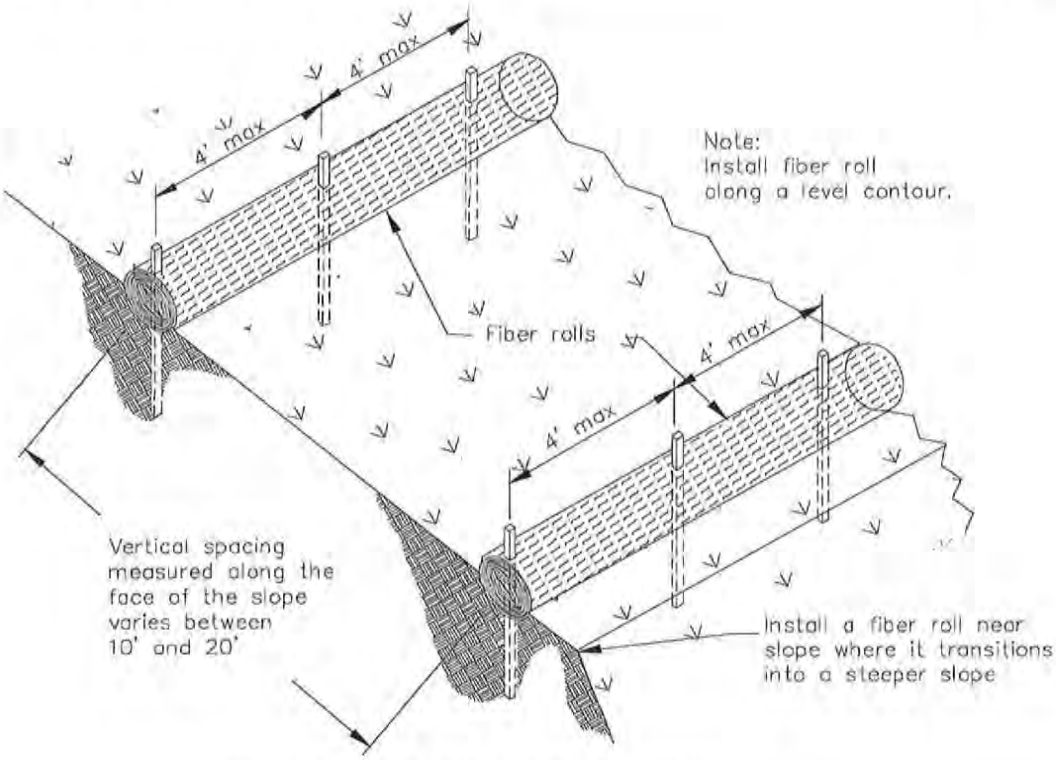
in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when sediment accumulation reaches one-third the designated sediment storage depth.

- If fiber rolls are used for erosion control, such as in a check dam, sediment removal should not be required as long as the system continues to control the grade. Sediment control BMPs will likely be required in conjunction with this type of application.
- Repair any rills or gullies promptly.

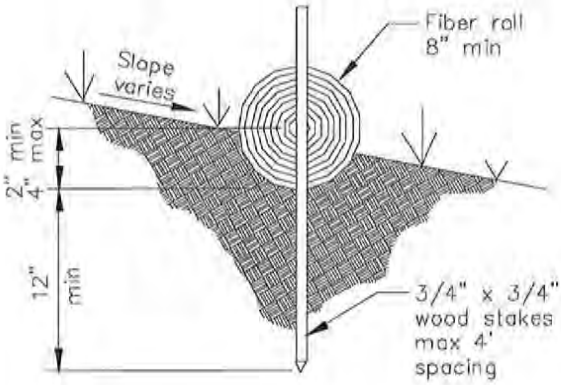
References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.



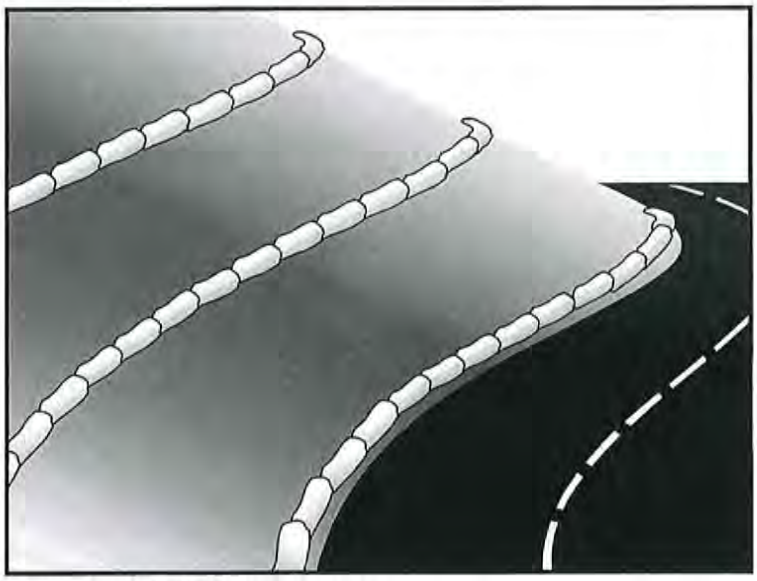
TYPICAL FIBER ROLL INSTALLATION
N.T.S.



ENTRENCHMENT DETAIL
N.T.S.

Gravel Bag Berm

SE-6



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-1 Silt Fence

SE-5 Fiber Roll

SE-8 Sandbag Barrier

SE-12 Temporary Silt Dike

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A gravel bag berm is a series of gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Gravel bags pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out, and release runoff slowly as sheet flow, preventing erosion.

Suitable Applications

Gravel bag berms may be suitable:

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets
  - Below other small cleared areas
  - Along the perimeter of a site
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas
  - Along streams and channels
- As a linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.

- At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes.
- As chevrons (small check dams) across mildly sloped construction roads. For use check dam use in channels, see SE-4, Check Dams.

Limitations

- Gravel berms may be difficult to remove.
- Removal problems limit their usefulness in landscaped areas.
- Gravel bag berm may not be appropriate for drainage areas greater than 5 acres.
- Runoff will pond upstream of the berm, possibly causing flooding if sufficient space does not exist.
- Degraded gravel bags may rupture when removed, spilling contents.
- Installation can be labor intensive.
- Durability of gravel bags is somewhat limited and bags may need to be replaced when installation is required for longer than 6 months.
- Easily damaged by construction equipment.
- When used to detain concentrated flows, maintenance requirements increase.

Implementation

General

A gravel bag berm consists of a row of open graded gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a gravel bag berm intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding allows sediment to settle. The open graded gravel in the bags is porous, which allows the ponded runoff to flow slowly through the bags, releasing the runoff as sheet flows. Gravel bag berms also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets, which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils. Gravel bag berms are similar to sand bag barriers, but are more porous. Generally, gravel bag berms should be used in conjunction with temporary soil stabilization controls up slope to provide effective erosion and sediment control.

Design and Layout

- Locate gravel bag berms on level contours.
- When used for slope interruption, the following slope/sheet flow length combinations apply:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft, with the first row near the slope toe.
  - Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.

Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.

- Turn the ends of the gravel bag barriers up slope to prevent runoff from going around the berm.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the gravel bag berm to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, gravel bag barriers should be set back from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. Where specific site conditions do not allow for a set-back, the gravel bag barrier may be constructed on the toe of the slope. To prevent flows behind the barrier, bags can be placed perpendicular to a berm to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.
- In Non-Traffic Areas:
  - Height = 18 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction
  - Top width = 12 in. minimum for one or two layer construction
  - Side slopes = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter
- In Construction Traffic Areas:
  - Height = 12 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction.
  - Top width = 12 in. minimum for one or two layer construction.
  - Side slopes = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter.
- Butt ends of bags tightly.
- On multiple row, or multiple layer construction, overlap butt joints of adjacent row and row beneath.
- Use a pyramid approach when stacking bags.

Materials

- ***Bag Material:*** Bags should be woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide fabric or burlap, minimum unit weight of 4 ounces/yd^2, Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lb/in^2 in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D3786, and ultraviolet stability exceeding 70% in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4355.

- ***Bag Size:*** Each gravel-filled bag should have a length of 18 in., width of 12 in., thickness of 3 in., and mass of approximately 33 lbs. Bag dimensions are nominal, and may vary based on locally available materials.

- ***Fill Material:*** Fill material should be 0.5 to 1 in. crushed rock, clean and free from clay, organic matter, and other deleterious material, or other suitable open graded, non-cohesive, porous gravel.

Costs

Material costs for gravel bags are average and are dependent upon material availability. $2.50-3.00 per filled gravel bag is standard based upon vendor research.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.

- Gravel bags exposed to sunlight will need to be replaced every two to three months due to degrading of the bags.

- Reshape or replace gravel bags as needed.

- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.

- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.

- Remove gravel bag berms when no longer needed and recycle gravel fill whenever possible and properly dispose of bag material. Remove sediment accumulation and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area.

References

Handbook of Steel Drainage and Highway Construction, American Iron and Steel Institute, 1983.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Pollution Plan Handbook, First Edition, State of California, Department of Transportation Division of New Technology, Materials and Research, October 1992.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

Street Sweeping and Vacuuming SE-7

Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	☑
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	☑
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Street sweeping and vacuuming includes use of self-propelled and walk-behind equipment to remove sediment from streets and roadways, and to clean paved surfaces in preparation for final paving. Sweeping and vacuuming prevents sediment from the project site from entering storm drains or receiving waters.

Suitable Applications

Sweeping and vacuuming are suitable anywhere sediment is tracked from the project site onto public or private paved streets and roads, typically at points of egress. Sweeping and vacuuming are also applicable during preparation of paved surfaces for final paving.

Limitations

Sweeping and vacuuming may not be effective when sediment is wet or when tracked soil is caked (caked soil may need to be scraped loose).

Implementation

- Controlling the number of points where vehicles can leave the site will allow sweeping and vacuuming efforts to be focused, and perhaps save money.
- Inspect potential sediment tracking locations daily.
- Visible sediment tracking should be swept or vacuumed on a daily basis.

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Do not use kick brooms or sweeper attachments. These tend to spread the dirt rather than remove it.
- If not mixed with debris or trash, consider incorporating the removed sediment back into the project

Costs

Rental rates for self-propelled sweepers vary depending on hopper size and duration of rental. Expect rental rates from $58/hour (3 yd^3 hopper) to $88/hour (9 yd^3 hopper), plus operator costs. Hourly production rates vary with the amount of area to be swept and amount of sediment. Match the hopper size to the area and expect sediment load to minimize time spent dumping.

Inspection and Maintenance

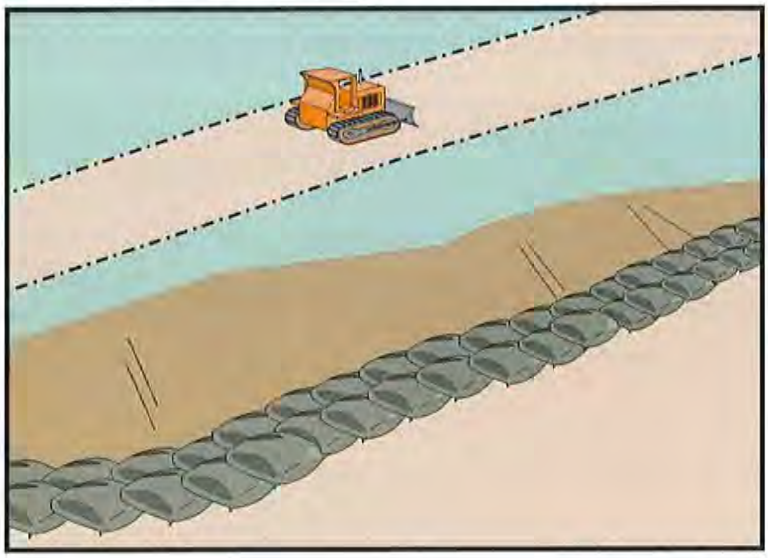
- Inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- When actively in use, points of ingress and egress must be inspected daily.
- When tracked or spilled sediment is observed outside the construction limits, it must be removed at least daily. More frequent removal, even continuous removal, may be required in some jurisdictions.
- Be careful not to sweep up any unknown substance or any object that may be potentially hazardous.
- Adjust brooms frequently; maximize efficiency of sweeping operations.
- After sweeping is finished, properly dispose of sweeper wastes at an approved dumpsite.

References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Labor Surcharge and Equipment Rental Rates, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), April 1, 2002 – March 31, 2003.

Sandbag Barrier SE-8



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-1 Silt Fence

SE-5 Fiber Rolls

SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm

SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A sandbag barrier is a series of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept or to divert sheet flows. Sandbag barriers placed on a level contour pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out.

Suitable Applications

Sandbag barriers may be a suitable control measure for the applications described below. It is important to consider that sand bags are less porous than gravel bags and ponding or flooding can occur behind the barrier. Also, sand is easily transported by runoff if bags are damaged or ruptured. The SWPPP Preparer should select the location of a sandbag barrier with respect to the potential for flooding, damage, and the ability to maintain the BMP.

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes.
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets.
  - Below other small cleared areas.
  - Along the perimeter of a site.
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas.
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas.
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas.
  - Along streams and channels.

- As linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.
  - At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes.
  - As check dams across mildly sloped construction roads.

Limitations

- It is necessary to limit the drainage area upstream of the barrier to 5 acres.
- Sandbags are not intended to be used as filtration devices.
- Easily damaged by construction equipment.
- Degraded sandbags may rupture when removed, spilling sand.
- Installation can be labor intensive.
- Durability of sandbags is somewhat limited and bags will need to be replaced when there are signs of damage or wear.
- Burlap should not be used for sandbags.

Implementation

General

A sandbag barrier consists of a row of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a sandbag barrier intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding allows sediment to settle. Sand-filled bags have limited porosity, which is further limited as the fine sand tends to quickly plug with sediment, limiting or completely blocking the rate of flow through the barrier. If a porous barrier is desired, consider SE-1, Silt Fence, SE-5, Fiber Rolls, SE-6, Gravel Bag Berms or SE-14, Biofilter Bags. Sandbag barriers also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils. Sandbag barriers are similar to gravel bag berms, but less porous. Generally, sandbag barriers should be used in conjunction with temporary soil stabilization controls up slope to provide effective erosion and sediment control.

Design and Layout

- Locate sandbag barriers on a level contour.
- When used for slope interruption, the following slope/sheet flow length combinations apply:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft, with the first row near the slope toe.
  - Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.

- Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.

- Turn the ends of the sandbag barrier up slope to prevent runoff from going around the barrier.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the barrier to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, sand bag barriers should be set back from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. Where specific site conditions do not allow for a set-back, the sand bag barrier may be constructed on the toe of the slope. To prevent flows behind the barrier, bags can be placed perpendicular to a berm to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.
- Butt ends of bags tightly.
- Overlap butt joints of row beneath with each successive row.
- Use a pyramid approach when stacking bags.
- In non-traffic areas
  - Height = 18 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction
  - Side slope = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter
- In construction traffic areas
  - Height = 12 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more layer construction.
  - Side slopes = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter.
- See typical sandbag barrier installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

Materials

- ***Sandbag Material:*** Sandbag should be woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide fabric, minimum unit weight of 4 ounces/yd^2, Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lb/in^2 in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D3786, and ultraviolet stability exceeding 70% in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4355. Use of burlap is not an acceptable substitute, as sand can more easily mobilize out of burlap.
- ***Sandbag Size:*** Each sand-filled bag should have a length of 18 in., width of 12 in., thickness of 3 in., and mass of approximately 33 lbs. Bag dimensions are nominal, and may vary based on locally available materials.

- ***Fill Material:*** All sandbag fill material should be non-cohesive, Class 3 (Caltrans Standard Specification, Section 25) or similar permeable material free from clay and deleterious material, such as recycled concrete or asphalt.

Costs

Empty sandbags cost $0.25 - $0.75. Average cost of fill material is $8 per yd^3. Additional labor is required to fill the bags. Pre-filled sandbags are more expensive at $1.50 - $2.00 per bag. These costs are based upon vendor research.

Inspection and Maintenance

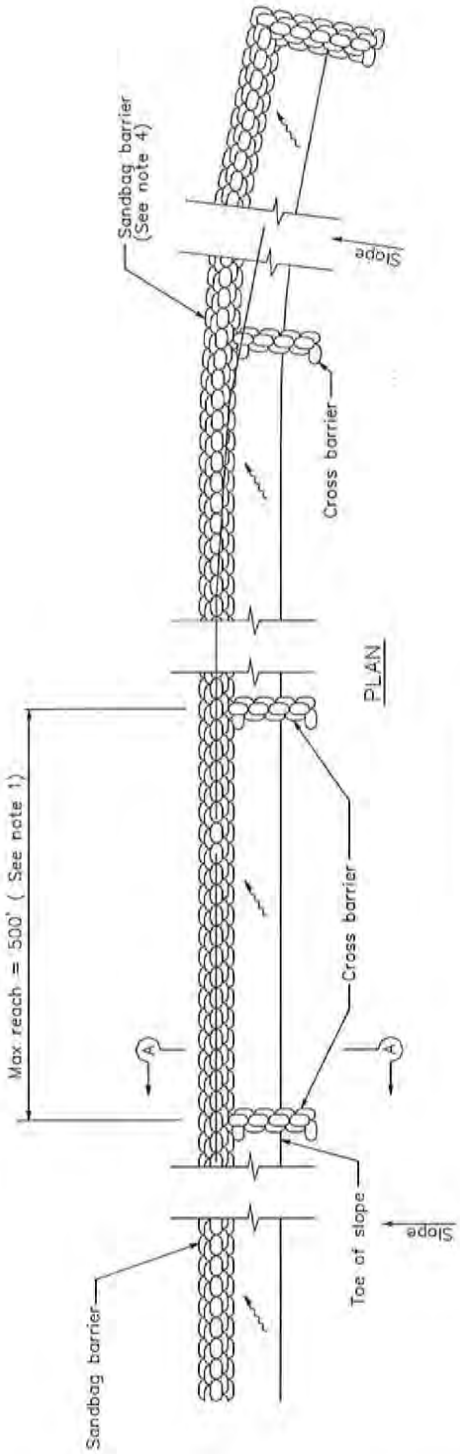
- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Sandbags exposed to sunlight will need to be replaced every two to three months due to degradation of the bags.
- Reshape or replace sandbags as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates behind the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.
- Remove sandbags when no longer needed and recycle sand fill whenever possible and properly dispose of bag material. Remove sediment accumulation, and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area.

References

Standard Specifications for Construction of Local Streets and Roads, California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2002.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

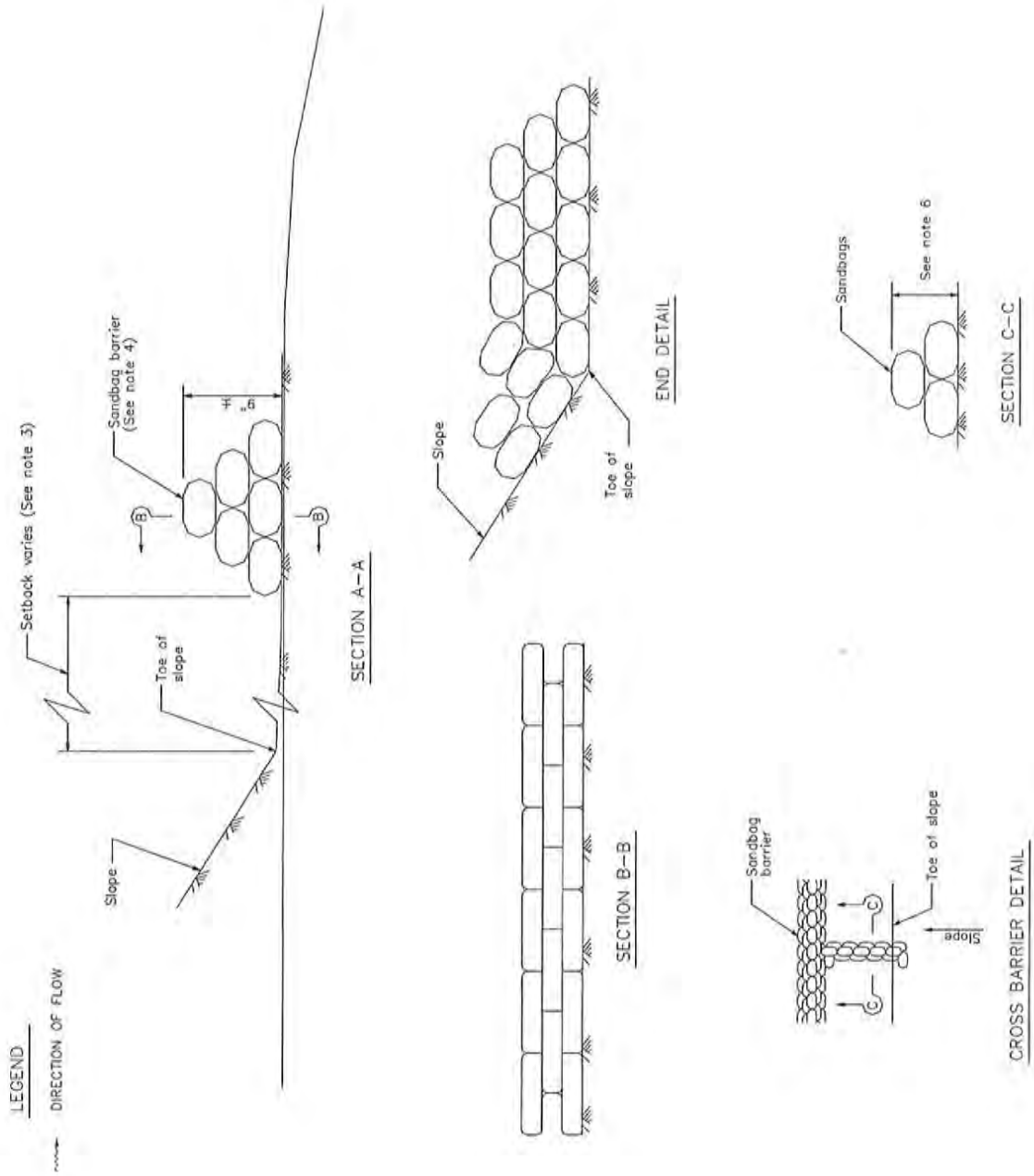
Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.



SANDBAG BARRIER

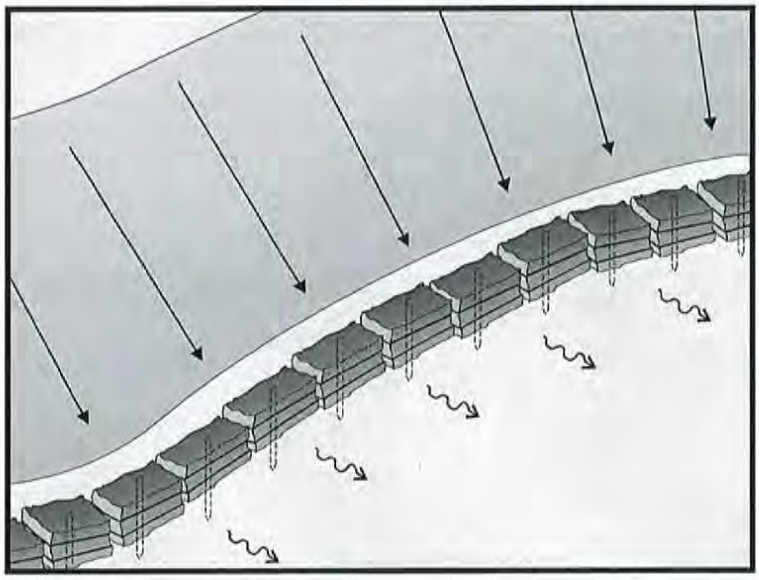
NOTES

1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed 1/2 the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. Place sandbags tightly.
3. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
4. Sandbag barrier shall be a minimum of 3 bags high.
5. The end of the barrier shall be turned up slope.
6. Cross barriers shall be a min of 1/2 and a max of 2/3 the height of the linear barrier.
7. Sandbag rows and layers shall be staggered to eliminate gaps.



LEGEND
DIRECTION OF FLOW
Setback varies (See note 3)
Sandbag barrier (See note 4)
Toe of slope
Slope
SECTION A–A
Slope
Toe of slope
END DETAIL
SECTION B–B
Sandbags
See note 6
SECTION C–C
Sandbag barrier
Toe of slope
Slope
CROSS BARRIER DETAIL

Straw Bale Barrier SE-9



Description and Purpose

A straw bale barrier is a series of straw bales placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Straw bale barriers pond sheet-flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out.

Suitable Applications

Straw bale barriers may be suitable:

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets
  - Below other small cleared areas
  - Along the perimeter of a site
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas
  - Along streams and channels
- As linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow

Categories

EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-1 Silt Fence

SE-5 Fiber Rolls

SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm

SE-8 Sandbag Barrier

SE-12 Temporary Silt Dike

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

- At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes
- As check dams across mildly sloped construction roads

Limitations

Straw bale barriers:

- Are not to be used for extended periods of time because they tend to rot and fall apart
- Are suitable only for sheet flow on slopes of 10 % or flatter
- Are not appropriate for large drainage areas, limit to one acre or less
- May require constant maintenance due to rotting
- Are not recommended for concentrated flow, inlet protection, channel flow, and live streams
- Cannot be made of bale bindings of jute or cotton
- Require labor-intensive installation and maintenance
- Cannot be used on paved surfaces
- Should not to be used for drain inlet protection
- Should not be used on lined ditches
- May introduce undesirable non-native plants to the area

Implementation

General

A straw bale barrier consists of a row of straw bales placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a straw bale barrier intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding provides quiescent conditions allowing sediment to settle. Straw bale barriers also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets, which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils.

Straw bale barriers have not been as effective as expected due to improper use. These barriers have been placed in streams and drainage ways where runoff volumes and velocities have caused the barriers to wash out. In addition, failure to stake and entrench the straw bale has allowed undercutting and end flow. Use of straw bale barriers in accordance with this BMP should produce acceptable results.

Design and Layout

- Locate straw bale barriers on a level contour.
  - Slopes up to 10:1 (H:V): Straw bales should be placed at a maximum interval of 50 ft (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the toe of slope.
  - Slopes greater than 10:1 (H:V): Not recommended.

- Turn the ends of the straw bale barrier up slope to prevent runoff from going around the barrier.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the barrier to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, consider moving the barrier away from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. To prevent flow behind the barrier, sand bags can be placed perpendicular to the barrier to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 1 acre, or 0.25 acre per 100 ft of barrier.
- Maximum flow path to the barrier should be limited to 100 ft.
- Straw bale barriers should consist of two parallel rows.
  - Butt ends of bales tightly
  - Stagger butt joints between front and back row
  - Each row of bales must be trenched in and firmly staked
- Straw bale barriers are limited in height to one bale laid on its side.
- Anchor bales with either two wood stakes or four bars driven through the bale and into the soil. Drive the first stake towards the butt joint with the adjacent bale to force the bales together.
- See attached figure for installation details.

Materials

- ***Straw Bale Size:*** Each straw bale should be a minimum of 14 in. wide, 18 in. in height, 36 in. in length and should have a minimum mass of 50 lbs. The straw bale should be composed entirely of vegetative matter, except for the binding material.
- ***Bale Bindings:*** Bales should be bound by steel wire, nylon or polypropylene string placed horizontally. Jute and cotton binding should not be used. Baling wire should be a minimum diameter of 14 gauge. Nylon or polypropylene string should be approximately 12 gauge in diameter with a breaking strength of 80 lbs force.
- ***Stakes:*** Wood stakes should be commercial quality lumber of the size and shape shown on the plans. Each stake should be free from decay, splits or cracks longer than the thickness of the stake, or other defects that would weaken the stakes and cause the stakes to be structurally unsuitable. Steel bar reinforcement should be equal to a #4 designation or greater. End protection should be provided for any exposed bar reinforcement.

Costs

Straw bales cost $5 - $7 each. Adequate labor should be budgeted for installation and maintenance.

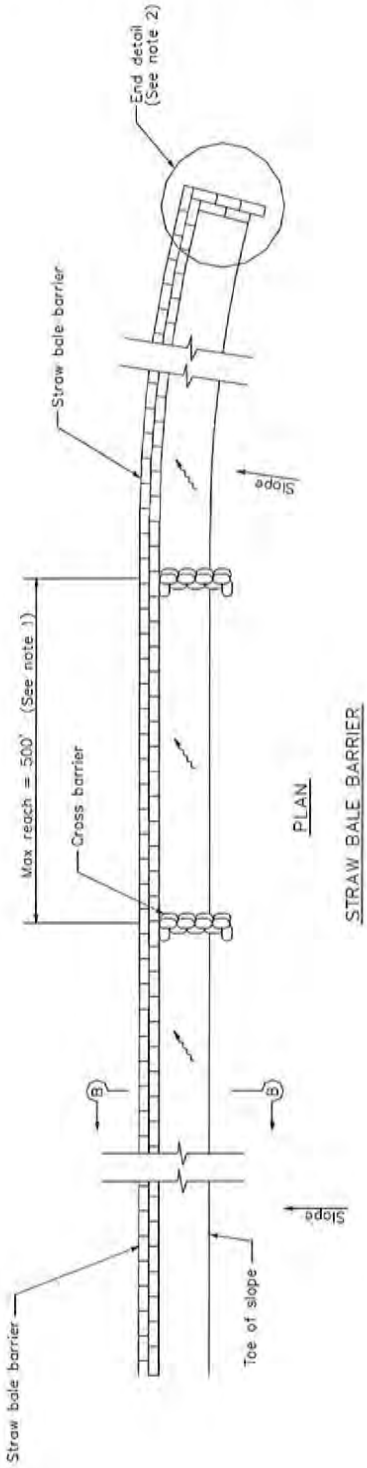
Inspection and Maintenance

Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Straw bales degrade, especially when exposed to moisture. Rotting bales will need to be replaced on a regular basis.
- Replace or repair damaged bales as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damages as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height. Sediment removed during maintenance may be incorporated into earthwork on the site or disposed at an appropriate location.
- Remove straw bales when no longer needed. Remove sediment accumulation, and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area. Removed sediment should be incorporated in the project or disposed of.

References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.



PLAN

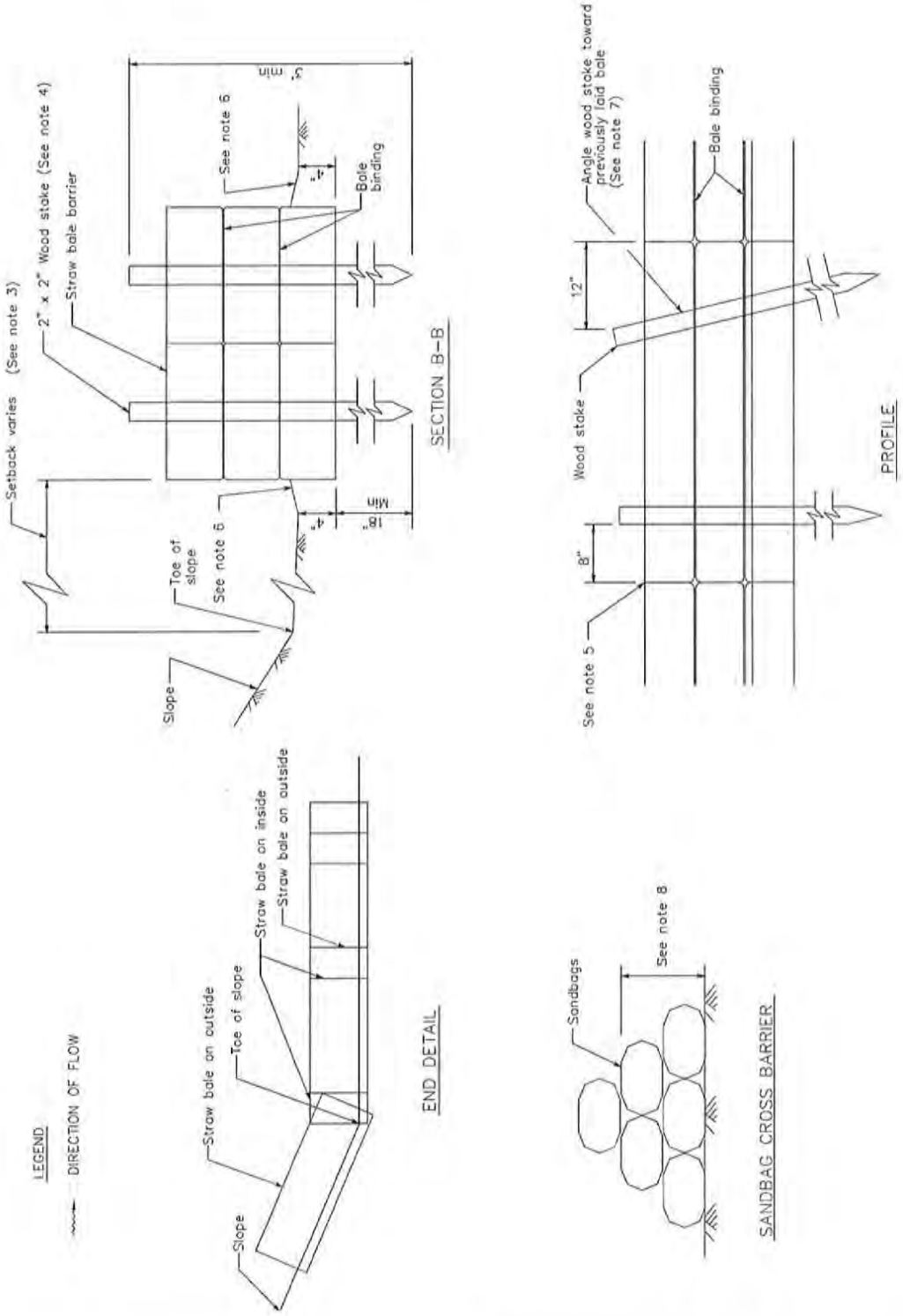
STRAW BALE BARRIER

LEGEND

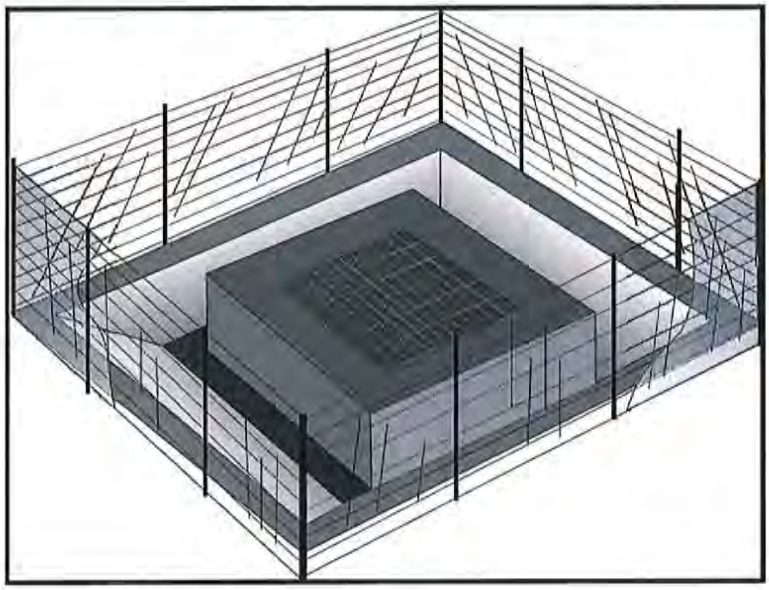
DIRECTION OF FLOW

NOTES

1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed 1/2 the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. The end of barrier shall be turned up slope.
3. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
4. Stake dimensions are nominal.
5. Place straw bales tightly together.
6. Tamp embedment spoils against sides of installed bales.
7. Drive angled wood stake before vertical stake to ensure tight abutment to adjacent bale.
8. Sandbag cross barriers should be a min of 1/2 and a max of 2/3 the height of the linear barrier.
9. Sandbag rows and layers should be offset to eliminate gaps.


Setback varies (See note 3)
2" x 2" Wood stake (See note 4)
Straw bale barrier
See note 6
Bale binding
4"
5' min
Toe of slope
See note 6
4"
18" Min
Slope
SECTION B-B
Angle wood stake toward previously laid bale (See note 7)
Bale binding
12"
Wood stake
8"
See note 5
PROFILE
LEGEND
DIRECTION OF FLOW
Straw bale on outside
Toe of slope
Straw bale on inside
Straw bale on outside
Slope
END DETAIL
Sandbags
See note 8
SANDBAG CROSS BARRIER

Storm Drain Inlet Protection SE-10



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☑
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	☒
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-1 Silt Fence

SE-5 Fiber Rolls

SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm

SE-8 Sandbag Barrier

SE-14 Biofilter Bags

SE-13 Compost Socks and Berms

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Storm drain inlet protection consists of a sediment filter or an impounding area in, around or upstream of a storm drain, drop inlet, or curb inlet. Storm drain inlet protection measures temporarily pond runoff before it enters the storm drain, allowing sediment to settle. Some filter configurations also remove sediment by filtering, but usually the ponding action results in the greatest sediment reduction. Temporary geotextile storm drain inserts attach underneath storm drain grates to capture and filter storm water.

Suitable Applications

- Every storm drain inlet receiving runoff from unstabilized or otherwise active work areas should be protected. Inlet protection should be used in conjunction with other erosion and sediment controls to prevent sediment-laden stormwater and non-stormwater discharges from entering the storm drain system.

Limitations

- Drainage area should not exceed 1 acre.
- In general straw bales should not be used as inlet protection.
- Requires an adequate area for water to pond without encroaching into portions of the roadway subject to traffic.
- Sediment removal may be inadequate to prevent sediment discharges in high flow conditions or if runoff is heavily sediment laden. If high flow conditions are expected, use

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

other onsite sediment trapping techniques in conjunction with inlet protection.

- Frequent maintenance is required.
- Limit drainage area to 1 acre maximum. For drainage areas larger than 1 acre, runoff should be routed to a sediment-trapping device designed for larger flows. See BMPs SE-2, Sediment Basin, and SE-3, Sediment Traps.
- Excavated drop inlet sediment traps are appropriate where relatively heavy flows are expected, and overflow capability is needed.

Implementation

General

Inlet control measures presented in this handbook should not be used for inlets draining more than one acre. Runoff from larger disturbed areas should be first routed through SE-2, Sediment Basin or SE-3, Sediment Trap and/or used in conjunction with other drainage control, erosion control, and sediment control BMPs to protect the site. Different types of inlet protection are appropriate for different applications depending on site conditions and the type of inlet. Alternative methods are available in addition to the methods described/shown herein such as prefabricated inlet insert devices, or gutter protection devices.

Design and Layout

Identify existing and planned storm drain inlets that have the potential to receive sediment-laden surface runoff. Determine if storm drain inlet protection is needed and which method to use.

- The key to successful and safe use of storm drain inlet protection devices is to know where runoff that is directed toward the inlet to be protected will pond or be diverted as a result of installing the protection device.
  - Determine the acceptable location and extent of ponding in the vicinity of the drain inlet. The acceptable location and extent of ponding will influence the type and design of the storm drain inlet protection device.
  - Determine the extent of potential runoff diversion caused by the storm drain inlet protection device. Runoff ponded by inlet protection devices may flow around the device and towards the next downstream inlet. In some cases, this is acceptable; in other cases, serious erosion or downstream property damage can be caused by these diversions. The possibility of runoff diversions will influence whether or not storm drain inlet protection is suitable; and, if suitable, the type and design of the device.
- The location and extent of ponding, and the extent of diversion, can usually be controlled through appropriate placement of the inlet protection device. In some cases, moving the inlet protection device a short distance upstream of the actual inlet can provide more efficient sediment control, limit ponding to desired areas, and prevent or control diversions.
- Seven types of inlet protection are presented below. However, it is recognized that other effective methods and proprietary devices exist and may be selected.

- Silt Fence: Appropriate for drainage basins with less than a 5% slope, sheet flows, and flows under 0.5 cfs.
- Excavated Drop Inlet Sediment Trap: An excavated area around the inlet to trap sediment (SE-3).
- Gravel bag barrier: Used to create a small sediment trap upstream of inlets on sloped, paved streets. Appropriate for sheet flow or when concentrated flow may exceed 0.5 cfs, and where overtopping is required to prevent flooding.
- Block and Gravel Filter: Appropriate for flows greater than 0.5 cfs.
- Temporary Geotextile Storm drain Inserts: Different products provide different features. Refer to manufacturer details for targeted pollutants and additional features.
- Biofilter Bag Barrier: Used to create a small retention area upstream of inlets and can be located on pavement or soil. Biofilter bags slowly filter runoff allowing sediment to settle out. Appropriate for flows under 0.5 cfs.
- Compost Socks: Allow filtered run-off to pass through the compost while retaining sediment and potentially other pollutants (SE-13). Appropriate for flows under 1.0 cfs.

- Select the appropriate type of inlet protection and design as referred to or as described in this fact sheet.
- Provide area around the inlet for water to pond without flooding structures and property.
- Grates and spaces around all inlets should be sealed to prevent seepage of sediment-laden water.
- Excavate sediment sumps (where needed) 1 to 2 ft with 2:1 side slopes around the inlet.

Installation

- ***DI Protection Type 1 - Silt Fence*** - Similar to constructing a silt fence; see BMP SE-1, Silt Fence. Do not place fabric underneath the inlet grate since the collected sediment may fall into the drain inlet when the fabric is removed or replaced and water flow through the grate will be blocked resulting in flooding. See typical Type 1 installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

  1. Excavate a trench approximately 6 in. wide and 6 in. deep along the line of the silt fence inlet protection device.
  2. Place 2 in. by 2 in. wooden stakes around the perimeter of the inlet a maximum of 3 ft apart and drive them at least 18 in. into the ground or 12 in. below the bottom of the trench. The stakes should be at least 48 in.
  3. Lay fabric along bottom of trench, up side of trench, and then up stakes. See SE-1, Silt Fence, for details. The maximum silt fence height around the inlet is 24 in.
  4. Staple the filter fabric (for materials and specifications, see SE-1, Silt Fence) to wooden stakes. Use heavy-duty wire staples at least 1 in. in length.

5. Backfill the trench with gravel or compacted earth all the way around.

- ***DI Protection Type 2 - Excavated Drop Inlet Sediment Trap*** - Install filter fabric fence in accordance with DI Protection Type 1. Size excavated trap to provide a minimum storage capacity calculated at the rate 67 yd^3/acre of drainage area. See typical Type 2 installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

- ***DI Protection Type 3 - Gravel bag*** - Flow from a severe storm should not overtop the curb. In areas of high clay and silts, use filter fabric and gravel as additional filter media. Construct gravel bags in accordance with SE-6, Gravel Bag Berm. Gravel bags should be used due to their high permeability. See typical Type 3 installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

  1. Construct on gently sloping street.
  2. Leave room upstream of barrier for water to pond and sediment to settle.
  3. Place several layers of gravel bags – overlapping the bags and packing them tightly together.
  4. Leave gap of one bag on the top row to serve as a spillway. Flow from a severe storm (e.g., 10 year storm) should not overtop the curb.

- ***DI Protection Type 4 – Block and Gravel Filter*** - Block and gravel filters are suitable for curb inlets commonly used in residential, commercial, and industrial construction. See typical Type 4 installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

  1. Place hardware cloth or comparable wire mesh with 0.5 in. openings over the drop inlet so that the wire extends a minimum of 1 ft beyond each side of the inlet structure. If more than one strip is necessary, overlap the strips. Place woven geotextile over the wire mesh.
  2. Place concrete blocks lengthwise on their sides in a single row around the perimeter of the inlet, so that the open ends face outward, not upward. The ends of adjacent blocks should abut. The height of the barrier can be varied, depending on design needs, by stacking combinations of blocks that are 4 in., 8 in., and 12 in. wide. The row of blocks should be at least 12 in. but no greater than 24 in. high.
  3. Place wire mesh over the outside vertical face (open end) of the concrete blocks to prevent stone from being washed through the blocks. Use hardware cloth or comparable wire mesh with 0.5 in. opening.
  4. Pile washed stone against the wire mesh to the top of the blocks. Use 0.75 to 3 in.

- ***DI Protection Type 5 – Temporary Geotextile Insert (proprietary)*** – Many types of temporary inserts are available. Most inserts fit underneath the grate of a drop inlet or inside of a curb inlet and are fastened to the outside of the grate or curb. These inserts are removable and many can be cleaned and reused. Installation of these inserts differs between manufacturers. Please refer to manufacturer instruction for installation of proprietary devices.

- ***DI Protection Type 6 - Biofilter bags*** – Biofilter bags may be used as a substitute for gravel bags in low-flow situations. Biofilter bags should conform to specifications detailed in SE-14, Biofilter bags.

  1. Construct in a gently sloping area.
  2. Biofilter bags should be placed around inlets to intercept runoff flows.
  3. All bag joints should overlap by 6 in.
  4. Leave room upstream for water to pond and for sediment to settle out.
  5. Stake bags to the ground as described in the following detail. Stakes may be omitted if bags are placed on a paved surface.

- ***DI Protection Type 7 – Compost Socks*** – A compost sock can be assembled on site by filling a mesh sock (e.g., with a pneumatic blower). Compost socks do not require special trenching compared to other sediment control methods (e.g., silt fence). Compost socks should conform to specification detailed in SE-13, Compost Socks and Berms.

Costs

- Average annual cost for installation and maintenance of DI Type 1-4 and 6 (one year useful life) is $200 per inlet.
- Temporary geotextile inserts are proprietary and cost varies by region. These inserts can often be reused and may have greater than 1 year of use if maintained and kept undamaged. Average cost per insert ranges from $50-75 plus installation, but costs can exceed $100. This cost does not include maintenance.
- See SE-13 for Compost Sock cost information.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Silt Fences. If the fabric becomes clogged, torn, or degrades, it should be replaced. Make sure the stakes are securely driven in the ground and are in good shape (i.e., not bent, cracked, or splintered, and are reasonably perpendicular to the ground). Replace damaged stakes. At a minimum, remove the sediment behind the fabric fence when accumulation reaches one-third the height of the fence or barrier height.
- Gravel Filters. If the gravel becomes clogged with sediment, it should be carefully removed from the inlet and either cleaned or replaced. Since cleaning gravel at a construction site may be difficult, consider using the sediment-laden stone as fill material and put fresh stone around the inlet. Inspect bags for holes, gashes, and snags, and replace bags as needed. Check gravel bags for proper arrangement and displacement.

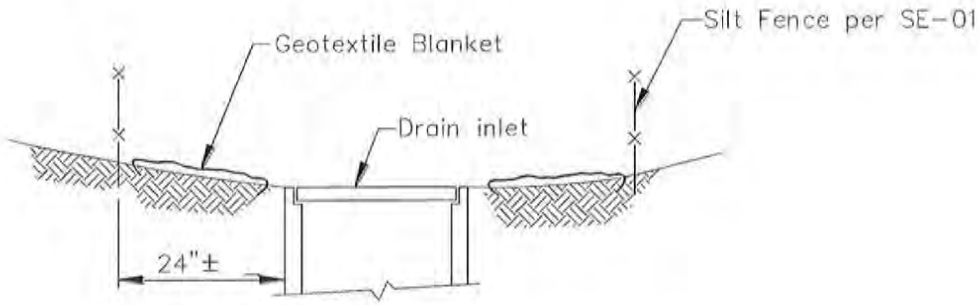
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.
- Inspect and maintain temporary geotextile insert devices according to manufacturer's specifications.
- Remove storm drain inlet protection once the drainage area is stabilized.
  - Clean and regrade area around the inlet and clean the inside of the storm drain inlet, as it should be free of sediment and debris at the time of final inspection.

References

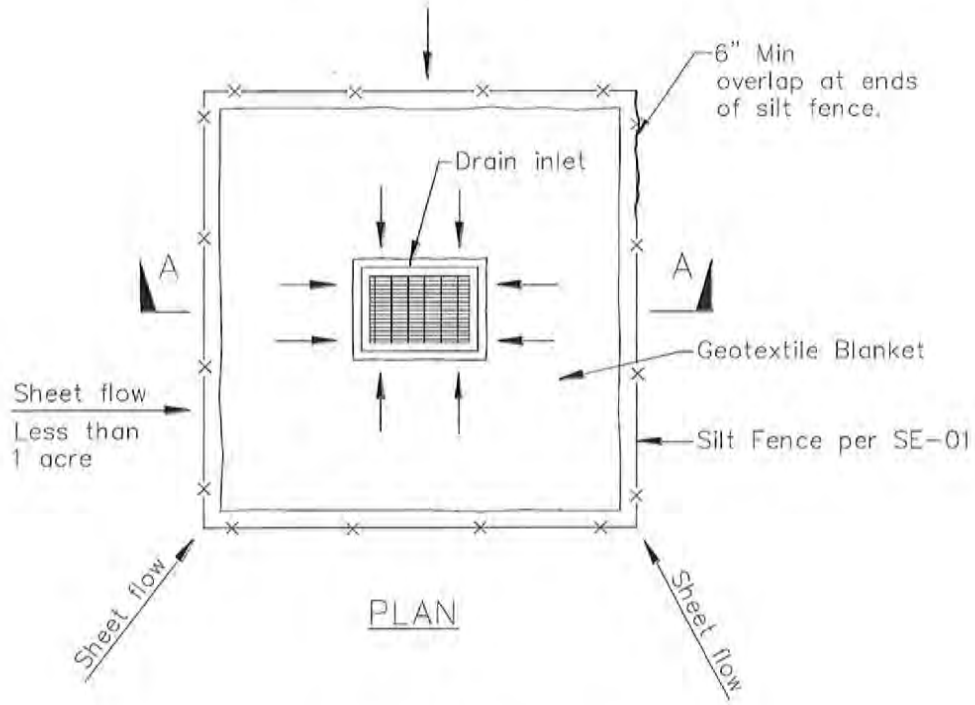
Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management Manual for The Puget Sound Basin, Washington State Department of Ecology, Public Review Draft, 1991.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.



SECTION A–A

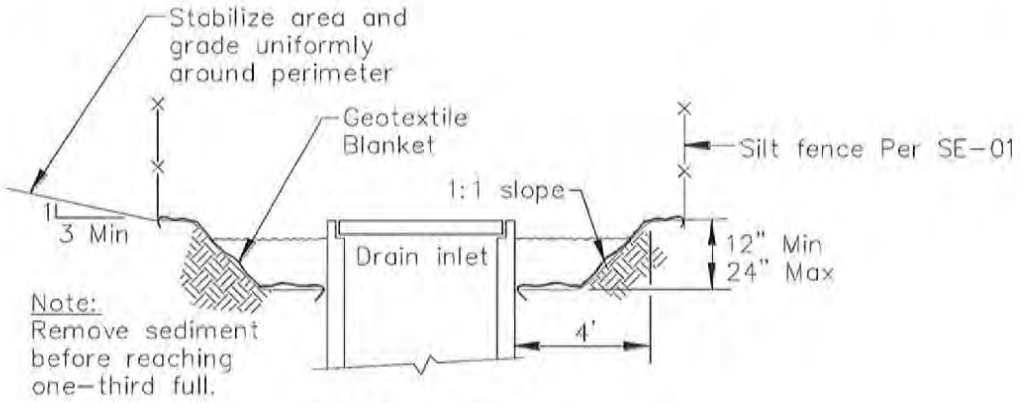


PLAN

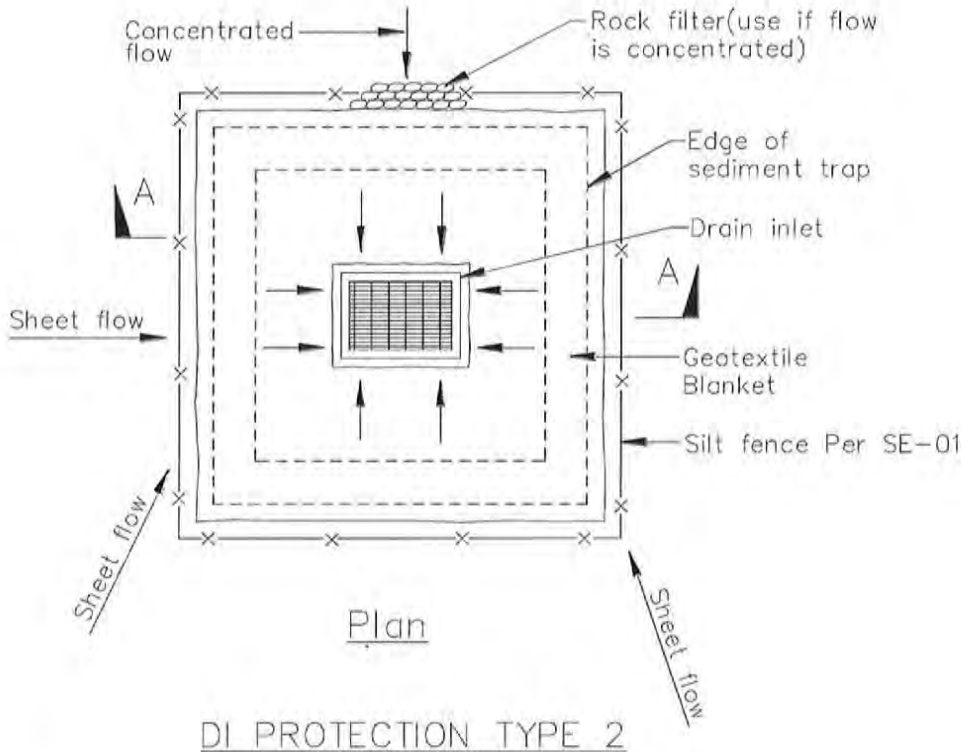
DI PROTECTION TYPE 1
NOT TO SCALE

NOTES:

1. For use in areas where grading has been completed and final soil stabilization and seeding are pending.
2. Not applicable in paved areas.
3. Not applicable with concentrated flows.



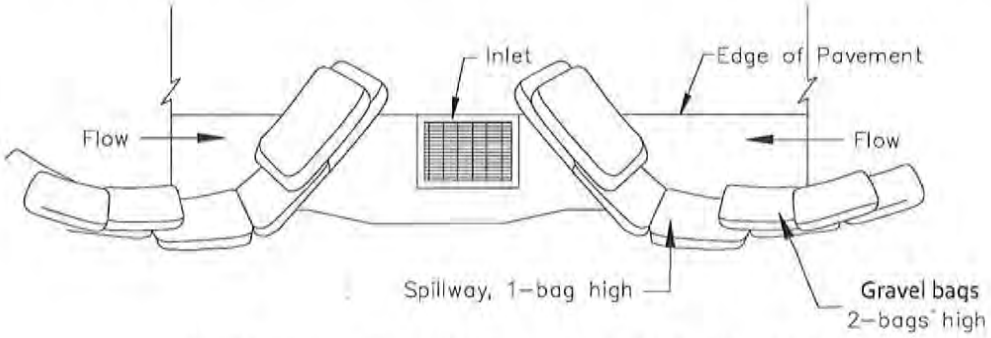
Section A–A



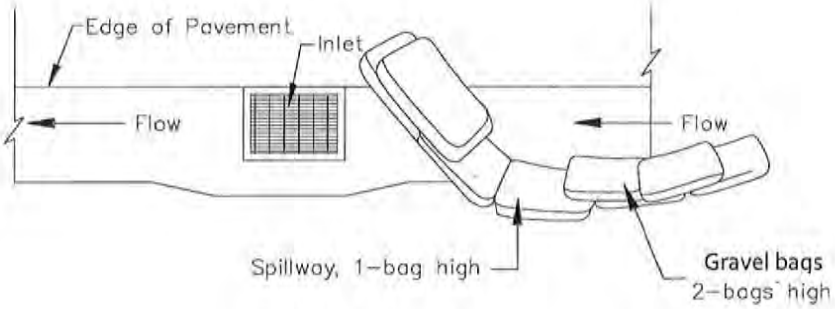
Plan

DI PROTECTION TYPE 2
NOT TO SCALE

Notes
1. For use in cleared and grubbed and in graded areas.
2. Shape basin so that longest inflow area faces longest length of trap.
3. For concentrated flows, shape basin in 2:1 ratio with length oriented towards direction of flow.



TYPICAL PROTECTION FOR INLET ON SUMP

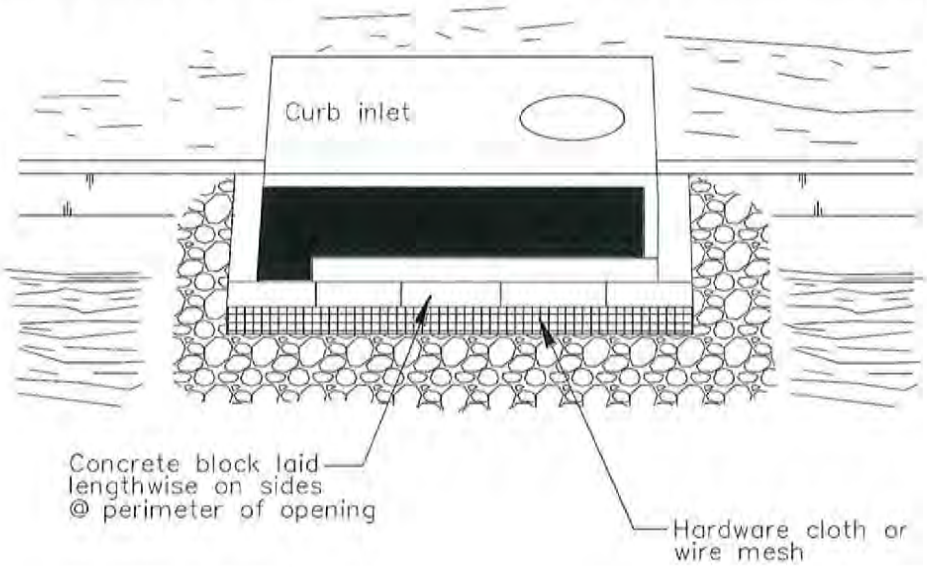


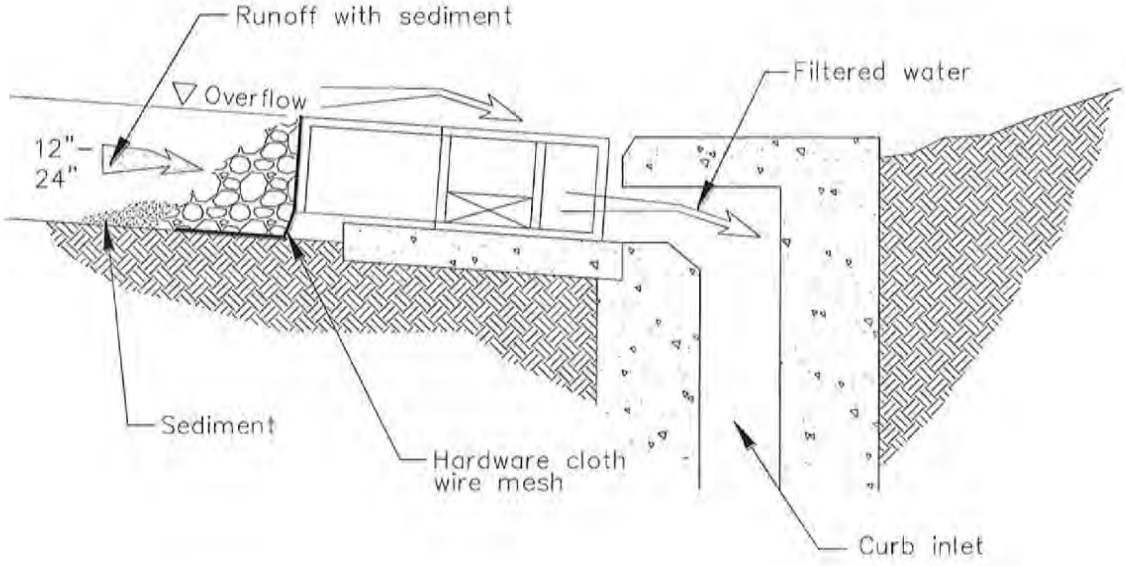
TYPICAL PROTECTION FOR INLET ON GRADE

NOTES:

1. Intended for short-term use.
2. Use to inhibit non-storm water flow.
3. Allow for proper maintenance and cleanup.
4. Bags must be removed after adjacent operation is completed
5. Not applicable in areas with high silts and clays without filter fabric.
6. **Protection can be effective even if it is not immediately adjacent to the inlet provided that the inlet is protected from potential sources of pollution.**

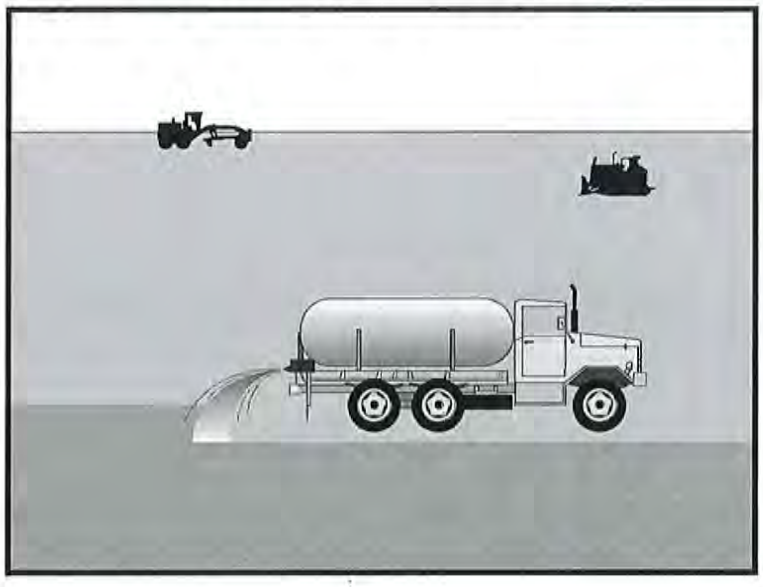
DI PROTECTION TYPE 3
NOT TO SCALE





DI PROTECTION – TYPE 4
NOT TO SCALE

Wind Erosion Control WE-1



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	☑
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

EC-5 Soil Binders

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Wind erosion or dust control consists of applying water or other chemical dust suppressants as necessary to prevent or alleviate dust nuisance generated by construction activities. Covering small stockpiles or areas is an alternative to applying water or other dust palliatives.

California's Mediterranean climate, with a short "wet" season and a typically long, hot "dry" season, allows the soils to thoroughly dry out. During the dry season, construction activities are at their peak, and disturbed and exposed areas are increasingly subject to wind erosion, sediment tracking and dust generated by construction equipment. Site conditions and climate can make dust control more of an erosion problem than water based erosion. Additionally, many local agencies, including Air Quality Management Districts, require dust control and/or dust control permits in order to comply with local nuisance laws, opacity laws (visibility impairment) and the requirements of the Clean Air Act. Wind erosion control is required to be implemented at all construction sites greater than 1 acre by the General Permit.

Suitable Applications

Most BMPs that provide protection against water-based erosion will also protect against wind-based erosion and dust control requirements required by other agencies will generally meet wind erosion control requirements for water quality protection. Wind erosion control BMPs are suitable during the following construction activities:

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Construction vehicle traffic on unpaved roads
- Drilling and blasting activities
- Soils and debris storage piles
- Batch drop from front-end loaders
- Areas with unstabilized soil
- Final grading/site stabilization

Limitations

- Watering prevents dust only for a short period (generally less than a few hours) and should be applied daily (or more often) to be effective.
- Over watering may cause erosion and track-out.
- Oil or oil-treated subgrade should not be used for dust control because the oil may migrate into drainageways and/or seep into the soil.
- Chemical dust suppression agents may have potential environmental impacts. Selected chemical dust control agents should be environmentally benign.
- Effectiveness of controls depends on soil, temperature, humidity, wind velocity and traffic.
- Chemical dust suppression agents should not be used within 100 feet of wetlands or water bodies.
- Chemically treated subgrades may make the soil water repellant, interfering with long-term infiltration and the vegetation/re-vegetation of the site. Some chemical dust suppressants may be subject to freezing and may contain solvents and should be handled properly.
- In compacted areas, watering and other liquid dust control measures may wash sediment or other constituents into the drainage system.
- If the soil surface has minimal natural moisture, the affected area may need to be pre-wetted so that chemical dust control agents can uniformly penetrate the soil surface.

Implementation

Dust Control Practices

Dust control BMPs generally stabilize exposed surfaces and minimize activities that suspend or track dust particles. The following table presents dust control practices that can be applied to varying site conditions that could potentially cause dust. For heavily traveled and disturbed areas, wet suppression (watering), chemical dust suppression, gravel asphalt surfacing, temporary gravel construction entrances, equipment wash-out areas, and haul truck covers can be employed as dust control applications. Permanent or temporary vegetation and mulching can be employed for areas of occasional or no construction traffic. Preventive measures include minimizing surface areas to be disturbed, limiting onsite vehicle traffic to 15 mph or less, and controlling the number and activity of vehicles on a site at any given time.

Chemical dust suppressants include: mulch and fiber based dust palliatives (e.g. paper mulch with gypsum binder), salts and brines (e.g. calcium chloride, magnesium chloride), non-petroleum based organics (e.g. vegetable oil, lignosulfonate), petroleum based organics (e.g. asphalt emulsion, dust oils, petroleum resins), synthetic polymers (e.g. polyvinyl acetate, vinyls, acrylic), clay additives (e.g. bentonite, montimorillonite) and electrochemical products (e.g. enzymes, ionic products).

Site Condition	Dust Control Practices							
	Permanent Vegetation	Mulching	Wet Suppression (Watering)	Chemical Dust Suppression	Gravel or Asphalt	Temporary Gravel Construction Entrances/Equipment Wash Down	Synthetic Covers	Minimize Extent of Disturbed Area
Disturbed Areas not Subject to Traffic	X	X	X	X	X			X
Disturbed Areas Subject to Traffic			X	X	X	X		X
Material Stockpiles		X	X	X			X	X
Demolition			X			X	X	
Clearing/ Excavation			X	X				X
Truck Traffic on Unpaved Roads			X	X	X	X	X	
Tracking					X	X		

Additional preventive measures include:

- Schedule construction activities to minimize exposed area (see EC-1, Scheduling).
- Quickly treat exposed soils using water, mulching, chemical dust suppressants, or stone/gravel layering.
- Identify and stabilize key access points prior to commencement of construction.
- Minimize the impact of dust by anticipating the direction of prevailing winds.
- Restrict construction traffic to stabilized roadways within the project site, as practicable.
- Water should be applied by means of pressure-type distributors or pipelines equipped with a spray system or hoses and nozzles that will ensure even distribution.
- All distribution equipment should be equipped with a positive means of shutoff.
- Unless water is applied by means of pipelines, at least one mobile unit should be available at all times to apply water or dust palliative to the project.
- If reclaimed waste water is used, the sources and discharge must meet California Department of Health Services water reclamation criteria and the Regional Water Quality

Control Board (RWQCB) requirements. Non-potable water should not be conveyed in tanks or drain pipes that will be used to convey potable water and there should be no connection between potable and non-potable supplies. Non-potable tanks, pipes, and other conveyances should be marked, "NON-POTABLE WATER - DO NOT DRINK."

- Pave or chemically stabilize access points where unpaved traffic surfaces adjoin paved roads.
- Provide covers for haul trucks transporting materials that contribute to dust.
- Provide for rapid clean up of sediments deposited on paved roads. Furnish stabilized construction road entrances and wheel wash areas.
- Stabilize inactive areas of construction sites using temporary vegetation or chemical stabilization methods.

For chemical stabilization, there are many products available for chemically stabilizing gravel roadways and stockpiles. If chemical stabilization is used, the chemicals should not create any adverse effects on stormwater, plant life, or groundwater and should meet all applicable regulatory requirements.

Costs

Installation costs for water and chemical dust suppression vary based on the method used and the length of effectiveness. Annual costs may be high since some of these measures are effective for only a few hours to a few days.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities.
- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Check areas protected to ensure coverage.
- Most water-based dust control measures require frequent application, often daily or even multiple times per day. Obtain vendor or independent information on longevity of chemical dust suppressants.

References

Best Management Practices and Erosion Control Manual for Construction Sites, Flood Control District of Maricopa County, Arizona, September 1992.

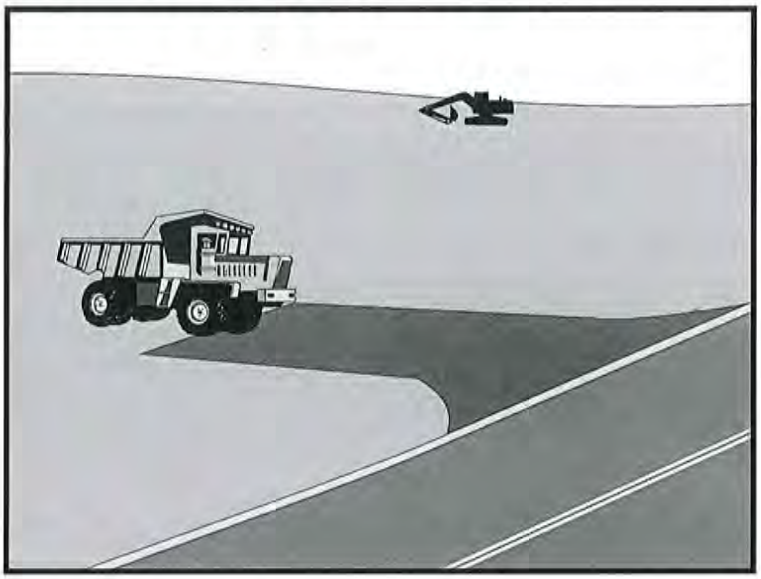
California Air Pollution Control Laws, California Air Resources Board, updated annually.

Construction Manual, Chapter 4, Section 10, "Dust Control"; Section 17, "Watering"; and Section 18, "Dust Palliative", California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2001.

Prospects for Attaining the State Ambient Air Quality Standards for Suspended Particulate Matter (PM10), Visibility Reducing Particles, Sulfates, Lead, and Hydrogen Sulfide, California Air Resources Board, April 1991.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	☑
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A stabilized construction access is defined by a point of entrance/exit to a construction site that is stabilized to reduce the tracking of mud and dirt onto public roads by construction vehicles.

Suitable Applications

Use at construction sites:

- Where dirt or mud can be tracked onto public roads.
- Adjacent to water bodies.
- Where poor soils are encountered.
- Where dust is a problem during dry weather conditions.

Limitations

- Entrances and exits require periodic top dressing with additional stones.
- This BMP should be used in conjunction with street sweeping on adjacent public right of way.
- Entrances and exits should be constructed on level ground only.
- Stabilized construction entrances are rather expensive to construct and when a wash rack is included, a sediment trap of some kind must also be provided to collect wash water runoff.

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

Implementation

General

A stabilized construction entrance is a pad of aggregate underlain with filter cloth located at any point where traffic will be entering or leaving a construction site to or from a public right of way, street, alley, sidewalk, or parking area. The purpose of a stabilized construction entrance is to reduce or eliminate the tracking of sediment onto public rights of way or streets. Reducing tracking of sediments and other pollutants onto paved roads helps prevent deposition of sediments into local storm drains and production of airborne dust.

Where traffic will be entering or leaving the construction site, a stabilized construction entrance should be used. NPDES permits require that appropriate measures be implemented to prevent tracking of sediments onto paved roadways, where a significant source of sediments is derived from mud and dirt carried out from unpaved roads and construction sites.

Stabilized construction entrances are moderately effective in removing sediment from equipment leaving a construction site. The entrance should be built on level ground. Advantages of the Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit is that it does remove some sediment from equipment and serves to channel construction traffic in and out of the site at specified locations. Efficiency is greatly increased when a washing rack is included as part of a stabilized construction entrance/exit.

Design and Layout

- Construct on level ground where possible.
- Select 3 to 6 in. diameter stones.
- Use minimum depth of stones of 12 in. or as recommended by soils engineer.
- Construct length of 50 ft or maximum site will allow, and 10 ft minimum width or to accommodate traffic.
- Rumble racks constructed of steel panels with ridges and installed in the stabilized entrance/exit will help remove additional sediment and to keep adjacent streets clean.
- Provide ample turning radii as part of the entrance.
- Limit the points of entrance/exit to the construction site.
- Limit speed of vehicles to control dust.
- Properly grade each construction entrance/exit to prevent runoff from leaving the construction site.
- Route runoff from stabilized entrances/exits through a sediment trapping device before discharge.
- Design stabilized entrance/exit to support heaviest vehicles and equipment that will use it.

- Select construction access stabilization (aggregate, asphaltic concrete, concrete) based on longevity, required performance, and site conditions. Do not use asphalt concrete (AC) grindings for stabilized construction access/roadway.
- If aggregate is selected, place crushed aggregate over geotextile fabric to at least 12 in. depth, or place aggregate to a depth recommended by a geotechnical engineer. A crushed aggregate greater than 3 in. but smaller than 6 in. should be used.
- Designate combination or single purpose entrances and exits to the construction site.
- Require that all employees, subcontractors, and suppliers utilize the stabilized construction access.
- Implement SE-7, Street Sweeping and Vacuuming, as needed.
- All exit locations intended to be used for more than a two-week period should have stabilized construction entrance/exit BMPs.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity–based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMPs are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect local roads adjacent to the site daily. Sweep or vacuum to remove visible accumulated sediment.
- Remove aggregate, separate and dispose of sediment if construction entrance/exit is clogged with sediment.
- Keep all temporary roadway ditches clear.
- Check for damage and repair as needed.
- Replace gravel material when surface voids are visible.
- Remove all sediment deposited on paved roadways within 24 hours.
- Remove gravel and filter fabric at completion of construction

Costs

Average annual cost for installation and maintenance may vary from $1,200 to $4,800 each, averaging $2,400 per entrance. Costs will increase with addition of washing rack, and sediment trap. With wash rack, costs range from $1,200 - $6,000 each, averaging $3,600 per entrance.

References

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, USEPA Agency, 2002.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

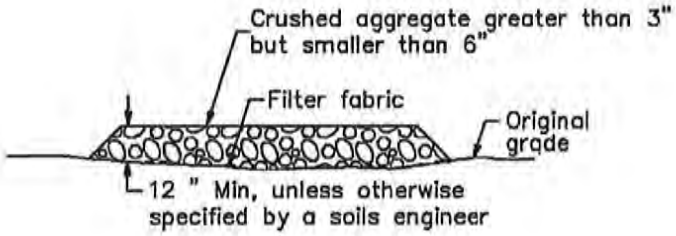
Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Virginia Erosion and Sedimentation Control Handbook, Virginia Department of Conservation and Recreation, Division of Soil and Water Conservation, 1991.

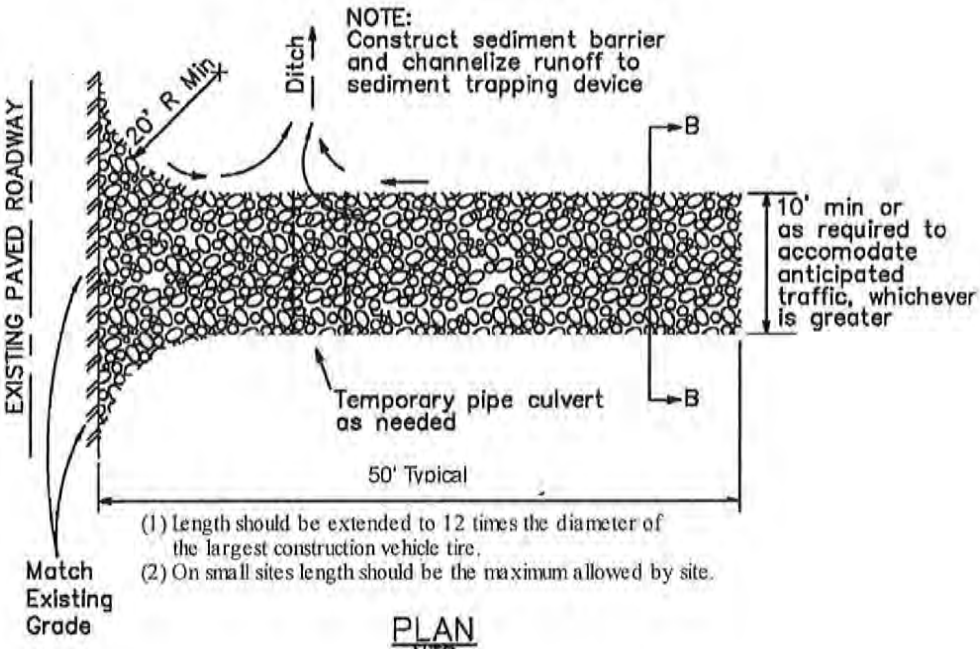
Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, EPA 840-B-9-002, USEPA, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1993.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1

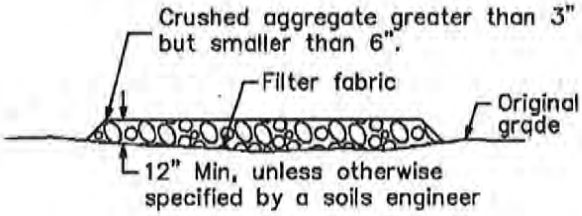


SECTION B–B
NTS

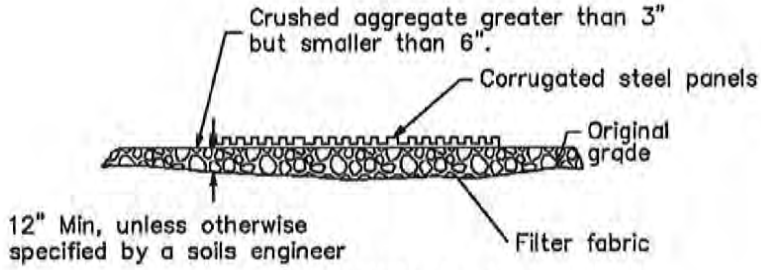


PLAN
NTS

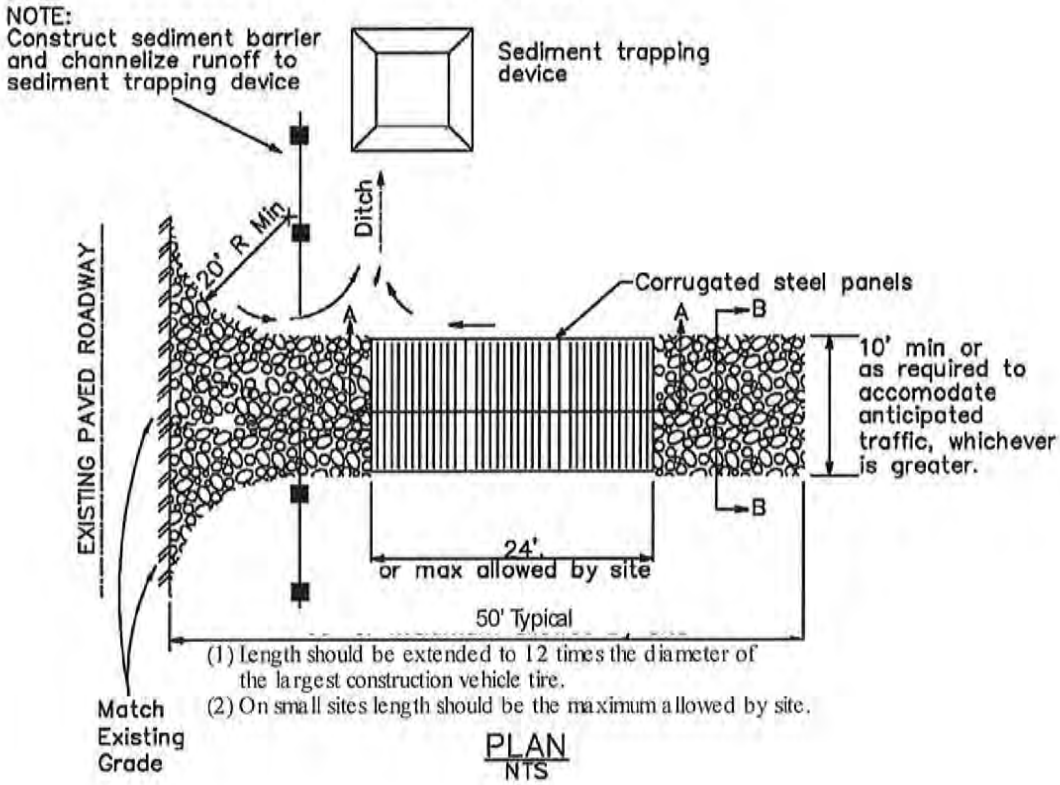
Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1



SECTION B–B
NTS



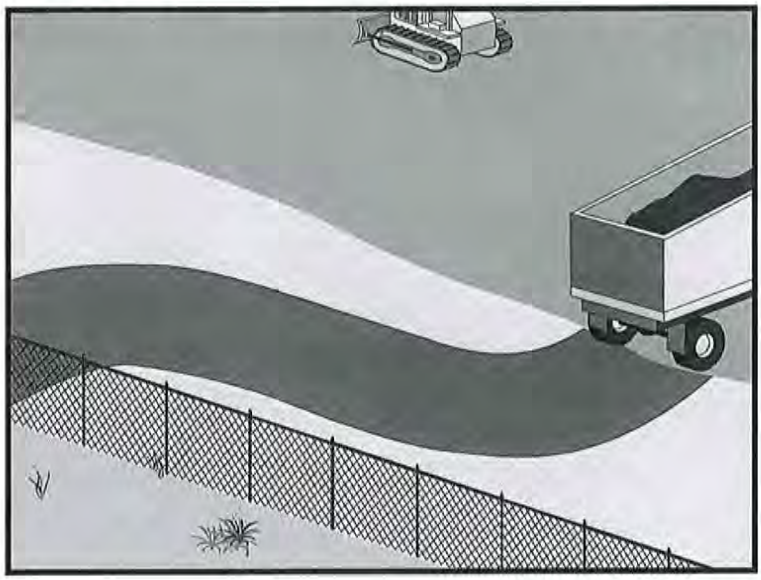
SECTION A–A
NOT TO SCALE



(1) Length should be extended to 12 times the diameter of the largest construction vehicle tire.
(2) On small sites length should be the maximum allowed by site.

PLAN
NTS

Stabilized Construction Roadway TC-2



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	☒
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	☑
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Access roads, subdivision roads, parking areas, and other onsite vehicle transportation routes should be stabilized immediately after grading, and frequently maintained to prevent erosion and control dust.

Suitable Applications

This BMP should be applied for the following conditions:

- Temporary Construction Traffic:
  - Phased construction projects and offsite road access
  - Construction during wet weather
- Construction roadways and detour roads:
  - Where mud tracking is a problem during wet weather
  - Where dust is a problem during dry weather
  - Adjacent to water bodies
  - Where poor soils are encountered

Limitations

- The roadway must be removed or paved when construction is complete.

- Certain chemical stabilization methods may cause stormwater or soil pollution and should not be used. See WE-1, Wind Erosion Control.
- Management of construction traffic is subject to air quality control measures. Contact the local air quality management agency.
- Materials will likely need to be removed prior to final project grading and stabilization.
- Use of this BMP may not be applicable to very short duration projects.

Implementation

General

Areas that are graded for construction vehicle transport and parking purposes are especially susceptible to erosion and dust. The exposed soil surface is continually disturbed, leaving no opportunity for vegetative stabilization. Such areas also tend to collect and transport runoff waters along their surfaces. During wet weather, they often become muddy quagmires that generate significant quantities of sediment that may pollute nearby streams or be transported offsite on the wheels of construction vehicles. Dirt roads can become so unstable during wet weather that they are virtually unusable.

Efficient construction road stabilization not only reduces onsite erosion but also can significantly speed onsite work, avoid instances of immobilized machinery and delivery vehicles, and generally improve site efficiency and working conditions during adverse weather

Installation/Application Criteria

Permanent roads and parking areas should be paved as soon as possible after grading. As an alternative where construction will be phased, the early application of gravel or chemical stabilization may solve potential erosion and stability problems. Temporary gravel roadway should be considered during the rainy season and on slopes greater than 5%.

Temporary roads should follow the contour of the natural terrain to the maximum extent possible. Slope should not exceed 15%. Roadways should be carefully graded to drain transversely. Provide drainage swales on each side of the roadway in the case of a crowned section or one side in the case of a super elevated section. Simple gravel berms without a trench can also be used.

Installed inlets should be protected to prevent sediment laden water from entering the storm sewer system (SE-10, Storm Drain Inlet Protection). In addition, the following criteria should be considered.

- Road should follow topographic contours to reduce erosion of the roadway.
- The roadway slope should not exceed 15%.
- Chemical stabilizers or water are usually required on gravel or dirt roads to prevent dust (WE-1, Wind Erosion Control).
- Properly grade roadway to prevent runoff from leaving the construction site.
- Design stabilized access to support heaviest vehicles and equipment that will use it.

- Stabilize roadway using aggregate, asphalt concrete, or concrete based on longevity, required performance, and site conditions. The use of cold mix asphalt or asphalt concrete (AC) grindings for stabilized construction roadway is not allowed.
- Coordinate materials with those used for stabilized construction entrance/exit points.
- If aggregate is selected, place crushed aggregate over geotextile fabric to at least 12 in. depth. A crushed aggregate greater than 3 in. but smaller than 6 in. should be used.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity–based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Keep all temporary roadway ditches clear.
- When no longer required, remove stabilized construction roadway and re-grade and repair slopes.
- Periodically apply additional aggregate on gravel roads.
- Active dirt construction roads are commonly watered three or more times per day during the dry season.

Costs

Gravel construction roads are moderately expensive, but cost is often balanced by reductions in construction delay. No additional costs for dust control on construction roads should be required above that needed to meet local air quality requirements.

References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program; Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group, Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

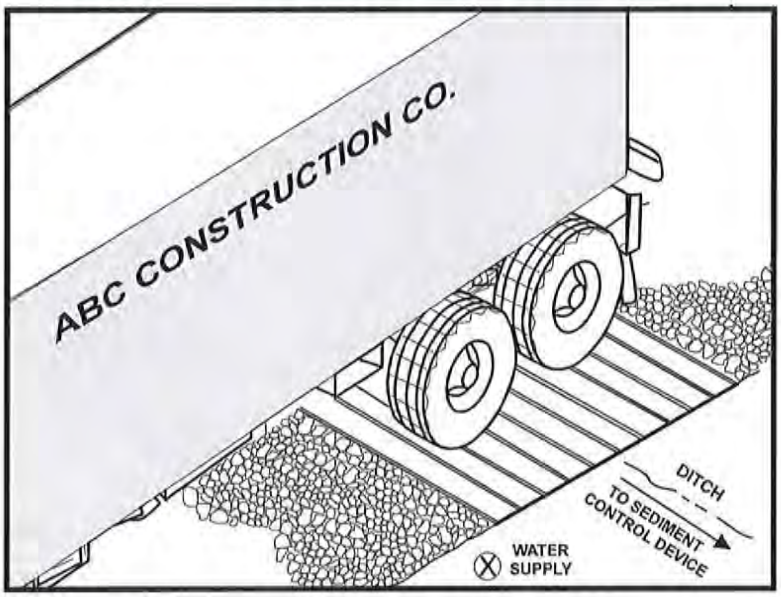
Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Virginia Erosion and Sedimentation Control Handbook, Virginia Department of Conservation and Recreation, Division of Soil and Water Conservation, 1991.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Entrance/Outlet Tire Wash TC-3



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	☑
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

TC-1 Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

A tire wash is an area located at stabilized construction access points to remove sediment from tires and under carriages and to prevent sediment from being transported onto public roadways.

Suitable Applications

Tire washes may be used on construction sites where dirt and mud tracking onto public roads by construction vehicles may occur.

Limitations

- The tire wash requires a supply of wash water.
- A turnout or doublewide exit is required to avoid having entering vehicles drive through the wash area.
- Do not use where wet tire trucks leaving the site leave the road dangerously slick.

Implementation

- Incorporate with a stabilized construction entrance/exit. See TC-1, Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit.
- Construct on level ground when possible, on a pad of coarse aggregate greater than 3 in. but smaller than 6 in. A geotextile fabric should be placed below the aggregate.
- Wash rack should be designed and constructed/manufactured for anticipated traffic loads.

- Provide a drainage ditch that will convey the runoff from the wash area to a sediment trapping device. The drainage ditch should be of sufficient grade, width, and depth to carry the wash runoff.
- Use hoses with automatic shutoff nozzles to prevent hoses from being left on.
- Require that all employees, subcontractors, and others that leave the site with mud caked tires and undercarriages to use the wash facility.
- Implement SC-7, Street Sweeping and Vacuuming, as needed.

Costs

Costs are low for installation of wash rack.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity–based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharge daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.
- Remove accumulated sediment in wash rack and/or sediment trap to maintain system performance.
- Inspect routinely for damage and repair as needed.

References

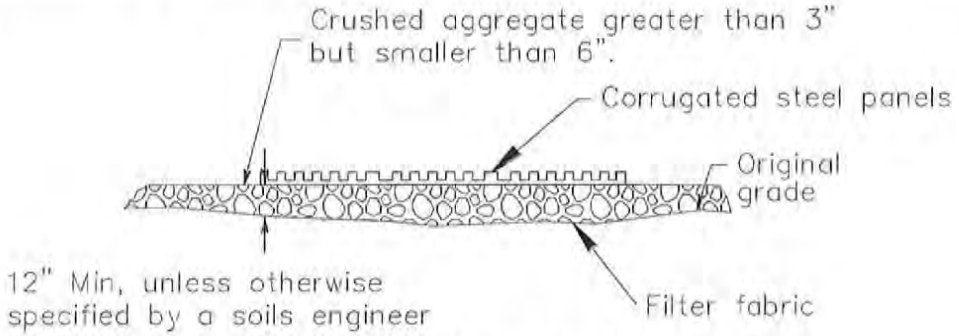
Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program; Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group, Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

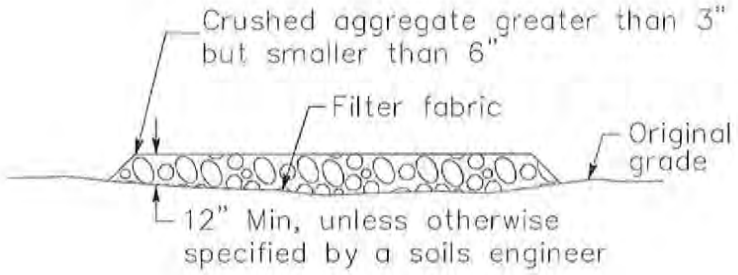
Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

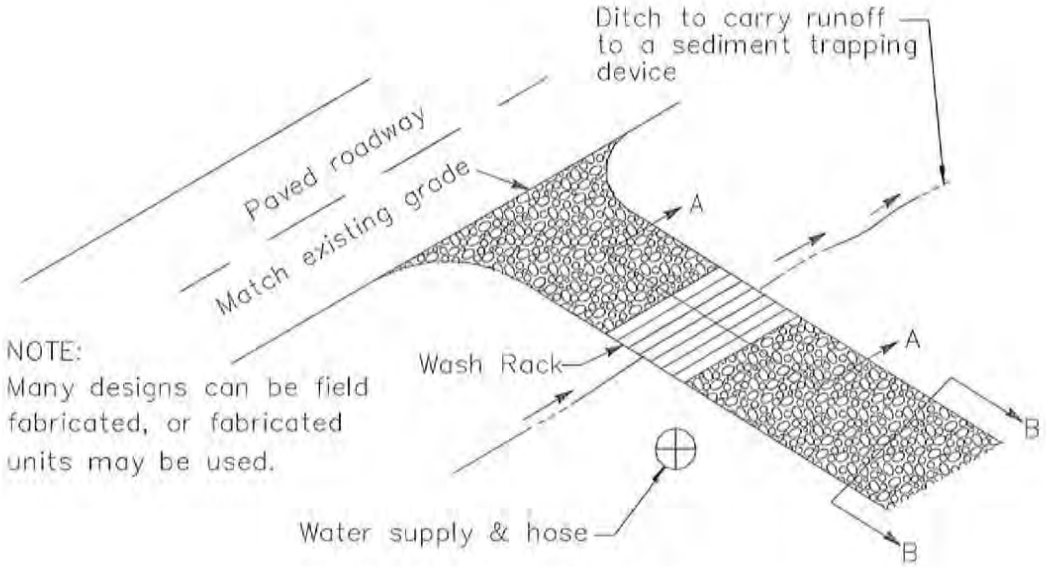
Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.



SECTION A–A
NOT TO SCALE

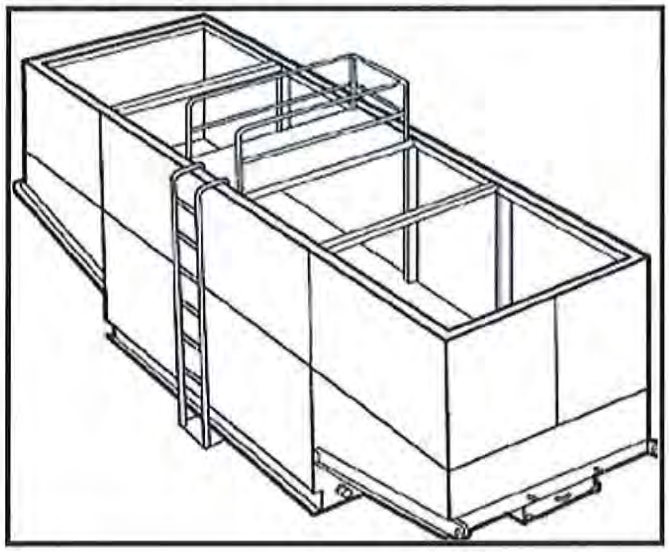


SECTION B–B
NTS



TYPICAL TIRE WASH
NOT TO SCALE

Dewatering Operations NS-2



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	☑
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

SE-5: Fiber Roll

SE-6: Gravel Bag Berm

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Dewatering operations are practices that manage the discharge of pollutants when non-stormwater and accumulated precipitation (stormwater) must be removed from a work location to proceed with construction work or to provide vector control.

The General Permit incorporates Numeric Action Levels (NAL) for turbidity (see Section 2 of this handbook to determine your project's risk level and if you are subject to these requirements).

Discharges from dewatering operations can contain high levels of fine sediment that, if not properly treated, could lead to exceedances of the General Permit requirements or Basin Plan standards.

The dewatering operations described in this fact sheet are not Active Treatment Systems (ATS) and do not include the use of chemical coagulations, chemical flocculation or electrocoagulation.

Suitable Applications

These practices are implemented for discharges of non-stormwater from construction sites. Non-stormwaters include, but are not limited to, groundwater, water from cofferdams, water diversions, and waters used during construction activities that must be removed from a work area to facilitate construction.

Practices identified in this section are also appropriate for implementation when managing the removal of accumulated

precipitation (stormwater) from depressed areas at a construction site.

Stormwater mixed with non-stormwater should be managed as non-stormwater.

Limitations

- Dewatering operations will require, and should comply with applicable local and project-specific permits and regulations. In some areas, all dewatering activities, regardless of the discharge volume, require a dewatering permit.
- Site conditions will dictate design and use of dewatering operations.
- The controls discussed in this fact sheet primarily address sediment. Other secondary pollutant removal benefits are discussed where applicable.
- The controls detailed in this fact sheet only allow for minimal settling time for sediment particles. Use only when site conditions restrict the use of the other control methods.
- Avoid dewatering discharges where possible by using the water for dust control.

Implementation

- A Construction Site Monitoring Plan (CSMP) should be included in the project Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).
- Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB) Regions may require notification and approval prior to any discharge of water from construction sites.
- The destination of discharge from dewatering activities will typically determine the type of permit required for the discharge. For example, when discharging to a water of the U.S., a dewatering permit may be required through the site's governing RWQCB. When discharging to a sanitary sewer or Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4), a permit may need to be obtained from the owner of the sanitary sewer or MS4 in addition to obtaining an RWQCB dewatering permit. Additional permits or permissions from other agencies may be required for dewatering cofferdams or diversions.
- Dewatering discharges should not cause erosion at the discharge point. Appropriate BMPs should be implemented to maintain compliance with all applicable permits.
- Maintain dewatering records in accordance with all local and project-specific permits and regulations.

Sediment Treatment

A variety of methods can be used to treat water during dewatering operations. Several devices are presented below and provide options to achieve sediment removal. The sediment particle size and permit or receiving water limitations on sediment or turbidity are key considerations for selecting sediment treatment option(s); in some cases, the use of multiple devices may be appropriate. Use of other enhanced treatment methods (i.e., introduction of chemicals or electric current to enhance flocculation and removal of sediment) must comply with: 1) for storm drain or surface water discharges, the requirements for Active Treatment Systems (see SE-11); or 2) for sanitary sewer discharges, the requirements of applicable sanitary sewer discharge permits.

Sediment Basin (see also SE-2)

Description:

- A sediment basin is a temporary basin with a controlled release structure that is formed by excavation or construction of an embankment to detain sediment-laden runoff and allow sediment to settle out before discharging. Sediment basins are generally larger than Sediment Traps (SE-3) and have a designed outlet structure.

Appropriate Applications:

- Effective for the removal of trash, gravel, sand, silt, some metals that settle out with the sediment.

Implementation:

- Excavation and construction of related facilities is required.
- Temporary sediment basins should be fenced if safety is a concern.
- Outlet protection is required to prevent erosion at the outfall location.

Maintenance:

- Maintenance is required for safety fencing, vegetation, embankment, inlet and outlet, as well as other features.
- Removal of sediment is required when the storage volume is reduced by one-third.

Sediment Trap (See also SE-3)

Description:

- A sediment trap is a temporary basin formed by excavation and/or construction of an earthen embankment across a waterway or low drainage area to detain sediment-laden runoff and allow sediment to settle out before discharging. Sediment traps are generally smaller than Sediment Basins (SE-2) and do not have a designed outlet (but do have a spillway or overflow).

Appropriate Applications:

Effective for the removal of large and medium sized particles (sand and gravel) and some metals that settle out with the sediment.

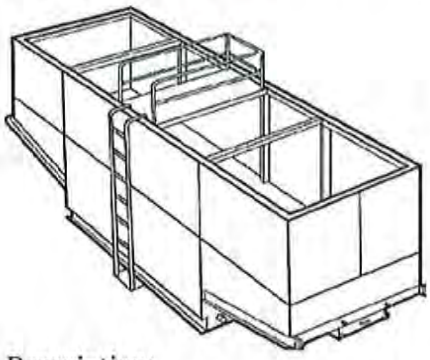
Implementation:

- Excavation and construction of related facilities is required.
- Trap inlets should be located to maximize the travel distance to the trap outlet.
- Use rock or vegetation to protect the trap outlets against erosion.

Maintenance:

- Maintenance is required for vegetation, embankment, inlet and outfall structures, as well as other features.
- Removal of sediment is required when the storage volume is reduced by one-third.

Weir Tanks



Description:

- A weir tank separates water and waste by using weirs. The configuration of the weirs (over and under weirs) maximizes the residence time in the tank and determines the waste to be removed from the water, such as oil, grease, and sediments.

Appropriate Applications:

- The tank removes trash, some settleable solids (gravel, sand, and silt), some visible oil and grease, and some metals (removed with sediment). To achieve high levels of flow, multiple tanks can be used in parallel. If additional treatment is desired, the tanks can be placed in series or as pre-treatment for other methods.

Implementation:

- Tanks are delivered to the site by the vendor, who can provide assistance with set-up and operation.
- Tank size will depend on flow volume, constituents of concern, and residency period required. Vendors should be consulted to appropriately size tank.
- Treatment capacity (i.e., volume and number of tanks) should provide at a minimum the required volume for discrete particle settling for treatment design flows.

Maintenance:

- Periodic cleaning is required based on visual inspection or reduced flow.
- Oil and grease disposal should be conducted by a licensed waste disposal company.

Dewatering Tanks

Description:

- A dewatering tank removes debris and sediment. Flow enters the tank through the top, passes through a fabric filter, and is discharged through the bottom of the tank. The filter separates the solids from the liquids.

Appropriate Applications:

- The tank removes trash, gravel, sand, and silt, some visible oil and grease, and some metals (removed with sediment). To achieve high levels of flow, multiple tanks can be used in parallel. If additional treatment is desired, the tanks can be placed in series or as pre-treatment for other methods.

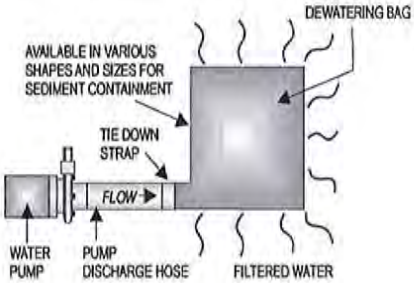
Implementation:

- Tanks are delivered to the site by the vendor, who can provide assistance with set-up and operation.
- Tank size will depend on flow volume, constituents of concern, and residency period required. Vendors should be consulted to appropriately size tank.

Maintenance:

- Periodic cleaning is required based on visual inspection or reduced flow.
- Oil and grease disposal should be conducted by licensed waste disposal company.

Gravity Bag Filter



Description:

- A gravity bag filter, also referred to as a dewatering bag, is a square or rectangular bag made of non-woven geotextile fabric that collects gravel, sand, silt, and fines.

Appropriate Applications:

- Effective for the removal of sediments (gravel, sand, silt, and fines). Some metals are removed with the sediment.

Implementation:

- Water is pumped into one side of the bag and seeps through the top, bottom, and sides of the bag.
- Place filter bag on pavement or a gravel bed or paved surface. Avoid placing a dewatering bag on unprotected bare soil. If placing the bag on bare soil is unavoidable, a secondary barrier should be used, such as a rock filter bed placed beneath and beyond the edges of the bag to, prevent erosion and capture sediments that escape the bag.
- Perimeter control around the downstream end of the bag should be implemented. Secondary sediment controls are important especially in the initial stages of discharge, which tend to allow fines to pass through the bag.

Maintenance:

- Inspection of the flow conditions, bag condition, bag capacity, and the secondary barrier (as applicable) is required.
- Replace the bag when it no longer filters sediment or passes water at a reasonable rate.
- Caution should be taken when removing and disposing of the bag, to prevent the release of captured sediment
- Properly dispose of the bag offsite. If sediment is removed from the bag prior to disposal (bags can potentially be reused depending upon their condition), dispose of sediment in accordance with the general maintenance procedures described at the end of this BMP Fact Sheet.

Sand Media Particulate Filter

Description:

- Water is treated by passing it through canisters filled with sand media. Generally, sand filters provide a final level of treatment. They are often used as a secondary or higher level of treatment after a significant amount of sediment and other pollutants have been removed using other methods.

Appropriate Applications:

- Effective for the removal of trash, gravel, sand, and silt and some metals, as well as the reduction of biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) and turbidity.
- Sand filters can be used for stand-alone treatment or in conjunction with bag and cartridge filtration if further treatment is required.
- Sand filters can also be used to provide additional treatment to water treated via settling or basic filtration.

Implementation:

- The filters require delivery to the site and initial set up. The vendor can provide assistance with installation and operation.

Maintenance:

- The filters require regular service to monitor and maintain the level of the sand media. If subjected to high loading rates, filters can plug quickly.
- Venders generally provide data on maximum head loss through the filter. The filter should be monitored daily while in use, and cleaned when head loss reaches target levels.
- If cleaned by backwashing, the backwash water may need to be hauled away for disposal, or returned to the upper end of the treatment train for another pass through the series of dewatering BMPs.

Pressurized Bag Filter

Description:

- A pressurized bag filter is a unit composed of single filter bags made from polyester felt material. The water filters through the unit and is discharged through a header. Vendors provide bag filters in a variety of configurations. Some units include a combination of bag filters and cartridge filters for enhanced contaminant removal.

Appropriate Applications:

- Effective for the removal of sediment (sand and silt) and some metals, as well as the reduction of BOD, turbidity, and hydrocarbons. Oil absorbent bags are available for hydrocarbon removal.
- Filters can be used to provide secondary treatment to water treated via settling or basic filtration.

Implementation:

- The filters require delivery to the site and initial set up. The vendor can provide assistance with installation and operation.

Maintenance:

- The filter bags require replacement when the pressure differential equals or exceeds the manufacturer's recommendation.

Cartridge Filter

Description:

- Cartridge filters provide a high degree of pollutant removal by utilizing a number of individual cartridges as part of a larger filtering unit. They are often used as a secondary or higher (polishing) level of treatment after a significant amount of sediment and other pollutants are removed. Units come with various cartridge configurations (for use in series with bag filters) or with a larger single cartridge filtration unit (with multiple filters within).

Appropriate Applications:

- Effective for the removal of sediment (sand, silt, and some clays) and metals, as well as the reduction of BOD, turbidity, and hydrocarbons. Hydrocarbons can effectively be removed with special resin cartridges.
- Filters can be used to provide secondary treatment to water treated via settling or basic filtration.

Implementation:

- The filters require delivery to the site and initial set up. The vendor can provide assistance.

Maintenance:

- The cartridges require replacement when the pressure differential equals or exceeds the manufacturer's recommendation.

Costs

- Sediment control costs vary considerably depending on the dewatering and sediment treatment system that is selected. Pressurized filters tend to be more expensive than gravity settling, but are often more effective. Simple tanks are generally rented on a long-term basis (one or more months) and can range from $360 per month for a 1,000 gallon tank to $2,660 per month for a 10,000 gallon tank. Mobilization and demobilization costs vary considerably.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that dewatering BMPs are in place and functioning prior to the commencement of activities requiring dewatering.
- Inspect dewatering BMPs daily while dewatering activities are being conducted.

- Inspect all equipment before use. Monitor dewatering operations to ensure they do not cause offsite discharge or erosion.
- Sample dewatering discharges as required by the General Permit.
- Unit-specific maintenance requirements are included with the description of each unit.
- Sediment removed during the maintenance of a dewatering device may be either spread onsite and stabilized, or disposed of at a disposal site as approved by the owner.
- Sediment that is commingled with other pollutants should be disposed of in accordance with all applicable laws and regulations and as approved by the owner.

References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

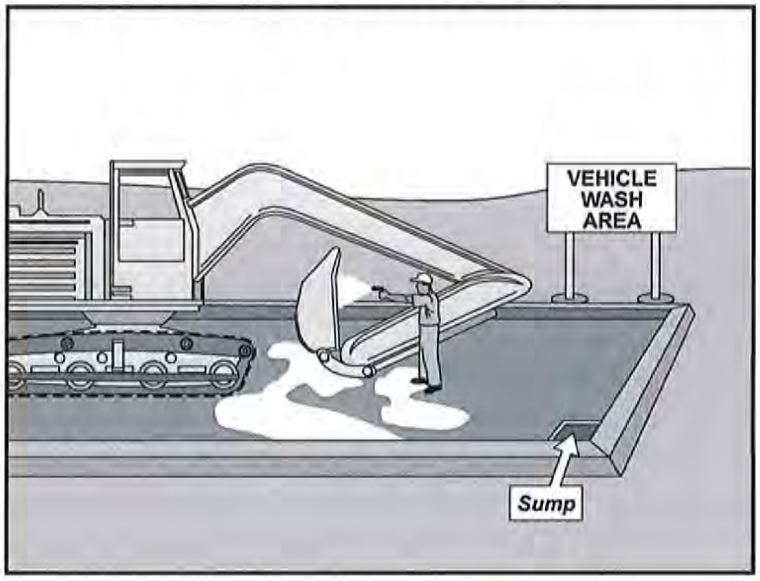
Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003; Updated March 2004.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Labor Surcharge & Equipment Rental Rates, April 1, 2002 through March 31, 2003, California Department of Transportation (Caltrans).

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning NS-8



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	☑
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	☑
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Vehicle and equipment cleaning procedures and practices eliminate or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from vehicle and equipment cleaning operations. Procedures and practices include but are not limited to: using offsite facilities; washing in designated, contained areas only; eliminating discharges to the storm drain by infiltrating the wash water; and training employees and subcontractors in proper cleaning procedures.

Suitable Applications

These procedures are suitable on all construction sites where vehicle and equipment cleaning is performed.

Limitations

Even phosphate-free, biodegradable soaps have been shown to be toxic to fish before the soap degrades. Sending vehicles/equipment offsite should be done in conjunction with TC-1, Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit.

Implementation

Other options to washing equipment onsite include contracting with either an offsite or mobile commercial washing business. These businesses may be better equipped to handle and dispose of the wash waters properly. Performing this work offsite can also be economical by eliminating the need for a separate washing operation onsite.

If washing operations are to take place onsite, then:

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Use phosphate-free, biodegradable soaps.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on pollution prevention measures.
- Do not permit steam cleaning onsite. Steam cleaning can generate significant pollutant concentrates.
- Cleaning of vehicles and equipment with soap, solvents or steam should not occur on the project site unless resulting wastes are fully contained and disposed of. Resulting wastes should not be discharged or buried, and must be captured and recycled or disposed according to the requirements of WM-10, Liquid Waste Management or WM-6, Hazardous Waste Management, depending on the waste characteristics. Minimize use of solvents. Use of diesel for vehicle and equipment cleaning is prohibited.
- All vehicles and equipment that regularly enter and leave the construction site must be cleaned offsite.
- When vehicle and equipment washing and cleaning must occur onsite, and the operation cannot be located within a structure or building equipped with appropriate disposal facilities, the outside cleaning area should have the following characteristics:
  - Located away from storm drain inlets, drainage facilities, or watercourses
  - Paved with concrete or asphalt and bermed to contain wash waters and to prevent runon and runoff
  - Configured with a sump to allow collection and disposal of wash water
  - No discharge of wash waters to storm drains or watercourses
  - Used only when necessary
- When cleaning vehicles and equipment with water:
  - Use as little water as possible. High-pressure sprayers may use less water than a hose and should be considered
  - Use positive shutoff valve to minimize water usage
  - Facility wash racks should discharge to a sanitary sewer, recycle system or other approved discharge system and must not discharge to the storm drainage system, watercourses, or to groundwater

Costs

Cleaning vehicles and equipment at an offsite facility may reduce overall costs for vehicle and equipment cleaning by eliminating the need to provide similar services onsite. When onsite cleaning is needed, the cost to establish appropriate facilities is relatively low on larger, long-duration projects, and moderate to high on small, short-duration projects.

Inspection and Maintenance

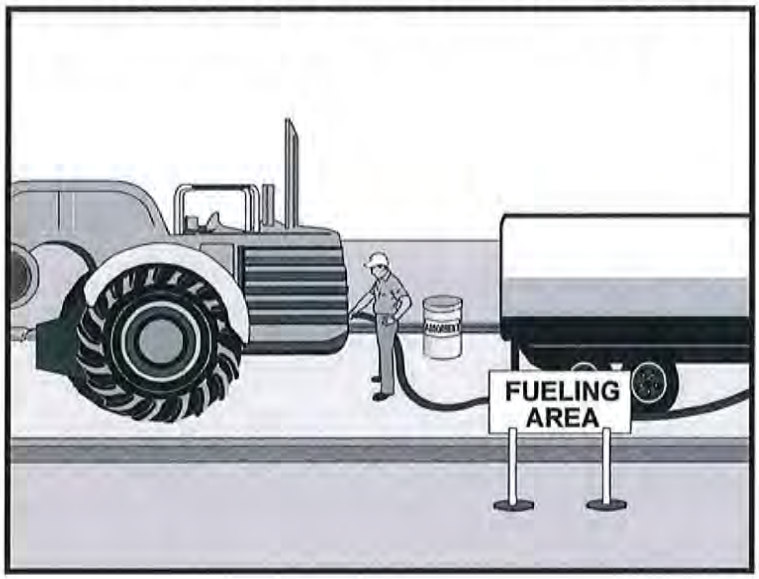
- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.
- Inspection and maintenance is minimal, although some berm repair may be necessary.
- Monitor employees and subcontractors throughout the duration of the construction project to ensure appropriate practices are being implemented.
- Inspect sump regularly and remove liquids and sediment as needed.
- Prohibit employees and subcontractors from washing personal vehicles and equipment on the construction site.

References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Swisher, R.D. Surfactant Biodegradation, Marcel Decker Corporation, 1987.

Vehicle and Equipment Fueling NS-9



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	☑
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Vehicle equipment fueling procedures and practices are designed to prevent fuel spills and leaks, and reduce or eliminate contamination of stormwater. This can be accomplished by using offsite facilities, fueling in designated areas only, enclosing or covering stored fuel, implementing spill controls, and training employees and subcontractors in proper fueling procedures.

Suitable Applications

These procedures are suitable on all construction sites where vehicle and equipment fueling takes place.

Limitations

Onsite vehicle and equipment fueling should only be used where it is impractical to send vehicles and equipment offsite for fueling. Sending vehicles and equipment offsite should be done in conjunction with TC-1, Stabilized Construction Entrance/ Exit.

Implementation

- Use offsite fueling stations as much as possible. These businesses are better equipped to handle fuel and spills properly. Performing this work offsite can also be economical by eliminating the need for a separate fueling area at a site.
- Discourage "topping-off" of fuel tanks.

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Absorbent spill cleanup materials and spill kits should be available in fueling areas and on fueling trucks, and should be disposed of properly after use.
- Drip pans or absorbent pads should be used during vehicle and equipment fueling, unless the fueling is performed over an impermeable surface in a dedicated fueling area.
- Use absorbent materials on small spills. Do not hose down or bury the spill. Remove the adsorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- Avoid mobile fueling of mobile construction equipment around the site; rather, transport the equipment to designated fueling areas. With the exception of tracked equipment such as bulldozers and large excavators, most vehicles should be able to travel to a designated area with little lost time.
- Train employees and subcontractors in proper fueling and cleanup procedures.
- When fueling must take place onsite, designate an area away from drainage courses to be used. Fueling areas should be identified in the SWPPP.
- Dedicated fueling areas should be protected from stormwater runon and runoff, and should be located at least 50 ft away from downstream drainage facilities and watercourses. Fueling must be performed on level-grade areas.
- Protect fueling areas with berms and dikes to prevent runon, runoff, and to contain spills.
- Nozzles used in vehicle and equipment fueling should be equipped with an automatic shutoff to control drips. Fueling operations should not be left unattended.
- Use vapor recovery nozzles to help control drips as well as air pollution where required by Air Quality Management Districts (AQMD).
- Federal, state, and local requirements should be observed for any stationary above ground storage tanks.

Costs

- All of the above measures are low cost except for the capital costs of above ground tanks that meet all local environmental, zoning, and fire codes.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Vehicles and equipment should be inspected each day of use for leaks. Leaks should be repaired immediately or problem vehicles or equipment should be removed from the project site.
- Keep ample supplies of spill cleanup materials onsite.

- Immediately clean up spills and properly dispose of contaminated soil and cleanup materials.

References

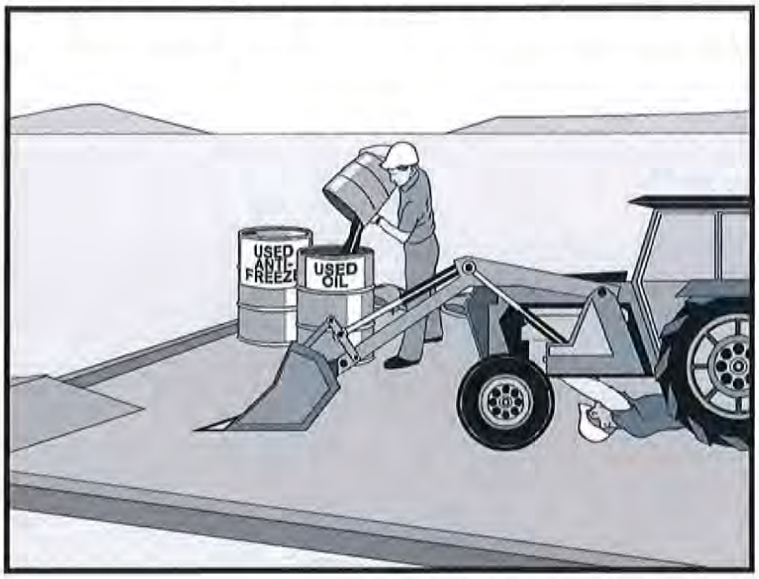
Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program: Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Vehicle & Equipment Maintenance NS-10



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	☑
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Prevent or reduce the contamination of stormwater resulting from vehicle and equipment maintenance by running a "dry and clean site". The best option would be to perform maintenance activities at an offsite facility. If this option is not available then work should be performed in designated areas only, while providing cover for materials stored outside, checking for leaks and spills, and containing and cleaning up spills immediately. Employees and subcontractors must be trained in proper procedures.

Suitable Applications

These procedures are suitable on all construction projects where an onsite yard area is necessary for storage and maintenance of heavy equipment and vehicles.

Limitations

Onsite vehicle and equipment maintenance should only be used where it is impractical to send vehicles and equipment offsite for maintenance and repair. Sending vehicles/equipment offsite should be done in conjunction with TC-1, Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit.

Outdoor vehicle or equipment maintenance is a potentially significant source of stormwater pollution. Activities that can contaminate stormwater include engine repair and service, changing or replacement of fluids, and outdoor equipment storage and parking (engine fluid leaks). For further information on vehicle or equipment servicing, see NS-8,

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning, and NS-9, Vehicle and Equipment Fueling.

Implementation

- Use offsite repair shops as much as possible. These businesses are better equipped to handle vehicle fluids and spills properly. Performing this work offsite can also be economical by eliminating the need for a separate maintenance area.
- If maintenance must occur onsite, use designated areas, located away from drainage courses. Dedicated maintenance areas should be protected from stormwater runon and runoff, and should be located at least 50 ft from downstream drainage facilities and watercourses.
- Drip pans or absorbent pads should be used during vehicle and equipment maintenance work that involves fluids, unless the maintenance work is performed over an impermeable surface in a dedicated maintenance area.
- Place a stockpile of spill cleanup materials where it will be readily accessible.
- All fueling trucks and fueling areas are required to have spill kits and/or use other spill protection devices.
- Use adsorbent materials on small spills. Remove the absorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- Inspect onsite vehicles and equipment daily at startup for leaks, and repair immediately.
- Keep vehicles and equipment clean; do not allow excessive build-up of oil and grease.
- Segregate and recycle wastes, such as greases, used oil or oil filters, antifreeze, cleaning solutions, automotive batteries, hydraulic and transmission fluids. Provide secondary containment and covers for these materials if stored onsite.
- Train employees and subcontractors in proper maintenance and spill cleanup procedures.
- Drip pans or plastic sheeting should be placed under all vehicles and equipment placed on docks, barges, or other structures over water bodies when the vehicle or equipment is planned to be idle for more than 1 hour.
- For long-term projects, consider using portable tents or covers over maintenance areas if maintenance cannot be performed offsite.
- Consider use of new, alternative greases and lubricants, such as adhesive greases, for chassis lubrication and fifth-wheel lubrication.
- Properly dispose of used oils, fluids, lubricants, and spill cleanup materials.
- Do not place used oil in a dumpster or pour into a storm drain or watercourse.
- Properly dispose of or recycle used batteries.
- Do not bury used tires.

- Repair leaks of fluids and oil immediately.

Listed below is further information if you must perform vehicle or equipment maintenance onsite.

Safer Alternative Products

- Consider products that are less toxic or hazardous than regular products. These products are often sold under an "environmentally friendly" label.
- Consider use of grease substitutes for lubrication of truck fifth-wheels. Follow manufacturers label for details on specific uses.
- Consider use of plastic friction plates on truck fifth-wheels in lieu of grease. Follow manufacturers label for details on specific uses.

Waste Reduction

Parts are often cleaned using solvents such as trichloroethylene, trichloroethane, or methylene chloride. Many of these cleaners are listed in California Toxic Rule as priority pollutants. These materials are harmful and must not contaminate stormwater. They must be disposed of as a hazardous waste. Reducing the number of solvents makes recycling easier and reduces hazardous waste management costs. Often, one solvent can perform a job as well as two different solvents. Also, if possible, eliminate or reduce the amount of hazardous materials and waste by substituting non-hazardous or less hazardous materials. For example, replace chlorinated organic solvents with non-chlorinated solvents. Non-chlorinated solvents like kerosene or mineral spirits are less toxic and less expensive to dispose of properly. Check the list of active ingredients to see whether it contains chlorinated solvents. The "chlor" term indicates that the solvent is chlorinated. Also, try substituting a wire brush for solvents to clean parts.

Recycling and Disposal

Separating wastes allows for easier recycling and may reduce disposal costs. Keep hazardous wastes separate, do not mix used oil solvents, and keep chlorinated solvents (like,-trichloroethane) separate from non-chlorinated solvents (like kerosene and mineral spirits). Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Don't leave full drip pans or other open containers lying around. Provide cover and secondary containment until these materials can be removed from the site.

Oil filters can be recycled. Ask your oil supplier or recycler about recycling oil filters.

Do not dispose of extra paints and coatings by dumping liquid onto the ground or throwing it into dumpsters. Allow coatings to dry or harden before disposal into covered dumpsters.

Store cracked batteries in a non-leaking secondary container. Do this with all cracked batteries, even if you think all the acid has drained out. If you drop a battery, treat it as if it is cracked. Put it into the containment area until you are sure it is not leaking.

Costs

All of the above are low cost measures. Higher costs are incurred to setup and maintain onsite maintenance areas.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharges daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.
- Keep ample supplies of spill cleanup materials onsite.
- Maintain waste fluid containers in leak proof condition.
- Vehicles and equipment should be inspected on each day of use. Leaks should be repaired immediately or the problem vehicle(s) or equipment should be removed from the project site.
- Inspect equipment for damaged hoses and leaky gaskets routinely. Repair or replace as needed.

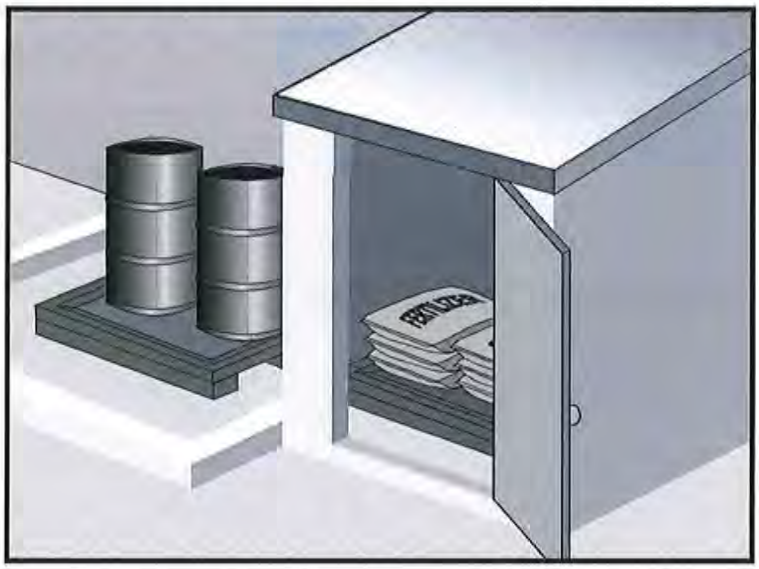
References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program; Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group, Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Material Delivery and Storage WM-1



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	☑
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Prevent, reduce, or eliminate the discharge of pollutants from material delivery and storage to the stormwater system or watercourses by minimizing the storage of hazardous materials onsite, storing materials in watertight containers and/or a completely enclosed designated area, installing secondary containment, conducting regular inspections, and training employees and subcontractors.

This best management practice covers only material delivery and storage. For other information on materials, see WM-2, Material Use, or WM-4, Spill Prevention and Control. For information on wastes, see the waste management BMPs in this section.

Suitable Applications

These procedures are suitable for use at all construction sites with delivery and storage of the following materials:

- Soil stabilizers and binders
- Pesticides and herbicides
- Fertilizers
- Detergents
- Plaster
- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil, and grease

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Asphalt and concrete components
- Hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, glues, adhesives, paints, solvents, and curing compounds
- Concrete compounds
- Other materials that may be detrimental if released to the environment

Limitations

- Space limitation may preclude indoor storage.
- Storage sheds often must meet building and fire code requirements.

Implementation

The following steps should be taken to minimize risk:

- Chemicals must be stored in water tight containers with appropriate secondary containment or in a storage shed.
- When a material storage area is located on bare soil, the area should be lined and bermed.
- Use containment pallets or other practical and available solutions, such as storing materials within newly constructed buildings or garages, to meet material storage requirements.
- Stack erodible landscape material on pallets and cover when not in use.
- Contain all fertilizers and other landscape materials when not in use.
- Temporary storage areas should be located away from vehicular traffic.
- Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) should be available on-site for all materials stored that have the potential to effect water quality.
- Construction site areas should be designated for material delivery and storage.
- Material delivery and storage areas should be located away from waterways, if possible.
  - Avoid transport near drainage paths or waterways.
  - Surround with earth berms or other appropriate containment BMP. See EC-9, Earth Dikes and Drainage Swales.
  - Place in an area that will be paved.
- Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids must comply with the fire codes of your area. Contact the local Fire Marshal to review site materials, quantities, and proposed storage area to determine specific requirements. See the Flammable and Combustible Liquid Code, NFPA30.
- An up to date inventory of materials delivered and stored onsite should be kept.

- Hazardous materials storage onsite should be minimized.
- Hazardous materials should be handled as infrequently as possible.
- Keep ample spill cleanup supplies appropriate for the materials being stored. Ensure that cleanup supplies are in a conspicuous, labeled area.
- Employees and subcontractors should be trained on the proper material delivery and storage practices.
- Employees trained in emergency spill cleanup procedures must be present when dangerous materials or liquid chemicals are unloaded.
- If significant residual materials remain on the ground after construction is complete, properly remove and dispose of materials and any contaminated soil. See WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management. If the area is to be paved, pave as soon as materials are removed to stabilize the soil.

Material Storage Areas and Practices

- Liquids, petroleum products, and substances listed in 40 CFR Parts 110, 117, or 302 should be stored in approved containers and drums and should not be overfilled. Containers and drums should be placed in temporary containment facilities for storage.
- A temporary containment facility should provide for a spill containment volume able to contain precipitation from a 25 year storm event, plus the greater of 10% of the aggregate volume of all containers or 100% of the capacity of the largest container within its boundary, whichever is greater.
- A temporary containment facility should be impervious to the materials stored therein for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.
- A temporary containment facility should be maintained free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks, accumulated rainwater and spills should be collected and placed into drums. These liquids should be handled as a hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-hazardous. All collected liquids or non-hazardous liquids should be sent to an approved disposal site.
- Sufficient separation should be provided between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.
- Incompatible materials, such as chlorine and ammonia, should not be stored in the same temporary containment facility.
- Materials should be covered prior to, and during rain events.
- Materials should be stored in their original containers and the original product labels should be maintained in place in a legible condition. Damaged or otherwise illegible labels should be replaced immediately.

- Bagged and boxed materials should be stored on pallets and should not be allowed to accumulate on the ground. To provide protection from wind and rain throughout the rainy season, bagged and boxed materials should be covered during non-working days and prior to and during rain events.
- Stockpiles should be protected in accordance with WM-3, Stockpile Management.
- Materials should be stored indoors within existing structures or completely enclosed storage sheds when available.
- Proper storage instructions should be posted at all times in an open and conspicuous location.
- An ample supply of appropriate spill clean up material should be kept near storage areas.
- Also see WM-6, Hazardous Waste Management, for storing of hazardous wastes.

Material Delivery Practices

- Keep an accurate, up-to-date inventory of material delivered and stored onsite.
- Arrange for employees trained in emergency spill cleanup procedures to be present when dangerous materials or liquid chemicals are unloaded.

Spill Cleanup

- Contain and clean up any spill immediately.
- Properly remove and dispose of any hazardous materials or contaminated soil if significant residual materials remain on the ground after construction is complete. See WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management.
- See WM-4, Spill Prevention and Control, for spills of chemicals and/or hazardous materials.
- If spills or leaks of materials occur that are not contained and could discharge to surface waters, non-visible sampling of site discharge may be required. Refer to the General Permit or to your project specific Construction Site Monitoring Plan to determine if and where sampling is required.

Cost

- The largest cost of implementation may be in the construction of a materials storage area that is covered and provides secondary containment.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Keep storage areas clean and well organized, including a current list of all materials onsite.
- Inspect labels on containers for legibility and accuracy.

- Repair or replace perimeter controls, containment structures, covers, and liners as needed to maintain proper function.

References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

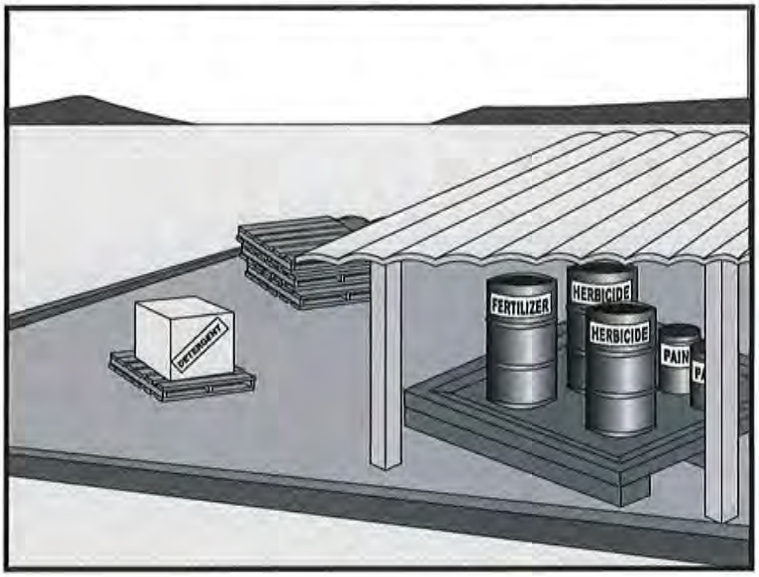
Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program: Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Material Use

WM-2



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	☑
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to the storm drain system or watercourses from material use by using alternative products, minimizing hazardous material use onsite, and training employees and subcontractors.

Suitable Applications

This BMP is suitable for use at all construction projects. These procedures apply when the following materials are used or prepared onsite:

- Pesticides and herbicides
- Fertilizers
- Detergents
- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil, and grease
- Asphalt and other concrete components
- Other hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, glues, adhesives, paints, solvents, and curing compounds
- Other materials that may be detrimental if released to the environment

Limitations

Safer alternative building and construction products may not be available or suitable in every instance.

Implementation

The following steps should be taken to minimize risk:

- Minimize use of hazardous materials onsite.
- Follow manufacturer instructions regarding uses, protective equipment, ventilation, flammability, and mixing of chemicals.
- Train personnel who use pesticides. The California Department of Pesticide Regulation and county agricultural commissioners license pesticide dealers, certify pesticide applicators, and conduct onsite inspections.
- The preferred method of termiticide application is soil injection near the existing or proposed structure foundation/slab; however, if not feasible, soil drench application of termiticides should follow EPA label guidelines and the following recommendations (most of which are applicable to most pesticide applications):
  - Do not treat soil that is water-saturated or frozen.
  - Application shall not commence within 24-hours of a predicted precipitation event with a 40% or greater probability. Weather tracking must be performed on a daily basis prior to termiticide application and during the period of termiticide application.
  - Do not allow treatment chemicals to runoff from the target area. Apply proper quantity to prevent excess runoff. Provide containment for and divert stormwater from application areas using berms or diversion ditches during application.
  - Dry season: Do not apply within 10 feet of storm drains. Do not apply within 25 feet of aquatic habitats (such as, but not limited to, lakes; reservoirs; rivers; permanent streams; marshes or ponds; estuaries; and commercial fish farm ponds).
  - Wet season: Do not apply within 50 feet of storm drains or aquatic habitats (such as, but not limited to, lakes; reservoirs; rivers; permanent streams; marshes or ponds; estuaries; and commercial fish farm ponds) unless a vegetative buffer is present (if so, refer to dry season requirements).
  - Do not make on-grade applications when sustained wind speeds are above 10 mph (at application site) at nozzle end height.
  - Cover treatment site prior to a rain event in order to prevent run-off of the pesticide into non-target areas. The treated area should be limited to a size that can be backfilled and/or covered by the end of the work shift. Backfilling or covering of the treated area shall be done by the end of the same work shift in which the application is made.
  - The applicator must either cover the soil him/herself or provide written notification of the above requirement to the contractor on site and to the person commissioning the

application (if different than the contractor). If notice is provided to the contractor or the person commissioning the application, then they are responsible under the Federal Insecticide Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) to ensure that: 1) if the concrete slab cannot be poured over the treated soil within 24 hours of application, the treated soil is covered with a waterproof covering (such as polyethylene sheeting), and 2) the treated soil is covered if precipitation is predicted to occur before the concrete slab is scheduled to be poured.

- Do not over-apply fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides. Prepare only the amount needed. Follow the recommended usage instructions. Over-application is expensive and environmentally harmful. Unless on steep slopes, till fertilizers into the soil rather than hydraulic application. Apply surface dressings in several smaller applications, as opposed to one large application, to allow time for infiltration and to avoid excess material being carried offsite by runoff. Do not apply these chemicals before predicted rainfall.
- Train employees and subcontractors in proper material use.
- Supply Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials.
- Dispose of latex paint and paint cans, used brushes, rags, absorbent materials, and drop cloths, when thoroughly dry and are no longer hazardous, with other construction debris.
- Do not remove the original product label; it contains important safety and disposal information. Use the entire product before disposing of the container.
- Mix paint indoors or in a containment area. Never clean paintbrushes or rinse paint containers into a street, gutter, storm drain, or watercourse. Dispose of any paint thinners, residue, and sludge(s) that cannot be recycled, as hazardous waste.
- For water-based paint, clean brushes to the extent practicable, and rinse to a drain leading to a sanitary sewer where permitted, or contain for proper disposal off site. For oil-based paints, clean brushes to the extent practicable, and filter and reuse thinners and solvents.
- Use recycled and less hazardous products when practical. Recycle residual paints, solvents, non-treated lumber, and other materials.
- Use materials only where and when needed to complete the construction activity. Use safer alternative materials as much as possible. Reduce or eliminate use of hazardous materials onsite when practical.
- Document the location, time, chemicals applied, and applicator's name and qualifications.
- Keep an ample supply of spill clean up material near use areas. Train employees in spill clean up procedures.
- Avoid exposing applied materials to rainfall and runoff unless sufficient time has been allowed for them to dry.
- Discontinue use of erodible landscape material within 2 days prior to a forecasted rain event and materials should be covered and/or bermed.

- Provide containment for material use areas such as masons' areas or paint mixing/preparation areas to prevent materials/pollutants from entering stormwater.

Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities.
- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Ensure employees and subcontractors throughout the job are using appropriate practices.

References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

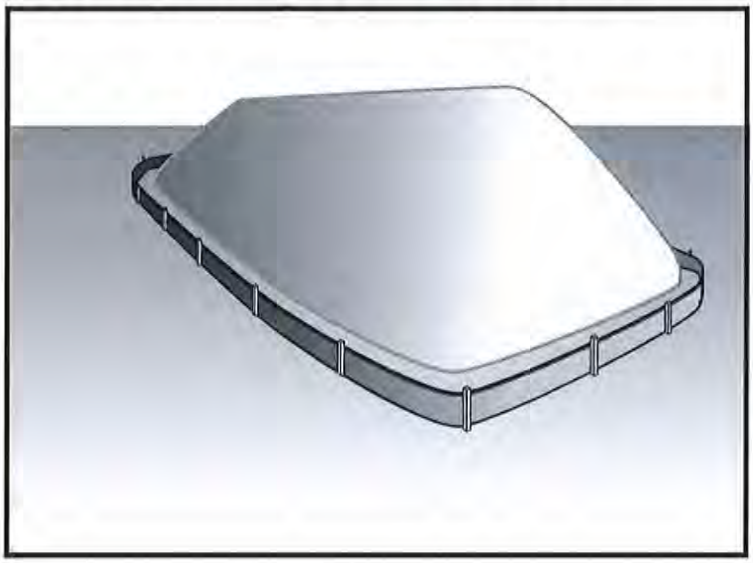
Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program: Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Comments on Risk Assessments Risk Reduction Options for Cypermethrin: Docket No. OPP–2005–0293; California Stormwater Quality Association (CASQA) letter to USEPA, 2006.Environmental Hazard and General Labeling for Pyrethroid Non-Agricultural Outdoor Products, EPA-HQ-OPP-2008-0331-0021; USEPA, 2008.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Stockpile Management WM-3



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	☒
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	☒
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	☑
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

Description and Purpose

Stockpile management procedures and practices are designed to reduce or eliminate air and stormwater pollution from stockpiles of soil, soil amendments, sand, paving materials such as portland cement concrete (PCC) rubble, asphalt concrete (AC), asphalt concrete rubble, aggregate base, aggregate sub base or pre-mixed aggregate, asphalt minder (so called "cold mix" asphalt), and pressure treated wood.

Suitable Applications

Implement in all projects that stockpile soil and other loose materials.

Limitations

- Plastic sheeting as a stockpile protection is temporary and hard to manage in windy conditions. Where plastic is used, consider use of plastic tarps with nylon reinforcement which may be more durable than standard sheeting.
- Plastic sheeting can increase runoff volume due to lack of infiltration and potentially cause perimeter control failure.
- Plastic sheeting breaks down faster in sunlight.
- The use of Plastic materials and photodegradable plastics should be avoided.

Implementation

Protection of stockpiles is a year-round requirement. To properly manage stockpiles:

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

- On larger sites, a minimum of 50 ft separation from concentrated flows of stormwater, drainage courses, and inlets is recommended.
- After 14 days of inactivity, a stockpile is non-active and requires further protection described below. All stockpiles are required to be protected as non-active stockpiles immediately if they are not scheduled to be used within 14 days.
- Protect all stockpiles from stormwater runon using temporary perimeter sediment barriers such as compost berms (SE-13), temporary silt dikes (SE-12), fiber rolls (SE-5), silt fences (SE-1), sandbags (SE-8), gravel bags (SE-6), or biofilter bags (SE-14). Refer to the individual fact sheet for each of these controls for installation information.
- Implement wind erosion control practices as appropriate on all stockpiled material. For specific information, see WE-1, Wind Erosion Control.
- Manage stockpiles of contaminated soil in accordance with WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management.
- Place bagged materials on pallets and under cover.
- Ensure that stockpile coverings are installed securely to protect from wind and rain.
- Some plastic covers withstand weather and sunlight better than others. Select cover materials or methods based on anticipated duration of use.

Protection of Non-Active Stockpiles

A stockpile is considered non-active if it either is not used for 14 days or if it is scheduled not to be used for 14 days or more. Stockpiles need to be protected immediately if they are not scheduled to be used within 14 days. Non-active stockpiles of the identified materials should be protected as follows:

Soil stockpiles

- Soil stockpiles should be covered or protected with soil stabilization measures and a temporary perimeter sediment barrier at all times.
- Temporary vegetation should be considered for topsoil piles that will be stockpiled for extended periods.

Stockpiles of Portland cement concrete rubble, asphalt concrete, asphalt concrete rubble, aggregate base, or aggregate sub base

- Stockpiles should be covered and protected with a temporary perimeter sediment barrier at all times.

Stockpiles of "cold mix"

- Cold mix stockpiles should be placed on and covered with plastic sheeting or comparable material at all times and surrounded by a berm.

Stockpiles of fly ash, stucco, hydrated lime

- Stockpiles of materials that may raise the pH of runoff (i.e., basic materials) should be covered with plastic and surrounded by a berm.

Stockpiles/Storage of wood (Pressure treated with chromated copper arsenate or ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate

- Treated wood should be covered with plastic sheeting or comparable material at all times and surrounded by a berm.

Protection of Active Stockpiles

A stockpile is active when it is being used or is scheduled to be used within 14 days of the previous use. Active stockpiles of the identified materials should be protected as follows:

- All stockpiles should be covered and protected with a temporary linear sediment barrier prior to the onset of precipitation.
- Stockpiles of "cold mix" and treated wood, and basic materials should be placed on and covered with plastic sheeting or comparable material and surrounded by a berm prior to the onset of precipitation.
- The downstream perimeter of an active stockpile should be protected with a linear sediment barrier or berm and runoff should be diverted around or away from the stockpile on the upstream perimeter.

Costs

For cost information associated with stockpile protection refer to the individual erosion or sediment control BMP fact sheet considered for implementation (For example, refer to SE-1 Silt Fence for installation of silt fence around the perimeter of a stockpile.)

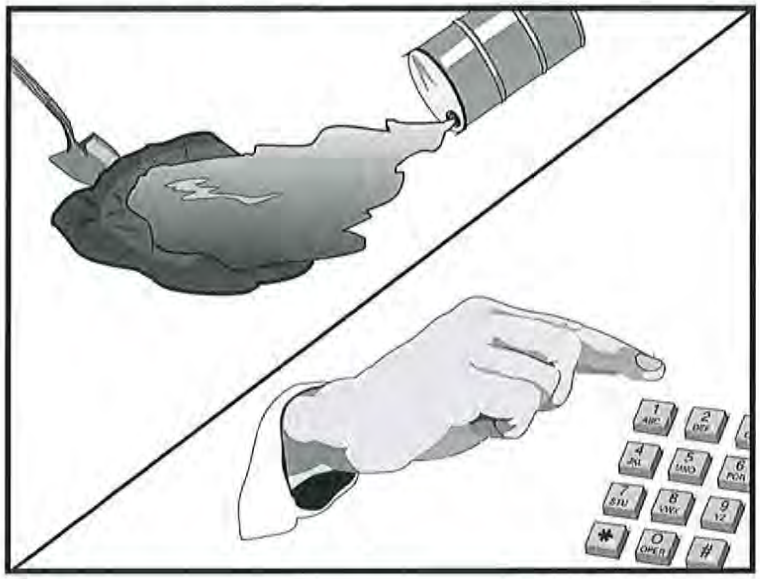
Inspection and Maintenance

- Stockpiles must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- It may be necessary to inspect stockpiles covered with plastic sheeting more frequently during certain conditions (for example, high winds or extreme heat).
- Repair and/or replace perimeter controls and covers as needed to keep them functioning properly.
- Sediment shall be removed when it reaches one-third of the barrier height.

References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Spill Prevention and Control WM-4



Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents

Sediment	☑
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	☑
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to drainage systems or watercourses from leaks and spills by reducing the chance for spills, stopping the source of spills, containing and cleaning up spills, properly disposing of spill materials, and training employees.

This best management practice covers only spill prevention and control. However, WM-1, Materials Delivery and Storage, and WM-2, Material Use, also contain useful information, particularly on spill prevention. For information on wastes, see the waste management BMPs in this section.

Suitable Applications

This BMP is suitable for all construction projects. Spill control procedures are implemented anytime chemicals or hazardous substances are stored on the construction site, including the following materials:

- Soil stabilizers/binders
- Dust palliatives
- Herbicides
- Growth inhibitors
- Fertilizers
- Deicing/anti-icing chemicals

- Fuels
- Lubricants
- Other petroleum distillates

Limitations

- In some cases it may be necessary to use a private spill cleanup company.
- This BMP applies to spills caused by the contractor and subcontractors.
- Procedures and practices presented in this BMP are general. Contractor should identify appropriate practices for the specific materials used or stored onsite

Implementation

The following steps will help reduce the stormwater impacts of leaks and spills:

Education

- Be aware that different materials pollute in different amounts. Make sure that each employee knows what a "significant spill" is for each material they use, and what is the appropriate response for "significant" and "insignificant" spills.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on potential dangers to humans and the environment from spills and leaks.
- Hold regular meetings to discuss and reinforce appropriate disposal procedures (incorporate into regular safety meetings).
- Establish a continuing education program to indoctrinate new employees.
- Have contractor's superintendent or representative oversee and enforce proper spill prevention and control measures.

General Measures

- To the extent that the work can be accomplished safely, spills of oil, petroleum products, substances listed under 40 CFR parts 110,117, and 302, and sanitary and septic wastes should be contained and cleaned up immediately.
- Store hazardous materials and wastes in covered containers and protect from vandalism.
- Place a stockpile of spill cleanup materials where it will be readily accessible.
- Train employees in spill prevention and cleanup.
- Designate responsible individuals to oversee and enforce control measures.
- Spills should be covered and protected from stormwater runon during rainfall to the extent that it doesn't compromise clean up activities.
- Do not bury or wash spills with water.

- Store and dispose of used clean up materials, contaminated materials, and recovered spill material that is no longer suitable for the intended purpose in conformance with the provisions in applicable BMPs.
- Do not allow water used for cleaning and decontamination to enter storm drains or watercourses. Collect and dispose of contaminated water in accordance with WM-10, Liquid Waste Management.
- Contain water overflow or minor water spillage and do not allow it to discharge into drainage facilities or watercourses.
- Place proper storage, cleanup, and spill reporting instructions for hazardous materials stored or used on the project site in an open, conspicuous, and accessible location.
- Keep waste storage areas clean, well organized, and equipped with ample cleanup supplies as appropriate for the materials being stored. Perimeter controls, containment structures, covers, and liners should be repaired or replaced as needed to maintain proper function.

Cleanup

- Clean up leaks and spills immediately.
- Use a rag for small spills on paved surfaces, a damp mop for general cleanup, and absorbent material for larger spills. If the spilled material is hazardous, then the used cleanup materials are also hazardous and must be sent to either a certified laundry (rags) or disposed of as hazardous waste.
- Never hose down or bury dry material spills. Clean up as much of the material as possible and dispose of properly. See the waste management BMPs in this section for specific information.

Minor Spills

- Minor spills typically involve small quantities of oil, gasoline, paint, etc. which can be controlled by the first responder at the discovery of the spill.
- Use absorbent materials on small spills rather than hosing down or burying the spill.
- Absorbent materials should be promptly removed and disposed of properly.
- Follow the practice below for a minor spill:
  - Contain the spread of the spill.
  - Recover spilled materials.
  - Clean the contaminated area and properly dispose of contaminated materials.

Semi-Significant Spills

- Semi-significant spills still can be controlled by the first responder along with the aid of other personnel such as laborers and the foreman, etc. This response may require the cessation of all other activities.

- Spills should be cleaned up immediately:
  - Contain spread of the spill.
  - Notify the project foreman immediately.
  - If the spill occurs on paved or impermeable surfaces, clean up using "dry" methods (absorbent materials, cat litter and/or rags). Contain the spill by encircling with absorbent materials and do not let the spill spread widely.
  - If the spill occurs in dirt areas, immediately contain the spill by constructing an earthen dike. Dig up and properly dispose of contaminated soil.
  - If the spill occurs during rain, cover spill with tarps or other material to prevent contaminating runoff.

Significant/Hazardous Spills

- For significant or hazardous spills that cannot be controlled by personnel in the immediate vicinity, the following steps should be taken:
  - Notify the local emergency response by dialing 911. In addition to 911, the contractor will notify the proper county officials. It is the contractor's responsibility to have all emergency phone numbers at the construction site.
  - Notify the Governor's Office of Emergency Services Warning Center, (916) 845-8911.
  - For spills of federal reportable quantities, in conformance with the requirements in 40 CFR parts 110,119, and 302, the contractor should notify the National Response Center at (800) 424-8802.
  - Notification should first be made by telephone and followed up with a written report.
  - The services of a spills contractor or a Haz-Mat team should be obtained immediately. Construction personnel should not attempt to clean up until the appropriate and qualified staffs have arrived at the job site.
  - Other agencies which may need to be consulted include, but are not limited to, the Fire Department, the Public Works Department, the Coast Guard, the Highway Patrol, the City/County Police Department, Department of Toxic Substances, California Division of Oil and Gas, Cal/OSHA, etc.

Reporting

- Report significant spills to local agencies, such as the Fire Department; they can assist in cleanup.
- Federal regulations require that any significant oil spill into a water body or onto an adjoining shoreline be reported to the National Response Center (NRC) at 800-424-8802 (24 hours).

Use the following measures related to specific activities:

Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance

- If maintenance must occur onsite, use a designated area and a secondary containment, located away from drainage courses, to prevent the runon of stormwater and the runoff of spills.
- Regularly inspect onsite vehicles and equipment for leaks and repair immediately
- Check incoming vehicles and equipment (including delivery trucks, and employee and subcontractor vehicles) for leaking oil and fluids. Do not allow leaking vehicles or equipment onsite.
- Always use secondary containment, such as a drain pan or drop cloth, to catch spills or leaks when removing or changing fluids.
- Place drip pans or absorbent materials under paving equipment when not in use.
- Use absorbent materials on small spills rather than hosing down or burying the spill. Remove the absorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- Promptly transfer used fluids to the proper waste or recycling drums. Don't leave full drip pans or other open containers lying around
- Oil filters disposed of in trashcans or dumpsters can leak oil and pollute stormwater. Place the oil filter in a funnel over a waste oil-recycling drum to drain excess oil before disposal. Oil filters can also be recycled. Ask the oil supplier or recycler about recycling oil filters.
- Store cracked batteries in a non-leaking secondary container. Do this with all cracked batteries even if you think all the acid has drained out. If you drop a battery, treat it as if it is cracked. Put it into the containment area until you are sure it is not leaking.

Vehicle and Equipment Fueling

- If fueling must occur onsite, use designate areas, located away from drainage courses, to prevent the runon of stormwater and the runoff of spills.
- Discourage "topping off" of fuel tanks.
- Always use secondary containment, such as a drain pan, when fueling to catch spills/ leaks.

Costs

Prevention of leaks and spills is inexpensive. Treatment and/ or disposal of contaminated soil or water can be quite expensive.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity–based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.

- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharge daily while non-stormwater discharges occur.
- Keep ample supplies of spill control and cleanup materials onsite, near storage, unloading, and maintenance areas.
- Update your spill prevention and control plan and stock cleanup materials as changes occur in the types of chemicals onsite.

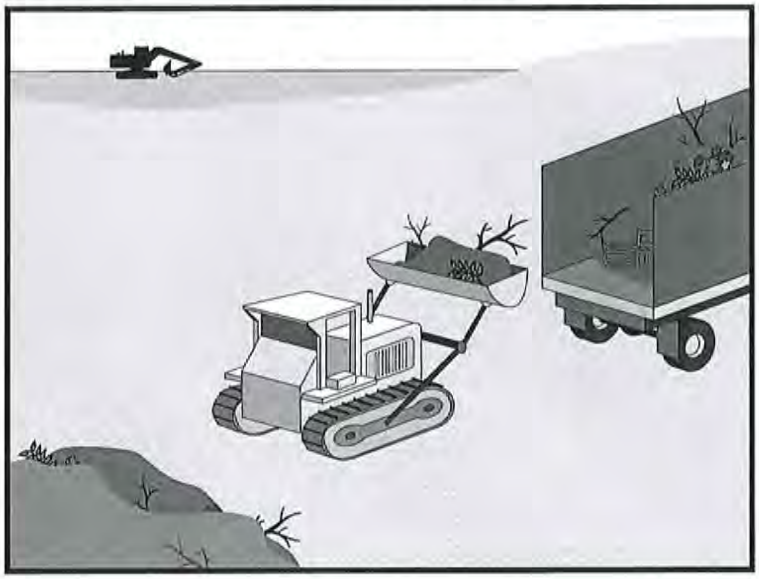
References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Solid Waste Management WM-5



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	☑
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Solid waste management procedures and practices are designed to prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from solid or construction waste by providing designated waste collection areas and containers, arranging for regular disposal, and training employees and subcontractors.

Suitable Applications

This BMP is suitable for construction sites where the following wastes are generated or stored:

- Solid waste generated from trees and shrubs removed during land clearing, demolition of existing structures (rubble), and building construction
- Packaging materials including wood, paper, and plastic
- Scrap or surplus building materials including scrap metals, rubber, plastic, glass pieces, and masonry products
- Domestic wastes including food containers such as beverage cans, coffee cups, paper bags, plastic wrappers, and cigarettes
- Construction wastes including brick, mortar, timber, steel and metal scraps, pipe and electrical cuttings, non-hazardous equipment parts, styrofoam and other materials used to transport and package construction materials

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Highway planting wastes, including vegetative material, plant containers, and packaging materials

Limitations

Temporary stockpiling of certain construction wastes may not necessitate stringent drainage related controls during the non-rainy season or in desert areas with low rainfall.

Implementation

The following steps will help keep a clean site and reduce stormwater pollution:

- Select designated waste collection areas onsite.
- Inform trash-hauling contractors that you will accept only watertight dumpsters for onsite use. Inspect dumpsters for leaks and repair any dumpster that is not watertight.
- Locate containers in a covered area or in a secondary containment.
- Provide an adequate number of containers with lids or covers that can be placed over the container to keep rain out or to prevent loss of wastes when it is windy.
- Cover waste containers at the end of each work day and when it is raining.
- Plan for additional containers and more frequent pickup during the demolition phase of construction.
- Collect site trash daily, especially during rainy and windy conditions.
- Remove this solid waste promptly since erosion and sediment control devices tend to collect litter.
- Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for construction debris.
- Do not hose out dumpsters on the construction site. Leave dumpster cleaning to the trash hauling contractor.
- Arrange for regular waste collection before containers overflow.
- Clean up immediately if a container does spill.
- Make sure that construction waste is collected, removed, and disposed of only at authorized disposal areas.

Education

- Have the contractor's superintendent or representative oversee and enforce proper solid waste management procedures and practices.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors on identification of solid waste and hazardous waste.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on solid waste storage and disposal procedures.

- Hold regular meetings to discuss and reinforce disposal procedures (incorporate into regular safety meetings).
- Require that employees and subcontractors follow solid waste handling and storage procedures.
- Prohibit littering by employees, subcontractors, and visitors.
- Minimize production of solid waste materials wherever possible.

Collection, Storage, and Disposal

- Littering on the project site should be prohibited.
- To prevent clogging of the storm drainage system, litter and debris removal from drainage grates, trash racks, and ditch lines should be a priority.
- Trash receptacles should be provided in the contractor's yard, field trailer areas, and at locations where workers congregate for lunch and break periods.
- Litter from work areas within the construction limits of the project site should be collected and placed in watertight dumpsters at least weekly, regardless of whether the litter was generated by the contractor, the public, or others. Collected litter and debris should not be placed in or next to drain inlets, stormwater drainage systems, or watercourses.
- Dumpsters of sufficient size and number should be provided to contain the solid waste generated by the project.
- Full dumpsters should be removed from the project site and the contents should be disposed of by the trash hauling contractor.
- Construction debris and waste should be removed from the site biweekly or more frequently as needed.
- Construction material visible to the public should be stored or stacked in an orderly manner.
- Stormwater runon should be prevented from contacting stored solid waste through the use of berms, dikes, or other temporary diversion structures or through the use of measures to elevate waste from site surfaces.
- Solid waste storage areas should be located at least 50 ft from drainage facilities and watercourses and should not be located in areas prone to flooding or ponding.
- Except during fair weather, construction and highway planting waste not stored in watertight dumpsters should be securely covered from wind and rain by covering the waste with tarps or plastic.
- Segregate potentially hazardous waste from non-hazardous construction site waste.
- Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for construction debris.

- For disposal of hazardous waste, see WM-6, Hazardous Waste Management. Have hazardous waste hauled to an appropriate disposal and/or recycling facility.
- Salvage or recycle useful vegetation debris, packaging and surplus building materials when practical. For example, trees and shrubs from land clearing can be used as a brush barrier, or converted into wood chips, then used as mulch on graded areas. Wood pallets, cardboard boxes, and construction scraps can also be recycled.

Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity–based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharge daily while non-stormwater discharges occur
- Inspect construction waste area regularly.
- Arrange for regular waste collection.

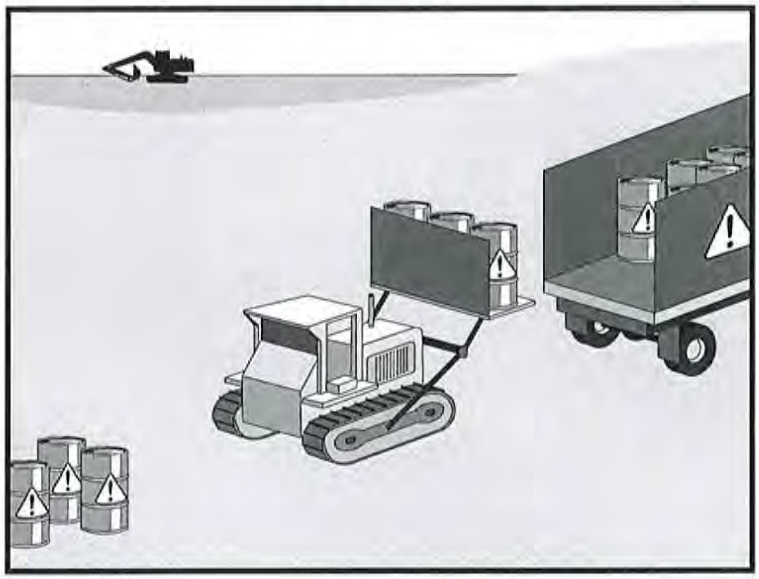
References

Processes, Procedures and Methods to Control Pollution Resulting from All Construction Activity, 430/9-73-007, USEPA, 1973.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Hazardous Waste Management WM-6



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Objective**

☒ **Secondary Objective**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	☑
Bacteria	☑
Oil and Grease	☑
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from hazardous waste through proper material use, waste disposal, and training of employees and subcontractors.

Suitable Applications

This best management practice (BMP) applies to all construction projects. Hazardous waste management practices are implemented on construction projects that generate waste from the use of:

- Petroleum Products
- Asphalt Products
- Concrete Curing Compounds
- Pesticides
- Palliatives
- Acids
- Septic Wastes
- Paints
- Stains
- Solvents
- Wood Preservatives
- Roofing Tar
- Any materials deemed a hazardous waste in California, Title 22 Division 4.5, or listed in 40 CFR Parts 110, 117, 261, or 302

In addition, sites with existing structures may contain wastes, which must be disposed of in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations. These wastes include:

- Sandblasting grit mixed with lead-, cadmium-, or chromium-based paints
- Asbestos
- PCBs (particularly in older transformers)

Limitations

- Hazardous waste that cannot be reused or recycled must be disposed of by a licensed hazardous waste hauler.
- Nothing in this BMP relieves the contractor from responsibility for compliance with federal, state, and local laws regarding storage, handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous wastes.
- This BMP does not cover aerially deposited lead (ADL) soils. For ADL soils refer to WM-7, Contaminated Soil Management.

Implementation

The following steps will help reduce stormwater pollution from hazardous wastes:

Material Use

- Wastes should be stored in sealed containers constructed of a suitable material and should be labeled as required by Title 22 CCR, Division 4.5 and 49 CFR Parts 172, 173, 178, and 179.
- All hazardous waste should be stored, transported, and disposed as required in Title 22 CCR, Division 4.5 and 49 CFR 261-263.
- Waste containers should be stored in temporary containment facilities that should comply with the following requirements:
  - Temporary containment facility should provide for a spill containment volume equal to 1.5 times the volume of all containers able to contain precipitation from a 25 year storm event, plus the greater of 10% of the aggregate volume of all containers or 100% of the capacity of the largest tank within its boundary, whichever is greater.
  - Temporary containment facility should be impervious to the materials stored there for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.
  - Temporary containment facilities should be maintained free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks, accumulated rainwater and spills should be placed into drums after each rainfall. These liquids should be handled as a hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-hazardous. Non-hazardous liquids should be sent to an approved disposal site.
  - Sufficient separation should be provided between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.

- Incompatible materials, such as chlorine and ammonia, should not be stored in the same temporary containment facility.
- Throughout the rainy season, temporary containment facilities should be covered during non-working days, and prior to rain events. Covered facilities may include use of plastic tarps for small facilities or constructed roofs with overhangs.

- Drums should not be overfilled and wastes should not be mixed.
- Unless watertight, containers of dry waste should be stored on pallets.
- Do not over-apply herbicides and pesticides. Prepare only the amount needed. Follow the recommended usage instructions. Over application is expensive and environmentally harmful. Apply surface dressings in several smaller applications, as opposed to one large application. Allow time for infiltration and avoid excess material being carried offsite by runoff. Do not apply these chemicals just before it rains. People applying pesticides must be certified in accordance with federal and state regulations.
- Paint brushes and equipment for water and oil based paints should be cleaned within a contained area and should not be allowed to contaminate site soils, watercourses, or drainage systems. Waste paints, thinners, solvents, residues, and sludges that cannot be recycled or reused should be disposed of as hazardous waste. When thoroughly dry, latex paint and paint cans, used brushes, rags, absorbent materials, and drop cloths should be disposed of as solid waste.
- Do not clean out brushes or rinse paint containers into the dirt, street, gutter, storm drain, or stream. "Paint out" brushes as much as possible. Rinse water-based paints to the sanitary sewer. Filter and reuse thinners and solvents. Dispose of excess oil-based paints and sludge as hazardous waste.
- The following actions should be taken with respect to temporary contaminant:
  - Ensure that adequate hazardous waste storage volume is available.
  - Ensure that hazardous waste collection containers are conveniently located.
  - Designate hazardous waste storage areas onsite away from storm drains or watercourses and away from moving vehicles and equipment to prevent accidental spills.
  - Minimize production or generation of hazardous materials and hazardous waste on the job site.
  - Use containment berms in fueling and maintenance areas and where the potential for spills is high.
  - Segregate potentially hazardous waste from non-hazardous construction site debris.
  - Keep liquid or semi-liquid hazardous waste in appropriate containers (closed drums or similar) and under cover.

- Clearly label all hazardous waste containers with the waste being stored and the date of accumulation.
- Place hazardous waste containers in secondary containment.
- Do not allow potentially hazardous waste materials to accumulate on the ground.
- Do not mix wastes.
- Use all of the product before disposing of the container.
- Do not remove the original product label; it contains important safety and disposal information.

Waste Recycling Disposal

- Select designated hazardous waste collection areas onsite.
- Hazardous materials and wastes should be stored in covered containers and protected from vandalism.
- Place hazardous waste containers in secondary containment.
- Do not mix wastes, this can cause chemical reactions, making recycling impossible and complicating disposal.
- Recycle any useful materials such as used oil or water-based paint.
- Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for construction debris.
- Arrange for regular waste collection before containers overflow.
- Make sure that hazardous waste (e.g., excess oil-based paint and sludge) is collected, removed, and disposed of only at authorized disposal areas.

Disposal Procedures

- Waste should be disposed of by a licensed hazardous waste transporter at an authorized and licensed disposal facility or recycling facility utilizing properly completed Uniform Hazardous Waste Manifest forms.
- A Department of Health Services certified laboratory should sample waste to determine the appropriate disposal facility.
- Properly dispose of rainwater in secondary containment that may have mixed with hazardous waste.
- Attention is directed to "Hazardous Material", "Contaminated Material", and "Aerially Deposited Lead" of the contract documents regarding the handling and disposal of hazardous materials.

Education

- Educate employees and subcontractors on hazardous waste storage and disposal procedures.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on potential dangers to humans and the environment from hazardous wastes.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors on safety procedures for common construction site hazardous wastes.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors in identification of hazardous and solid waste.
- Hold regular meetings to discuss and reinforce hazardous waste management procedures (incorporate into regular safety meetings).
- The contractor's superintendent or representative should oversee and enforce proper hazardous waste management procedures and practices.
- Make sure that hazardous waste is collected, removed, and disposed of only at authorized disposal areas.
- Warning signs should be placed in areas recently treated with chemicals.
- Place a stockpile of spill cleanup materials where it will be readily accessible.
- If a container does spill, clean up immediately.

Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity–based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events..
- Inspect BMPs subject to non-stormwater discharge daily while non-stormwater discharges occur
- Hazardous waste should be regularly collected.
- A foreman or construction supervisor should monitor onsite hazardous waste storage and disposal procedures.
- Waste storage areas should be kept clean, well organized, and equipped with ample cleanup supplies as appropriate for the materials being stored.
- Perimeter controls, containment structures, covers, and liners should be repaired or replaced as needed to maintain proper function.

- Hazardous spills should be cleaned up and reported in conformance with the applicable Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) and the instructions posted at the project site.
- The National Response Center, at (800) 424-8802, should be notified of spills of federal reportable quantities in conformance with the requirements in 40 CFR parts 110, 117, and 302. Also notify the Governors Office of Emergency Services Warning Center at (916) 845-8911.
- A copy of the hazardous waste manifests should be provided.

References

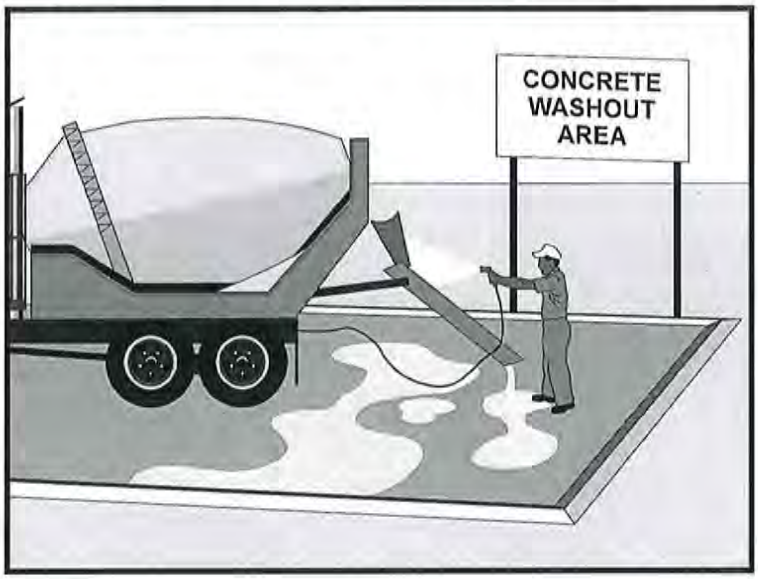
Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Processes, Procedures and Methods to Control Pollution Resulting from All Construction Activity, 430/9-73-007, USEPA, 1973.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Concrete Waste Management WM-8



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	☒
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	☑
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	☑
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Prevent the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from concrete waste by conducting washout onsite or offsite in a designated area, and by employee and subcontractor training.

The General Permit incorporates Numeric Action Levels (NAL) for pH (see Section 2 of this handbook to determine your project's risk level and if you are subject to these requirements).

Many types of construction materials, including mortar, concrete, stucco, cement and block and their associated wastes have basic chemical properties that can raise pH levels outside of the permitted range. Additional care should be taken when managing these materials to prevent them from coming into contact with stormwater flows and raising pH to levels outside the accepted range.

Suitable Applications

Concrete waste management procedures and practices are implemented on construction projects where:

- Concrete is used as a construction material or where concrete dust and debris result from demolition activities.
- Slurries containing portland cement concrete (PCC) are generated, such as from saw cutting, coring, grinding, grooving, and hydro-concrete demolition.
- Concrete trucks and other concrete-coated equipment are washed onsite.

- Mortar-mixing stations exist.
- Stucco mixing and spraying.
- See also NS-8, Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning.

Limitations

- Offsite washout of concrete wastes may not always be possible.
- Multiple washouts may be needed to assure adequate capacity and to allow for evaporation.

Implementation

The following steps will help reduce stormwater pollution from concrete wastes:

- Incorporate requirements for concrete waste management into material supplier and subcontractor agreements.
- Store dry and wet materials under cover, away from drainage areas. Refer to WM-1, Material Delivery and Storage for more information.
- Avoid mixing excess amounts of concrete.
- Perform washout of concrete trucks in designated areas only, where washout will not reach stormwater.
- Do not wash out concrete trucks into storm drains, open ditches, streets, streams or onto the ground. Trucks should always be washed out into designated facilities.
- Do not allow excess concrete to be dumped onsite, except in designated areas.
- For onsite washout:
  - On larger sites, it is recommended to locate washout areas at least 50 feet from storm drains, open ditches, or water bodies. Do not allow runoff from this area by constructing a temporary pit or bermed area large enough for liquid and solid waste.
  - Washout wastes into the temporary washout where the concrete can set, be broken up, and then disposed properly.
  - Washouts shall be implemented in a manner that prevents leaching to underlying soils. Washout containers must be water tight and washouts on or in the ground must be lined with a suitable impervious liner, typically a plastic type material.
- Do not wash sweepings from exposed aggregate concrete into the street or storm drain. Collect and return sweepings to aggregate base stockpile or dispose in the trash.
- See typical concrete washout installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

Education

- Educate employees, subcontractors, and suppliers on the concrete waste management techniques described herein.

- Arrange for contractor's superintendent or representative to oversee and enforce concrete waste management procedures.
- Discuss the concrete management techniques described in this BMP (such as handling of concrete waste and washout) with the ready-mix concrete supplier before any deliveries are made.

Concrete Demolition Wastes

- Stockpile concrete demolition waste in accordance with BMP WM-3, Stockpile Management.
- Dispose of or recycle hardened concrete waste in accordance with applicable federal, state or local regulations.

Concrete Slurry Wastes

- PCC and AC waste should not be allowed to enter storm drains or watercourses.
- PCC and AC waste should be collected and disposed of or placed in a temporary concrete washout facility (as described in Onsite Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Concrete Transit Truck Washout Procedures, below).
- A foreman or construction supervisor should monitor onsite concrete working tasks, such as saw cutting, coring, grinding and grooving to ensure proper methods are implemented.
- Saw-cut concrete slurry should not be allowed to enter storm drains or watercourses. Residue from grinding operations should be picked up by means of a vacuum attachment to the grinding machine or by sweeping. Saw cutting residue should not be allowed to flow across the pavement and should not be left on the surface of the pavement. See also NS-3, Paving and Grinding Operations; and WM-10, Liquid Waste Management.
- Concrete slurry residue should be disposed in a temporary washout facility (as described in Onsite Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Concrete Transit Truck Washout Procedures, below) and allowed to dry. Dispose of dry slurry residue in accordance with WM-5, Solid Waste Management.

Onsite Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Transit Truck Washout Procedures

- Temporary concrete washout facilities should be located a minimum of 50 ft from storm drain inlets, open drainage facilities, and watercourses. Each facility should be located away from construction traffic or access areas to prevent disturbance or tracking.
- A sign should be installed adjacent to each washout facility to inform concrete equipment operators to utilize the proper facilities.
- Temporary concrete washout facilities should be constructed above grade or below grade at the option of the contractor. Temporary concrete washout facilities should be constructed and maintained in sufficient quantity and size to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.

- Temporary washout facilities should have a temporary pit or bermed areas of sufficient volume to completely contain all liquid and waste concrete materials generated during washout procedures.
- Temporary washout facilities should be lined to prevent discharge to the underlying ground or surrounding area.
- Washout of concrete trucks should be performed in designated areas only.
- Only concrete from mixer truck chutes should be washed into concrete wash out.
- Concrete washout from concrete pumper bins can be washed into concrete pumper trucks and discharged into designated washout area or properly disposed of or recycled offsite.
- Once concrete wastes are washed into the designated area and allowed to harden, the concrete should be broken up, removed, and disposed of per WM-5, Solid Waste Management. Dispose of or recycle hardened concrete on a regular basis.
- Temporary Concrete Washout Facility (Type Above Grade)
  - Temporary concrete washout facility (type above grade) should be constructed as shown on the details at the end of this BMP, with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 ft; however, smaller sites or jobs may only need a smaller washout facility. With any washout, always maintain a sufficient quantity and volume to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
  - Materials used to construct the washout area should conform to the provisions detailed in their respective BMPs (e.g., SE-8 Sandbag Barrier).
  - Plastic lining material should be a minimum of 10 mil in polyethylene sheeting and should be free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.
  - Alternatively, portable removable containers can be used as above grade concrete washouts. Also called a "roll-off"; this concrete washout facility should be properly sealed to prevent leakage, and should be removed from the site and replaced when the container reaches 75% capacity.
- Temporary Concrete Washout Facility (Type Below Grade)
  - Temporary concrete washout facilities (type below grade) should be constructed as shown on the details at the end of this BMP, with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 ft. The quantity and volume should be sufficient to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
  - Lath and flagging should be commercial type.
  - Plastic lining material should be a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and should be free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.

- The base of a washout facility should be free of rock or debris that may damage a plastic liner.

Removal of Temporary Concrete Washout Facilities

- When temporary concrete washout facilities are no longer required for the work, the hardened concrete should be removed and properly disposed or recycled in accordance with federal, state or local regulations. Materials used to construct temporary concrete washout facilities should be removed from the site of the work and properly disposed or recycled in accordance with federal, state or local regulations..

- Holes, depressions or other ground disturbance caused by the removal of the temporary concrete washout facilities should be backfilled and repaired.

Costs

All of the above are low cost measures. Roll-off concrete washout facilities can be more costly than other measures due to removal and replacement; however, provide a cleaner alternative to traditional washouts. The type of washout facility, size, and availability of materials will determine the cost of the washout.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.

- Temporary concrete washout facilities should be maintained to provide adequate holding capacity with a minimum freeboard of 4 in. for above grade facilities and 12 in. for below grade facilities. Maintaining temporary concrete washout facilities should include removing and disposing of hardened concrete and returning the facilities to a functional condition. Hardened concrete materials should be removed and properly disposed or recycled in accordance with federal, state or local regulations.

- Washout facilities must be cleaned, or new facilities must be constructed and ready for use once the washout is 75% full.

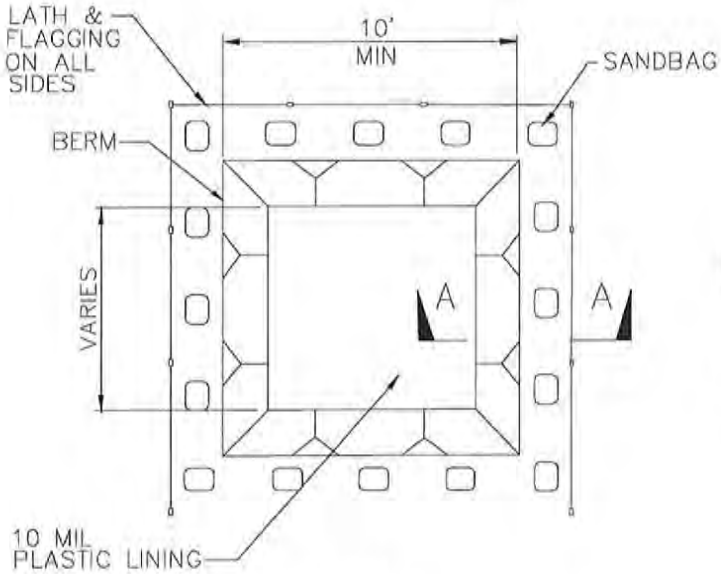
- Inspect washout facilities for damage (e.g. torn liner, evidence of leaks, signage, etc.). Repair all identified damage.

References

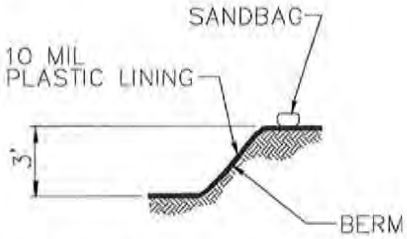
Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000, Updated March 2003.

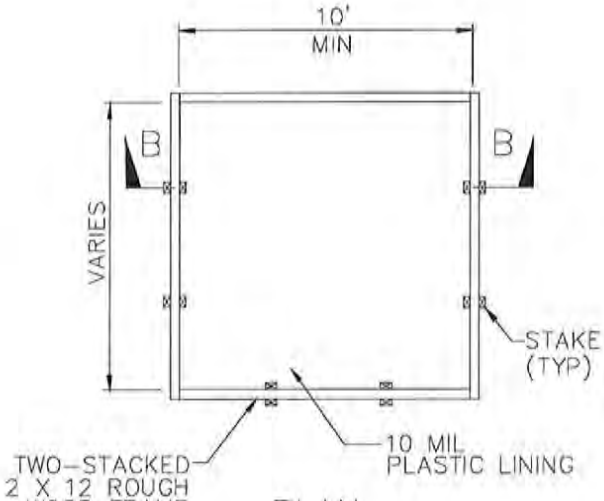
Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.



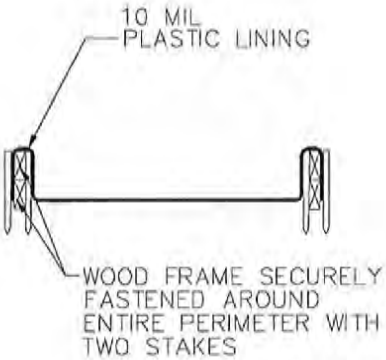
PLAN
NOT TO SCALE
TYPE "BELOW GRADE"



SECTION A–A
NOT TO SCALE



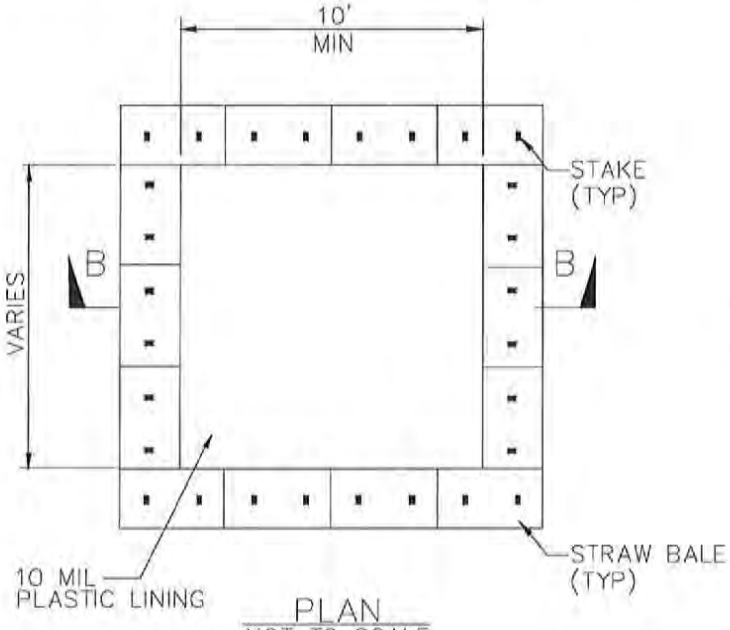
PLAN
NOT TO SCALE
TYPE "ABOVE GRADE"



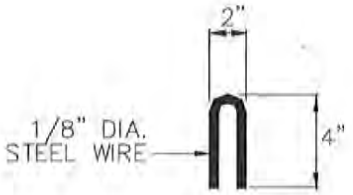
SECTION B–B
NOT TO SCALE

NOTES

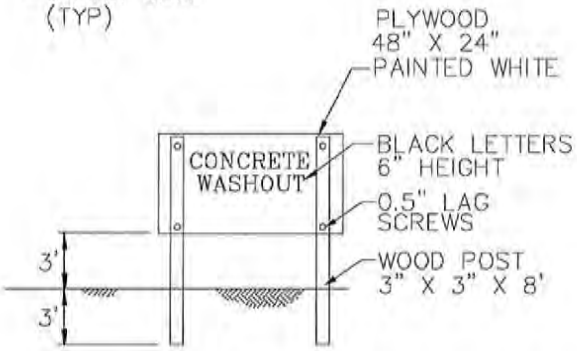
1. ACTUAL LAYOUT DETERMINED IN FIELD.
2. THE CONCRETE WASHOUT SIGN SHALL BE INSTALLED WITHIN 30 FT. OF THE TEMPORARY CONCRETE WASHOUT FACILITY.



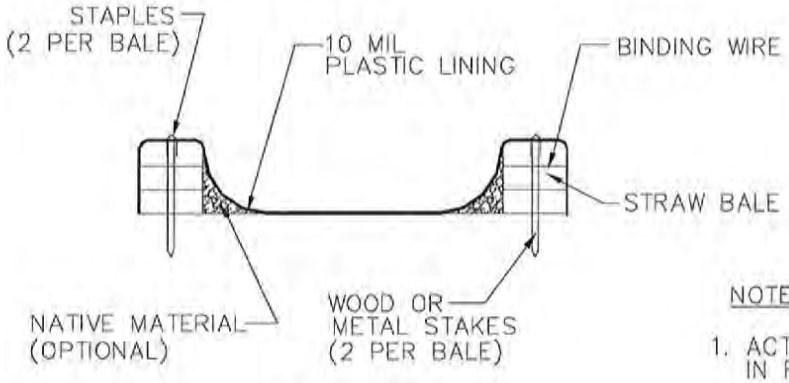
PLAN
NOT TO SCALE
TYPE "ABOVE GRADE"
WITH STRAW BALES



STAPLE DETAIL



CONCRETE WASHOUT
SIGN DETAIL
(OR EQUIVALENT)

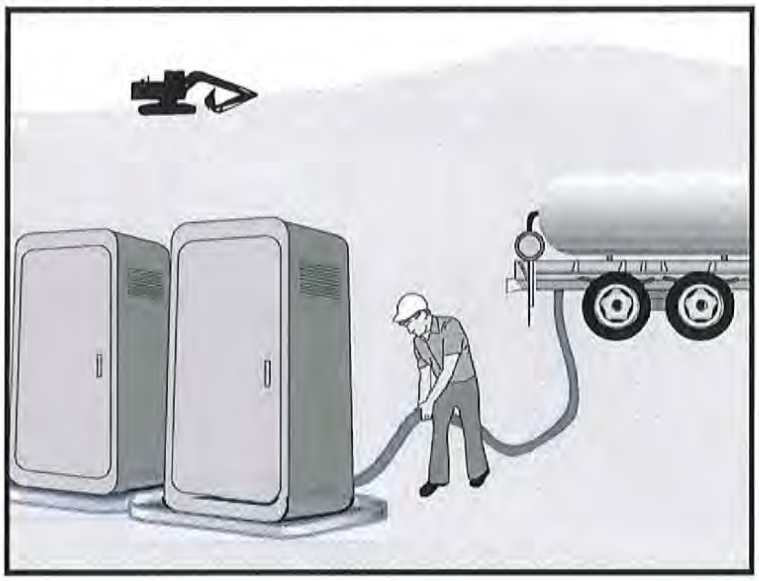


SECTION B–B
NOT TO SCALE

NOTES

1. ACTUAL LAYOUT DETERMINED IN FIELD.
2. THE CONCRETE WASHOUT SIGN SHALL BE INSTALLED WITHIN 30 FT. OF THE TEMPORARY CONCRETE WASHOUT FACILITY.

Sanitary/Septic Waste Management WM-9



Categories		
EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	☑

Legend:

☑ **Primary Category**

☒ **Secondary Category**

Targeted Constituents	
Sediment	
Nutrients	☑
Trash	☑
Metals	
Bacteria	☑
Oil and Grease	
Organics	☑

Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.

Description and Purpose

Proper sanitary and septic waste management prevent the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from sanitary and septic waste by providing convenient, well-maintained facilities, and arranging for regular service and disposal.

Suitable Applications

Sanitary septic waste management practices are suitable for use at all construction sites that use temporary or portable sanitary and septic waste systems.

Limitations

None identified.

Implementation

Sanitary or septic wastes should be treated or disposed of in accordance with state and local requirements. In many cases, one contract with a local facility supplier will be all that it takes to make sure sanitary wastes are properly disposed.

Storage and Disposal Procedures

- Temporary sanitary facilities should be located away from drainage facilities, watercourses, and from traffic circulation. If site conditions allow, place portable facilities a minimum of 50 feet from drainage conveyances and traffic areas. When subjected to high winds or risk of high winds, temporary sanitary facilities should be secured to prevent overturning.

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

- Temporary sanitary facilities must be equipped with containment to prevent discharge of pollutants to the stormwater drainage system of the receiving water.
- Consider safety as well as environmental implications before placing temporary sanitary facilities.
- Wastewater should not be discharged or buried within the project site.
- Sanitary and septic systems that discharge directly into sanitary sewer systems, where permissible, should comply with the local health agency, city, county, and sewer district requirements.
- Only reputable, licensed sanitary and septic waste haulers should be used.
- Sanitary facilities should be located in a convenient location.
- Temporary septic systems should treat wastes to appropriate levels before discharging.
- If using an onsite disposal system (OSDS), such as a septic system, local health agency requirements must be followed.
- Temporary sanitary facilities that discharge to the sanitary sewer system should be properly connected to avoid illicit discharges.
- Sanitary and septic facilities should be maintained in good working order by a licensed service.
- Regular waste collection by a licensed hauler should be arranged before facilities overflow.
- If a spill does occur from a temporary sanitary facility, follow federal, state and local regulations for containment and clean-up.

Education

- Educate employees, subcontractors, and suppliers on sanitary and septic waste storage and disposal procedures.
- Educate employees, subcontractors, and suppliers of potential dangers to humans and the environment from sanitary and septic wastes.
- Instruct employees, subcontractors, and suppliers in identification of sanitary and septic waste.
- Hold regular meetings to discuss and reinforce the use of sanitary facilities (incorporate into regular safety meetings).
- Establish a continuing education program to indoctrinate new employees.

Costs

All of the above are low cost measures.

Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Arrange for regular waste collection.
- If high winds are expected, portable sanitary facilities must be secured with spikes or weighed down to prevent over turning.
- If spills or leaks from sanitary or septic facilities occur that are not contained and discharge from the site, non-visible sampling of site discharge may be required. Refer to the General Permit or to your project specific Construction Site Monitoring Plan to determine if and where sampling is required.

References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities; Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practice, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Infiltration Basin TC-11

Design Considerations

- Soil for Infiltration
- Slope
- Aesthetics

Targeted Constituents

☑	Sediment	■
☑	Nutrients	■
☑	Trash	■
☑	Metals	■
☑	Bacteria	■
☑	Oil and Grease	■
☑	Organics	■

Legend ***(Removal Effectiveness)***

● Low ■ High

▲ Medium

Description

An infiltration basin is a shallow impoundment that is designed to infiltrate stormwater. Infiltration basins use the natural filtering ability of the soil to remove pollutants in stormwater runoff. Infiltration facilities store runoff until it gradually exfiltrates through the soil and eventually into the water table. This practice has high pollutant removal efficiency and can also help recharge groundwater, thus helping to maintain low flows in stream systems. Infiltration basins can be challenging to apply on many sites, however, because of soils requirements. In addition, some studies have shown relatively high failure rates compared with other management practices.

California Experience

Infiltration basins have a long history of use in California, especially in the Central Valley. Basins located in Fresno were among those initially evaluated in the National Urban Runoff Program and were found to be effective at reducing the volume of runoff, while posing little long-term threat to groundwater quality (EPA, 1983; Schroeder, 1995). Proper siting of these devices is crucial as underscored by the experience of Caltrans in siting two basins in Southern California. The basin with marginal separation from groundwater and soil permeability failed immediately and could never be rehabilitated.

Advantages

- Provides 100% reduction in the load discharged to surface waters.
- The principal benefit of infiltration basins is the approximation of pre-development hydrology during which a

CASQA
CALIFORNIA STORMWATER QUALITY ASSOCIATION

significant portion of the average annual rainfall runoff is infiltrated and evaporated rather than flushed directly to creeks.

- If the water quality volume is adequately sized, infiltration basins can be useful for providing control of channel forming (erosion) and high frequency (generally less than the 2-year) flood events.

Limitations

- May not be appropriate for industrial sites or locations where spills may occur.
- Infiltration basins require a minimum soil infiltration rate of 0.5 inches/hour, not appropriate at sites with Hydrologic Soil Types C and D.
- If infiltration rates exceed 2.4 inches/hour, then the runoff should be fully treated prior to infiltration to protect groundwater quality.
- Not suitable on fill sites or steep slopes.
- Risk of groundwater contamination in very coarse soils.
- Upstream drainage area must be completely stabilized before construction.
- Difficult to restore functioning of infiltration basins once clogged.

Design and Sizing Guidelines

- Water quality volume determined by local requirements or sized so that 85% of the annual runoff volume is captured.
- Basin sized so that the entire water quality volume is infiltrated within 48 hours.
- Vegetation establishment on the basin floor may help reduce the clogging rate.

Construction/Inspection Considerations

- Before construction begins, stabilize the entire area draining to the facility. If impossible, place a diversion berm around the perimeter of the infiltration site to prevent sediment entrance during construction or remove the top 2 inches of soil after the site is stabililized. Stabilize the entire contributing drainage area, including the side slopes, before allowing any runoff to enter once construction is complete.
- Place excavated material such that it can not be washed back into the basin if a storm occurs during construction of the facility.
- Build the basin without driving heavy equipment over the infiltration surface. Any equipment driven on the surface should have extra-wide ("low pressure") tires. Prior to any construction, rope off the infiltration area to stop entrance by unwanted equipment.
- After final grading, till the infiltration surface deeply.
- Use appropriate erosion control seed mix for the specific project and location.

Performance

As water migrates through porous soil and rock, pollutant attenuation mechanisms include precipitation, sorption, physical filtration, and bacterial degradation. If functioning properly, this approach is presumed to have high removal efficiencies for particulate pollutants and moderate removal of soluble pollutants. Actual pollutant removal in the subsurface would be expected to vary depending upon site-specific soil types. This technology eliminates discharge to surface waters except for the very largest storms; consequently, complete removal of all stormwater constituents can be assumed.

There remain some concerns about the potential for groundwater contamination despite the findings of the NURP and Nightingale (1975; 1987a,b,c; 1989). For instance, a report by Pitt et al. (1994) highlighted the potential for groundwater contamination from intentional and unintentional stormwater infiltration. That report recommends that infiltration facilities not be sited in areas where high concentrations are present or where there is a potential for spills of toxic material. Conversely, Schroeder (1995) reported that there was no evidence of groundwater impacts from an infiltration basin serving a large industrial catchment in Fresno, CA.

Siting Criteria

The key element in siting infiltration basins is identifying sites with appropriate soil and hydrogeologic properties, which is critical for long term performance. In one study conducted in Prince George's County, Maryland (Galli, 1992), all of the infiltration basins investigated clogged within 2 years. It is believed that these failures were for the most part due to allowing infiltration at sites with rates of less than 0.5 in/hr, basing siting on soil type rather than field infiltration tests, and poor construction practices that resulted in soil compaction of the basin invert.

A study of 23 infiltration basins in the Pacific Northwest showed better long-term performance in an area with highly permeable soils (Hilding, 1996). In this study, few of the infiltration basins had failed after 10 years. Consequently, the following guidelines for identifying appropriate soil and subsurface conditions should be rigorously adhered to.

- Determine soil type (consider RCS soil type 'A, B or C' only) from mapping and consult USDA soil survey tables to review other parameters such as the amount of silt and clay, presence of a restrictive layer or seasonal high water table, and estimated permeability. The soil should not have more than 30% clay or more than 40% of clay and silt combined. Eliminate sites that are clearly unsuitable for infiltration.

- Groundwater separation should be at least 3 m from the basin invert to the measured ground water elevation. There is concern at the state and regional levels of the impact on groundwater quality from infiltrated runoff, especially when the separation between groundwater and the surface is small.

- Location away from buildings, slopes and highway pavement (greater than 6 m) and wells and bridge structures (greater than 30 m). Sites constructed of fill, having a base flow or with a slope greater than 15% should not be considered.

- Ensure that adequate head is available to operate flow splitter structures (to allow the basin to be offline) without ponding in the splitter structure or creating backwater upstream of the splitter.

- Base flow should not be present in the tributary watershed.

Secondary Screening Based on Site Geotechnical Investigation

- At least three in-hole conductivity tests shall be performed using USBR 7300-89 or Bouwer-Rice procedures (the latter if groundwater is encountered within the boring), two tests at different locations within the proposed basin and the third down gradient by no more than approximately 10 m. The tests shall measure permeability in the side slopes and the bed within a depth of 3 m of the invert.

- The minimum acceptable hydraulic conductivity as measured in any of the three required test holes is 13 mm/hr. If any test hole shows less than the minimum value, the site should be disqualified from further consideration.

- Exclude from consideration sites constructed in fill or partially in fill unless no silts or clays are present in the soil boring. Fill tends to be compacted, with clays in a dispersed rather than flocculated state, greatly reducing permeability.

- The geotechnical investigation should be such that a good understanding is gained as to how the stormwater runoff will move in the soil (horizontally or vertically) and if there are any geological conditions that could inhibit the movement of water.

Additional Design Guidelines

(1) Basin Sizing - The required water quality volume is determined by local regulations or sufficient to capture 85% of the annual runoff.

(2) Provide pretreatment if sediment loading is a maintenance concern for the basin.

(3) Include energy dissipation in the inlet design for the basins. Avoid designs that include a permanent pool to reduce opportunity for standing water and associated vector problems.

(4) Basin invert area should be determined by the equation:

$$A = \frac{WQV}{kt}$$

where A = Basin invert area (m^2)

WQV = water quality volume (m^3)

k = 0.5 times the lowest field-measured hydraulic conductivity (m/hr)

t = drawdown time (48 hr)

(5) The use of vertical piping, either for distribution or infiltration enhancement shall not be allowed to avoid device classification as a Class V injection well per 40 CFR146.5(e)(4).

Maintenance

Regular maintenance is critical to the successful operation of infiltration basins. Recommended operation and maintenance guidelines include:

- Inspections and maintenance to ensure that water infiltrates into the subsurface completely (recommended infiltration rate of 72 hours or less) and that vegetation is carefully managed to prevent creating mosquito and other vector habitats.
- Observe drain time for the design storm after completion or modification of the facility to confirm that the desired drain time has been obtained.
- Schedule semiannual inspections for beginning and end of the wet season to identify potential problems such as erosion of the basin side slopes and invert, standing water, trash and debris, and sediment accumulation.
- Remove accumulated trash and debris in the basin at the start and end of the wet season.
- Inspect for standing water at the end of the wet season.
- Trim vegetation at the beginning and end of the wet season to prevent establishment of woody vegetation and for aesthetic and vector reasons.
- Remove accumulated sediment and regrade when the accumulated sediment volume exceeds 10% of the basin.
- If erosion is occurring within the basin, revegetate immediately and stabilize with an erosion control mulch or mat until vegetation cover is established.
- To avoid reversing soil development, scarification or other disturbance should only be performed when there are actual signs of clogging, rather than on a routine basis. Always remove deposited sediments before scarification, and use a hand-guided rotary tiller, if possible, or a disc harrow pulled by a very light tractor.

Cost

Infiltration basins are relatively cost-effective practices because little infrastructure is needed when constructing them. One study estimated the total construction cost at about $2 per ft (adjusted for inflation) of storage for a 0.25-acre basin (SWRPC, 1991). As with other BMPs, these published cost estimates may deviate greatly from what might be incurred at a specific site. For instance, Caltrans spent about $18/ft^3 for the two infiltration basins constructed in southern California, each of which had a water quality volume of about 0.34 ac.-ft. Much of the higher cost can be attributed to changes in the storm drain system necessary to route the runoff to the basin locations.

Infiltration basins typically consume about 2 to 3% of the site draining to them, which is relatively small. Additional space may be required for buffer, landscaping, access road, and fencing. Maintenance costs are estimated at 5 to 10% of construction costs.

One cost concern associated with infiltration practices is the maintenance burden and longevity. If improperly maintained, infiltration basins have a high failure rate. Thus, it may be necessary to replace the basin with a different technology after a relatively short period of time.

References and Sources of Additional Information

Caltrans, 2002, BMP Retrofit Pilot Program Proposed Final Report, Rpt. CTSW-RT-01-050, California Dept. of Transportation, Sacramento, CA.

Galli, J. 1992. *Analysis of Urban BMP Performance and Longevity in Prince George's County, Maryland*. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.

Hilding, K. 1996. Longevity of infiltration basins assessed in Puget Sound. *Watershed Protection Techniques* 1(3):124–125.

Maryland Department of the Environment (MDE). 2000. *Maryland Stormwater Design Manual*. http://www.mde.state.md.us/environment/wma/stormwatermanual. Accessed May 22, 2002.

Metzger, M. E., D. F. Messer, C. L. Beitia, C. M. Myers, and V. L. Kramer. 2002. The Dark Side Of Stormwater Runoff Management: Disease Vectors Associated With Structural BMPs. Stormwater 3(2): 24-39.

Nightingale, H.I., 1975, "Lead, Zinc, and Copper in Soils of Urban Storm-Runoff Retention Basins," American Water Works Assoc. Journal. Vol. 67, p. 443-446.

Nightingale, H.I., 1987a, "Water Quality beneath Urban Runoff Water Management Basins," Water Resources Bulletin, Vol. 23, p. 197-205.

Nightingale, H.I., 1987b, "Accumulation of As, Ni, Cu, and Pb in Retention and Recharge Basin Soils from Urban Runoff," Water Resources Bulletin, Vol. 23, p. 663-672.

Nightingale, H.I., 1987c, "Organic Pollutants in Soils of Retention/Recharge Basins Receiving Urban Runoff Water," Soil Science Vol. 148, pp. 39-45.

Nightingale, H.I., Harrison, D., and Salo, J.E., 1985, "An Evaluation Technique for Groundwater Quality Beneath Urban Runoff Retention and Percolation Basins," Ground Water Monitoring Review, Vol. 5, No. 1, pp. 43-50.

Oberts, G. 1994. Performance of Stormwater Ponds and Wetlands in Winter. *Watershed Protection Techniques* 1(2): 64–68.

Pitt, R., et al. 1994, *Potential Groundwater Contamination from Intentional and Nonintentional Stormwater Infiltration*, EPA/600/R-94/051, Risk Reduction Engineering Laboratory, U.S. EPA, Cincinnati, OH.

Schueler, T. 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.

Schroeder, R.A., 1995, *Potential For Chemical Transport Beneath a Storm-Runoff Recharge (Retention) Basin for an Industrial Catchment in Fresno, CA*, USGS Water-Resource Investigations Report 93-4140.

Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission (SWRPC). 1991. *Costs of Urban Nonpoint Source Water Pollution Control Measures.* Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI.

U.S. EPA, 1983, *Results of the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program: Volume 1 – Final Report,* WH-554, Water Planning Division, Washington, DC.

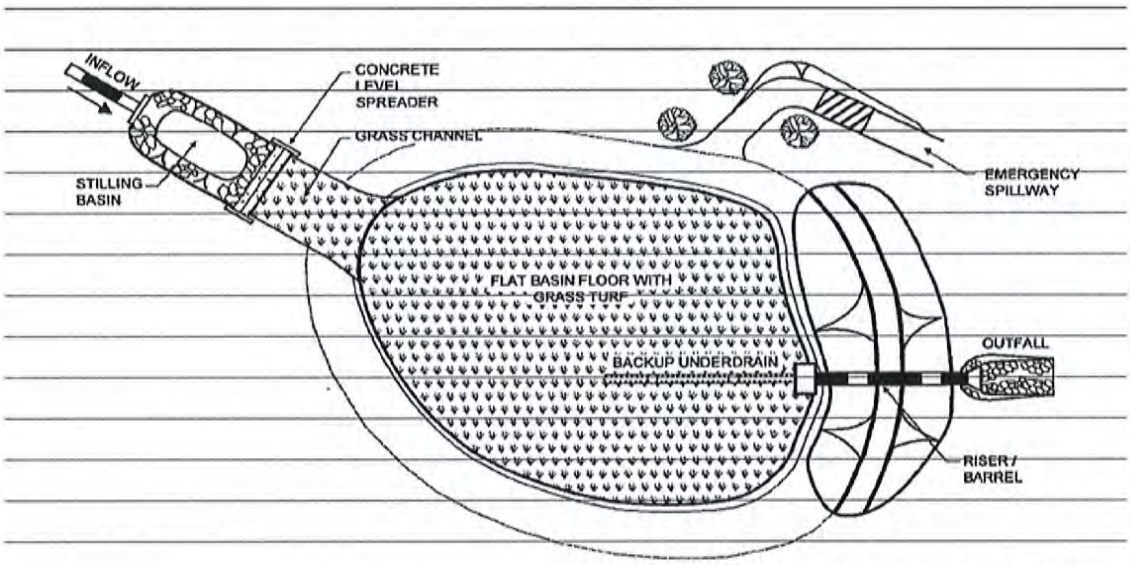
Watershed Management Institute (WMI). 1997. *Operation, Maintenance, and Management of Stormwater Management Systems.* Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Water, Washington, DC.

Information Resources

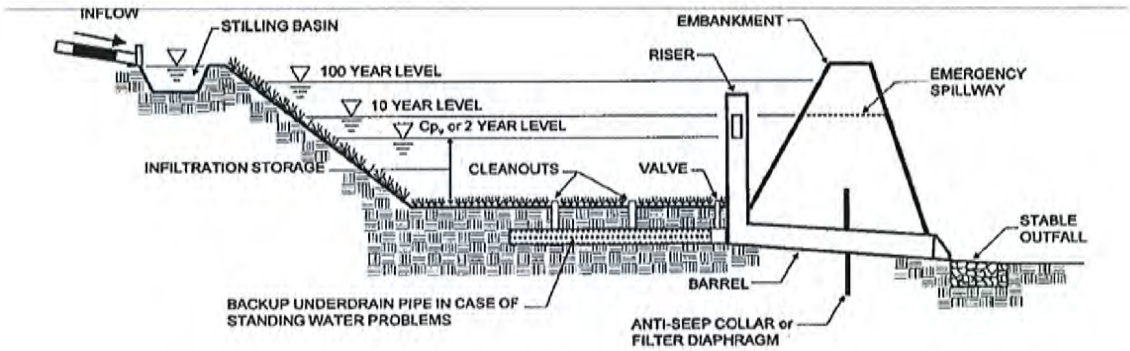
Center for Watershed Protection (CWP). 1997. *Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates.* Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Wetlands, Oceans and Watersheds. Washington, DC.

Ferguson, B.K., 1994. *Stormwater Infiltration.* CRC Press, Ann Arbor, MI.

USEPA. 1993. *Guidance to Specify Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters.* EPA-840-B-92-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC.



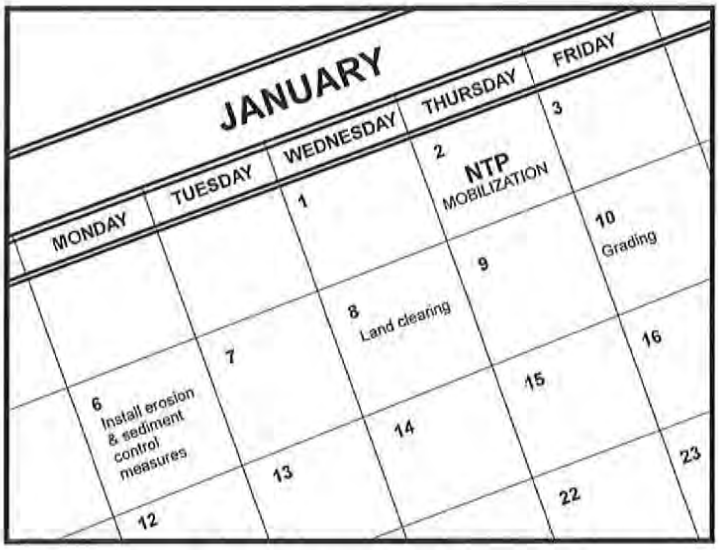
PLAN VIEW



PROFILE

Scheduling

SS-1



Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- Soil Stabilization
- Sediment Control
- Tracking Control
- Wind Erosion Control
- Non-Storm Water Management
- Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

This best management practice (BMP) involves developing, for every project, a schedule that includes sequencing of construction activities with the implementation of construction site BMPs such as temporary soil stabilization (erosion control) and temporary sediment controls measures. The purpose is to reduce the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff and vehicle tracking, and to perform the construction activities and control practices in accordance with the planned schedule.

Appropriate Applications

Construction sequencing shall be scheduled to minimize land disturbance for all projects during the rainy and non-rainy season. Appropriate BMPs shall be implemented during both rainy and non-rainy seasons.

Limitations

None identified.

Standards and Specifications

- Developing a schedule and planning the project are the very first steps in an effective storm water program. The schedule shall clearly show how the rainy season relates to soil-disturbing and re-stabilization activities. The construction schedule shall be incorporated into the SWPPP or WPCP.
- The schedule shall include detail on the rainy season implementation and deployment of:
  - Temporary soil stabilization BMPs.
  - Temporary sediment control BMPs.
  - Tracking control BMPs.
  - Wind erosion control BMPs.

- Non-storm water BMPs.
- Waste management and materials pollution control BMPs.

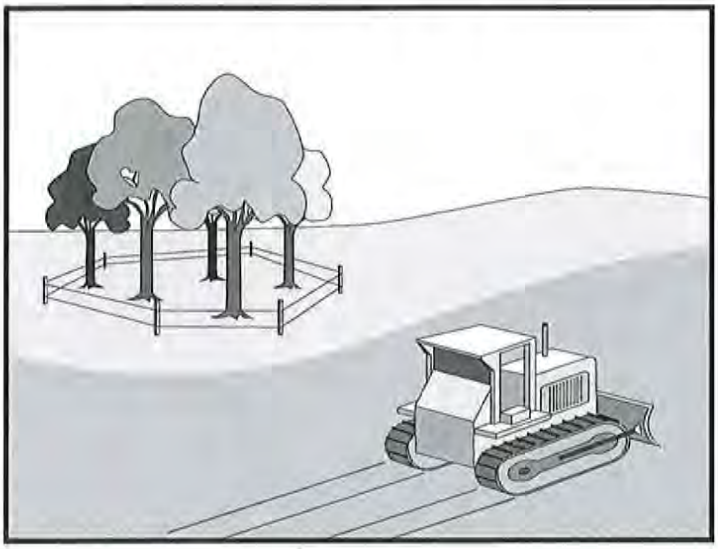
- Schedule shall also include dates for significant long-term operations or activities that may have planned non-storm water discharges such as dewatering, sawcutting, grinding, drilling, boring, crushing, blasting, painting, hydro-demolition, mortar mixing, bridge cleaning, etc.
- Schedule work to minimize soil disturbing activities during the rainy season.
- Develop the sequencing and timetable for the start and completion of each item such as site clearing and grubbing, grading, excavation, paving, pouring foundations, installing utilities, etc., to minimize the active construction area during the rainy season.
- Schedule major grading operations for the non-rainy season when practical.
- Stabilize non-active areas within 14 days from the cessation of soil-disturbing activities or one day prior to the onset of precipitation, whichever occurs first.
- Monitor the weather forecast for rainfall.
- When rainfall is predicted, adjust the construction schedule to allow the implementation of soil stabilization and sediment controls and sediment treatment controls on all disturbed areas prior to the onset of rain.
- Be prepared year-round to deploy soil stabilization and sediment control practices as required by Section 2 of this Manual. Erosion may be caused during dry seasons by unseasonal rainfall, wind, and vehicle tracking. Keep the site stabilized year-round, and retain and maintain rainy season sediment trapping devices in operational condition.
- Sequence trenching activities so that most open portions are closed before new trenching begins.
- Incorporate staged seeding and re-vegetation of graded slopes as work progresses.
- Consider scheduling when establishing permanent vegetation (appropriate planting time for specified vegetation).
- Apply permanent erosion control to areas deemed substantially complete during the project's defined seeding window.

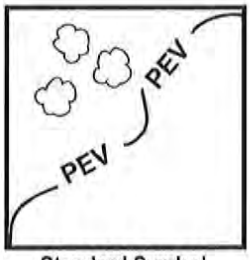
Maintenance and Inspection

- Verify that work is progressing in accordance with the schedule. If progress deviates, take corrective actions.
- Amend the schedule when changes are warranted or when directed by the Resident Engineer (RE).
- The Special Provisions require annual submittal of a rainy season implementation schedule. Amend the schedule prior to the rainy season to show updated information on the deployment and implementation of construction site BMPs.

Preservation of Existing Vegetation

SS-2





Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- Soil Stabilization
- ● Sediment Control
- ○ Tracking Control
- ○ Wind Erosion Control
- ● Non-Storm Water Management
- ○ Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

Preservation of existing vegetation is the identification and protection of desirable vegetation that provides erosion and sediment control benefits.

Appropriate Applications

- Preserve existing vegetation at areas on a site where no construction activity is planned or will occur at a later date. Specifications for preservation of existing vegetation can be found in Standard Specifications, Section 7-1.11.
- On a year-round basis, temporary fencing shall be provided prior to the commencement of clearing and grubbing operations or other soil-disturbing activities in areas.
- Clearing and grubbing operations should be staged to preserve existing vegetation.

Limitations

Protection of existing vegetation requires planning, and may limit the area available for construction activities.

Standards and Specifications

Timing

- Preservation of existing vegetation shall be provided prior to the commencement of clearing and grubbing operations or other soil-disturbing activities in areas identified on the plans to be preserved, especially on areas designated as Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs).
- Preservation of existing vegetation shall conform to scheduling requirements set forth in the special provisions.

Design and Layout

- Mark areas to be preserved with temporary fencing made of orange polypropylene that is stabilized against ultraviolet light. The temporary fencing shall be at least 1 meter (3.2. ft) tall and shall have openings not larger than 50 mm by 50 mm (2 in by 2 in).

- Fence posts shall be either wood or metal, at the Contractor's discretion, as appropriate for the intended purpose. The post spacing and depth shall be adequate to completely support the fence in an upright position.

- Minimize the disturbed areas by locating temporary roadways to avoid stands of trees and shrubs and to follow existing contours to reduce cutting and filling.

- Consider the impact of grade changes to existing vegetation and the root zone.

Installation

- Construction materials, equipment storage, and parking areas shall be located where they will not cause root compaction.

- Keep equipment away from trees to prevent trunk and root damage.

- Maintain existing irrigation systems.

- Employees and subcontractors shall be instructed to honor protective devices. No heavy equipment, vehicular traffic, or storage piles of any construction materials shall be permitted within the drip line of any tree to be retained. Removed trees shall not be felled, pushed, or pulled into any retained trees. Fires shall not be permitted within 30 m (100 ft) of the drip line of any retained trees. Any fires shall be of limited size, and shall be kept under continual surveillance. No toxic or construction materials (including paint, acid, nails, gypsum board, chemicals, fuels, and lubricants) shall be stored within 15 m (50 ft) of the drip line of any retained trees, nor disposed of in any way which would injure vegetation.

Trenching and Tunneling

- Trenching shall be as far away from tree trunks as possible, usually outside of the tree drip line or canopy. Curve trenches around trees to avoid large roots or root concentrations. If roots are encountered, consider tunneling under them. When trenching and/or tunneling near or under trees to be retained, tunnels shall be at least 450 mm (18 in) below the ground surface, and not below the tree center to minimize impact on the roots.

- Tree roots shall not be left exposed to air; they shall be covered with soil as soon as possible, protected, and kept moistened with wet burlap or peat moss until the tunnel and/or trench can be completed.

- The ends of damaged or cut roots shall be cut off smoothly.

- Trenches and tunnels shall be filled as soon as possible. Careful filling and tamping will eliminate air spaces in the soil which can damage roots.

- Remove any trees intended for retention if those trees are damaged seriously enough to affect their survival. If replacement is desired or required, the new tree shall be of similar species, and at least 50 mm (2 in) caliper, unless

otherwise required by the contract documents.

- After all other work is complete, fences and barriers shall be removed last. This is because protected trees may be destroyed by carelessness during the final cleanup and landscaping.

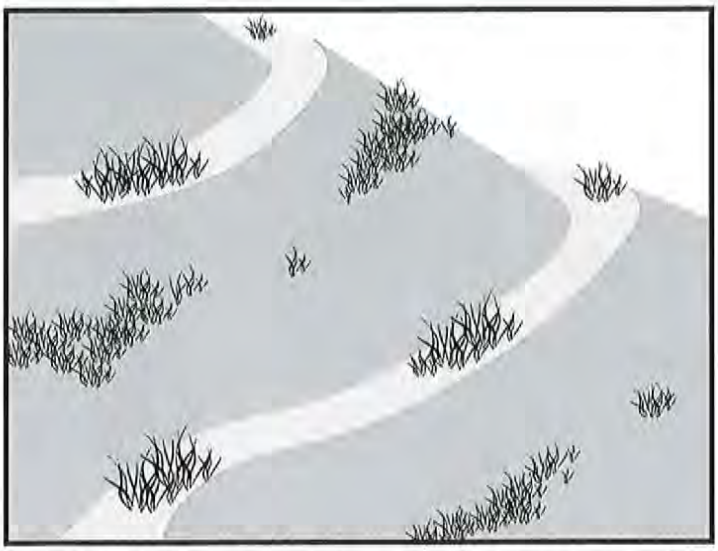
Maintenance and Inspection

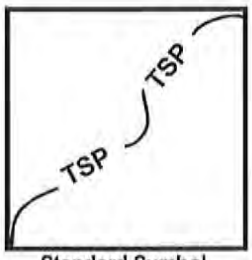
During construction, the limits of disturbance shall remain clearly marked at all times. Irrigation or maintenance of existing vegetation shall conform to the requirements in the landscaping plan. If damage to protected trees still occurs, maintenance guidelines described below shall be followed:

- Serious tree injuries shall be attended to by an arborist.
- During construction, District Environmental shall be contacted to ensure that ESAs are protected.

Hydroseeding

SS-4





Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- ● Soil Stabilization
- ○ Sediment Control
- ○ Tracking Control
- ● Wind Erosion Control
- ○ Non-Storm Water Management
- ○ Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

Hydroseeding typically consists of applying a mixture of wood fiber, seed, fertilizer, and stabilizing emulsion with hydro-mulch equipment, which temporarily protects exposed soils from erosion by water and wind. This is one of five temporary soil stabilization alternatives to consider.

Appropriate Applications

- Hydroseeding is applied on disturbed soil areas requiring temporary protection until permanent vegetation is established or disturbed soil areas that must be re-disturbed following an extended period of inactivity.

Limitations

- Hydroseeding may be used alone only when there is sufficient time in the season to ensure adequate vegetation establishment and erosion control. Otherwise, hydroseeding must be used in conjunction with a soil binder or mulching (i.e., straw mulch), refer to BMP SS-5, Table 1 for options.
- Steep slopes are difficult to protect with temporary seeding.
- Temporary seeding may not be appropriate in dry periods without supplemental irrigation.
- Temporary vegetation may have to be removed before permanent vegetation is applied.
- Temporary vegetation is not appropriate for short-term inactivity.

Standards and Specifications

To select appropriate hydroseeding mixtures, an evaluation of site conditions shall be performed with respect to:

- Soil conditions
- Site topography
- Season and climate
- Vegetation types
- Maintenance requirements
- Sensitive adjacent areas
- Water availability
- Plans for permanent vegetation

- Selection of hydroseeding mixtures shall be approved by the District Landscape Architect and the Construction Storm Water Coordinator.

The following steps shall be followed for implementation:

- Seed mix shall comply with the Standard Specifications Section 20-2.10, and the project's special provisions.

- Hydroseeding can be accomplished using a multiple-step or one-step process; refer to the special provisions for specified process. The multiple-step process ensures maximum direct contact of the seeds to soil. When the one-step process is used to apply the mixture of fiber, seed, etc., the seed rate shall be increased to compensate for all seeds not having direct contact with the soil.

- Prior to application, roughen the slope, fill area, or area to be seeded with the furrows trending along the contours. Rolling with a crimping or punching type roller or track walking is required on all slopes prior to hydroseeding. Track walking shall only be used where other methods are impractical.

- Apply a straw mulch to keep seeds in place and to moderate soil moisture and temperature until the seeds germinate and grow, refer to Standard Specifications Sections 20-2.06 and 20-3.03.

- All seeds shall be in conformance with the California State Seed Law of the Department of Agriculture. Each seed bag shall be delivered to the site sealed and clearly marked as to species, purity, percent germination, dealer's guarantee, and dates of test; provide the Resident Engineer (RE) with such documentation. The container shall be labeled to clearly reflect the amount of Pure Live Seed (PLS) contained. All legume seed shall be pellet-inoculated. Inoculant sources shall be species-specific and shall be applied at a rate of 2 kg of inoculant per 100 kg of seed (2-lb inoculant per 100-lb seed), refer to Standard Specifications Section 20-2.10.

- Commercial fertilizer shall conform to the requirements of the California Food and Agricultural Code. Fertilizer shall be pelleted or granular form.

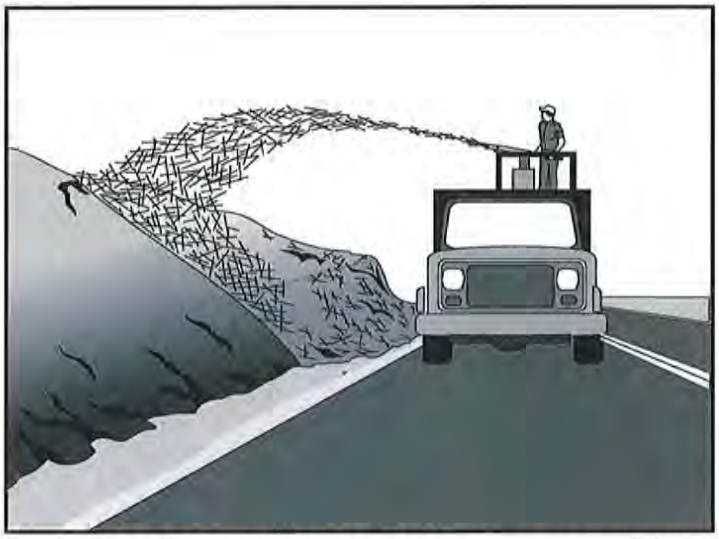
- Follow-up applications shall be made as needed to cover weak spots, and to maintain adequate soil protection.
- Avoid over-spray onto the traveled way, sidewalks, lined drainage channels, and existing vegetation.

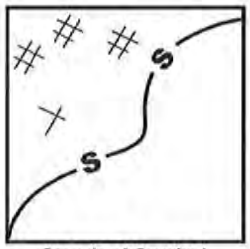
Maintenance and Inspection

- All seeded areas shall be inspected for failures and re-seeded, fertilized, and mulched within the planting season, using not less than half the original application rates. Any temporary revegetation efforts that do not provide adequate cover must be reapplied at a scheduled recommended by the Caltrans Landscape Architect or RE.
- After any rainfall event, the Contractor is responsible for maintaining all slopes to prevent erosion.

Straw Mulch

SS-6





Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- ● Soil Stabilization
- ○ Sediment Control
- ○ Tracking Control
- ● Wind Erosion Control
- ○ Non-Storm Water Management
- ○ Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

Straw mulch consists of placing a uniform layer of straw and incorporating it into the soil with a studded roller or anchoring it with a stabilizing emulsion. This is one of five temporary soil stabilization alternatives to consider.

Appropriate Applications

- Straw mulch is typically used for soil stabilization as a temporary surface cover on disturbed areas until soils can be prepared for revegetation and permanent vegetation is established.
- Also typically used in combination with temporary and/or permanent seeding strategies to enhance plant establishment.

Limitations

- Availability of erosion control contractors and straw may be limited prior to the rainy season due to high demand.
- There is a potential for introduction of weed-seed and unwanted plant material.
- When straw blowers are used to apply straw mulch, the treatment areas must be within 45 m (150 ft) of a road or surface capable of supporting trucks.
- Straw mulch applied by hand is more time intensive and potentially costly.
- May have to be removed prior to permanent seeding or soil stabilization.
- "Punching" of straw does not work in sandy soils.

Standards and Specifications

- Straw shall be derived from wheat, rice, or barley.
- All materials shall conform to Standard Specifications Sections 20-2.06, 20-2.07 and 20-2.11.
- A tackifier is the preferred method for anchoring straw mulch to the soil on slopes.
- Crimping, punch roller-type rollers, or track-walking may also be used to incorporate straw mulch into the soil on slopes. Track walking shall only be used where other methods are impractical.
- Avoid placing straw onto the traveled way, sidewalks, lined drainage channels, sound walls, and existing vegetation.
- Straw mulch with tackifier shall not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.

Application Procedures

- Apply loose straw at a minimum rate of 3,570 kg/ha (4,000 lb/ac), or as indicated in the project's special provisions, either by machine or by hand distribution.
- If stabilizing emulsion will be used to anchor the straw mulch in lieu of incorporation, roughen embankment or fill areas by rolling with a crimping or punching-type roller or by track walking before placing the straw mulch. Track walking should only be used where rolling is impractical.
- The straw mulch must be evenly distributed on the soil surface.
- Anchor the mulch in place by using a tackifier or by "punching" it into the soil mechanically (incorporating).
- A tackifier acts to glue the straw fibers together and to the soil surface. The tackifier shall be selected based on longevity and ability to hold the fibers in place.
- A tackifier is typically applied at a rate of 140 kg/ha (125 lb/ac). In windy conditions, the rates are typically 200 kg/ha (178 lb/ac).
- Methods for holding the straw mulch in place depend upon the slope steepness, accessibility, soil conditions and longevity. If the selected method is incorporation of straw mulch into the soil, then do as follows:
  - Applying and incorporating straw shall follow the requirements in Standard Specifications Section 20-3.03.
  - On small areas, a spade or shovel can be used.

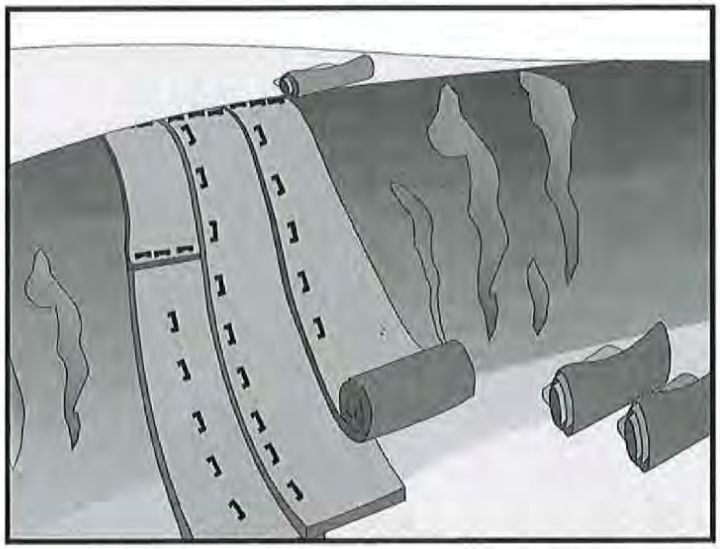
- On slopes with soils, which are stable enough and of sufficient gradient to safely support construction equipment without contributing to compaction and instability problems, straw can be "punched" into the ground using a knife-blade roller or a straight bladed coulter, known commercially as a "crimper."
- On small areas and/or steep slopes, straw can also be held in place using plastic netting or jute. The netting shall be held in place using 11 gauge wire staples, geotextile pins or wooden stakes. Refer to BMP SS-7, "Geotextiles, Plastic Covers and Erosion Control Blankets/Mats."

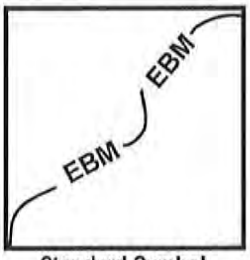
Maintenance and Inspections

- The key consideration in Maintenance and Inspection is that the straw needs to last long enough to achieve erosion control objectives.
- Maintain an unbroken, temporary mulched ground cover while DSAs are non-active. Repair any damaged ground cover and re-mulch exposed areas.
- Reapplication of straw mulch and tackifier may be required by the Resident Engineer (RE) to maintain effective soil stabilization over disturbed areas and slopes.
- After any rainfall event, the Contractor is responsible for maintaining all slopes to prevent erosion.

Geotextiles, Mats, Plastic Covers and Erosion Control Blankets

SS-7





Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- ● Soil Stabilization
- ○ Sediment Control
- ○ Tracking Control
- ● Wind Erosion Control
- ○ Non-Storm Water Management
- ○ Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

This Best Management Practice (BMP) involves the placement of geotextiles, mats, plastic covers, or erosion control blankets to stabilize disturbed soil areas and protect soils from erosion by wind or water. This is one of five temporary soil stabilization alternatives to consider.

Appropriate Applications

These measures are used when disturbed soils may be particularly difficult to stabilize, including the following situations:

- Steep slopes, generally steeper than 1:3 (V:H).
- Slopes where the erosion potential is high.
- Slopes and disturbed soils where mulch must be anchored.
- Disturbed areas where plants are slow to develop.
- Channels with flows exceeding 1.0 m/s (3.3 ft/s).
- Channels to be vegetated.
- Stockpiles.
- Slopes adjacent to water bodies of Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs).

Limitations

- Blankets and mats are more expensive than other erosion control measures, due to labor and material costs. This usually limits their application to areas inaccessible to hydraulic equipment, or where other measures are not applicable, such as channels.
- Blankets and mats are generally not suitable for excessively rocky sites, or areas where the final vegetation will be mowed (since staples and netting can catch in mowers).
- Blankets and mats must be removed and disposed of prior to application of permanent soil stabilization measures.
- Plastic sheeting is easily vandalized, easily torn, photodegradable, and must be disposed of at a landfill.
- Plastic results in 100% runoff, which may cause serious erosion problems in the areas receiving the increased flow.
- The use of plastic shall be limited to covering stockpiles, or very small graded areas for short periods of time (such as through one imminent storm event), until alternative measures, such as seeding and mulching, may be installed.
- Geotextiles, mats, plastic covers, and erosion control covers have maximum flow rate limitations; consult the manufacturer for proper selection.

Standards and Specifications

Material Selection

There are many types of erosion control blankets and mats, and selection of the appropriate type shall be based on the specific type of application and site conditions. Selection(s) made by the Contractor must be approved by the Resident Engineer (RE); certification of compliance shall be in accordance with Standard Specifications Section 6-1.07.

Geotextiles

- Material shall be a woven polypropylene fabric with minimum thickness of 1.5 mm (0.06 inch), minimum width of 3.7 m (12 ft) and shall have minimum tensile strength of 0.67 kN (warp) 0.36 kN (fill) in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D 4632. The permittivity of the fabric shall be approximately 0.07 sec –1 in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D4491. The fabric shall have an ultraviolet (UV) stability of 70 percent in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation: D4355. Geotextile blankets shall be secured in place with wire staples or sandbags and by keying into tops of slopes and edges to prevent infiltration of surface waters under Geotextile. Staples shall be made of 3.05-mm (0.12-inch) steel wire and shall be U-shaped with 200-mm (8-inch) legs and 50-mm (2-inch) crown.
- Geotextiles may be reused if, in the opinion of the RE, they are suitable for the use intended.

Plastic Covers

- Plastic sheeting shall have a minimum thickness of 6 mil, and shall be keyed in at the top of slope and firmly held in place with sandbags or other weights placed no more than 3 m (10 ft) apart. Seams are typically taped or weighted down their entire length, and there shall be at least a 300 mm to 600 mm (12 to 24 inches) overlap of all seams. Edges shall be embedded a minimum of 150 mm (6 inches) in soil.

- All sheeting shall be inspected periodically after installation and after significant rainstorms to check for erosion, undermining, and anchorage failure. Any failures shall be repaired immediately. If washout or breakages occurs, the material shall be re-installed after repairing the damage to the slope.

Erosion Control Blankets/Mats

- Biodegradable rolled erosion control products (RECPs) are typically composed of jute fibers, curled wood fibers, straw, coconut fiber, or a combination of these materials. For an RECP to be considered 100% biodegradable, the netting, sewing or adhesive system that holds the biodegradable mulch fibers together must also be biodegradable.

  - **Jute** is a natural fiber that is made into a yarn, which is loosely woven into a biodegradable mesh. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation and has longevity of approximately one year. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which shall be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Excelsior (curled wood fiber)** blanket material shall consist of machine produced mats of curled wood excelsior with 80 percent of the fiber 150 mm (6 inches) or longer. The excelsior blanket shall be of consistent thickness. The wood fiber shall be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. The top surface of the blanket shall be covered with a photodegradable extruded plastic mesh. The blanket shall be smolder resistant without the use of chemical additives and shall be non-toxic and non-injurious to plant and animal life. Excelsior blanket shall be furnished in rolled strips, a minimum of 1220 mm (48 inches) wide, and shall have an average weight of 0.5 kg/m^2 (12 lb/ft^2), ±10 percent, at the time of manufacture. Excelsior blankets shall be secured in place with wire staples. Staples shall be made of 3.05-mm (0.12 inch) steel wire and shall be U-shaped with 200-mm (8-inch) legs and 50-mm (2-inch) crown.

- **Straw blanket** shall be machine-produced mats of straw with a lightweight biodegradable netting top layer. The straw shall be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw blanket shall be of consistent thickness. The straw shall be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw blanket shall be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 2 m (6.5 ft) wide, a minimum of 25 m (80 ft) long and a minimum of 0.27 kg/m2 (6.4 lb/ft2). Straw blankets shall be secured in place with wire staples. Staples shall be made of 3.05-mm (0.12 inch) steel wire and shall be U-shaped with 200-mm (8-inch) legs and 50-mm (2-inch) crown.

- **Wood fiber blanket** is composed of biodegradable fiber mulch with extruded plastic netting held together with adhesives. The material is designed to enhance revegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which shall be secured to the ground with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- **Coconut fiber blanket** shall be machine-produced mats of 100% coconut fiber with biodegradable netting on the top and bottom. The coconut fiber shall be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The coconut fiber blanket shall be of consistent thickness. The coconut fiber shall be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Coconut fiber blanket shall be furnished in rolled strips with a minimum of 2 m (6.5 ft) wide, a minimum of 25 m (80 ft) long and a minimum of 0.27-kg/m2 (6.4 lb/ft2). Coconut fiber blankets shall be secured in place with wire staples. Staples shall be made of 3.05-mm (0.12 inch) steel wire and shall be U-shaped with 200-mm (8-inch) legs and 50-mm (2-inch) crown.

- **Coconut fiber mesh** is a thin permeable membrane made from coconut or corn fiber that is spun into a yarn and woven into a biodegradable mat. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation and typically has longevity of several years. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which shall be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- **Straw coconut fiber blanket** shall be machine-produced mats of 70% straw and 30% coconut fiber with a biodegradable netting top layer and a biodegradable bottom net. The straw and coconut fiber shall be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw coconut fiber blanket shall be of consistent thickness. The straw and coconut fiber shall be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw coconut fiber blanket shall be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 2 m (6.5 ft) wide, a minimum of 25 m (80 ft) long and a minimum of 0.27 kg/m2 (6.4 lb/ft2). Straw coconut fiber blankets shall be secured in place with wire staples. Staples shall be made of 3.05-mm (0.12-inch) steel wire and shall be U-shaped with 200-mm (8-inch) legs and 50-mm (2-inch) crown.

- Non-biodegradable RECPs are typically composed of polypropylene, polyethylene, nylon or other synthetic fibers. In some cases, a combination of biodegradable and synthetic fibers is used to construct the RECP. Netting used to hold these fibers together is typically non-biodegradable as well.

  - **Plastic netting** is a lightweight biaxially-oriented netting designed for securing loose mulches like straw to soil surfaces to establish vegetation. The netting is photodegradable. The netting is supplied in rolled strips, which shall be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Plastic mesh** is an open-weave geotextile that is composed of an extruded synthetic fiber woven into a mesh with an opening size of less than 0.5 cm (0.2 inch). It is used with revegetation or may be used to secure loose fiber such as straw to the ground. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which shall be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Synthetic fiber with netting** is a mat that is composed of durable synthetic fibers treated to resist chemicals and ultraviolet light. The mat is a dense, three-dimensional mesh of synthetic (typically polyolefin) fibers stitched between two polypropylene nets. The mats are designed to be revegetated and provide a permanent composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which shall be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Bonded synthetic fibers** consist of a three-dimensional geomatrix nylon (or other synthetic) matting. Typically it has more than 90% open area, which facilitates root growth. Its tough root-reinforcing system anchors vegetation and protects against hydraulic lift and shear forces created by high volume discharges. It can be installed over prepared soil, followed by seeding into the mat. Once vegetated, it becomes an invisible composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips that shall be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

  - **Combination synthetic and biodegradable RECPs** consist of biodegradable fibers, such as wood fiber or coconut fiber, with a heavy polypropylene net stitched to the top and a high-strength continuous-filament geomatrix or net stitched to the bottom. The material is designed to enhance revegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which shall be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

Site Preparation

- Proper site preparation is essential to ensure complete contact of the blanket or matting with the soil.
- Grade and shape the area of installation.
- Remove all rocks, clods, vegetation or other obstructions so that the installed blankets or mats will have complete, direct contact with the soil.
- Prepare seedbed by loosening 50 mm (2 in) to 75 mm (3 in) of topsoil.

Seeding

Seed the area before blanket installation for erosion control and revegetation. Seeding after mat installation is often specified for turf reinforcement application. When seeding prior to blanket installation, all check slots and other areas disturbed during installation must be re-seeded. Where soil filling is specified, seed the matting and the entire disturbed area after installation and prior to filling the mat with soil.

Anchoring

- U-shaped wire staples, metal geotextile stake pins or triangular wooden stakes can be used to anchor mats and blankets to the ground surface.
- Staples shall be made of 3.05 mm (0.12 inch) steel wire and shall be U-shaped with 200-mm (8-inch) legs and 50-mm (2-inch) crown.
- Metal stake pins shall be 5 mm (0.188 in) diameter steel with a 40 mm (1.5 in) steel washer at the head of the pin.
- Wire staples and metal stakes shall be driven flush to the soil surface.
- All anchors shall be 150 mm (6 in) to 450 mm (18 in) long and have sufficient ground penetration to resist pullout. Longer anchors may be required for loose soils.

Installation on Slopes

Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Begin at the top of the slope and anchor the blanket in a 150 mm (6 in) deep by 150 mm (6 in) wide trench. Backfill trench and tamp earth firmly.
- Unroll blanket downslope in the direction of water flow.

- Overlap the edges of adjacent parallel rolls 50 mm (2 in) to 75 mm (3 in) and staple every 1 m (3 ft).
- When blankets must be spliced, place blankets end over end (shingle style) with 150 mm (6 in) overlap. Staple through overlapped area, approximately 300 mm (12 in) apart.
- Lay blankets loosely and maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
- Staple blankets sufficiently to anchor blanket and maintain contact with the soil. Staples shall be placed down the center and staggered with the staples placed along the edges. Steep slopes, 1:1 (V:H) to 1:2 (V:H), require a minimum of 2 staples/m2 (2 staples/yd2). Moderate slopes, 1:2 (V:H) to 1:3 (V:H), require a minimum of 1½ staples/m2 (1 ½ staples/yd2), placing 1 staple/m (1 staple/yd) on centers. Gentle slopes require a minimum of 1 staple/m2 (1 staple/yd2).

Installation in Channels

Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Dig initial anchor trench 300 mm (12 in) deep and 150 mm (6 in) wide across the channel at the lower end of the project area.
- Excavate intermittent check slots, 150 mm (6 in) deep and 150 mm (6 in) wide across the channel at 8 m to 10 m (25 ft to 30 ft) intervals along the channels.
- Cut longitudinal channel anchor slots 100 mm (4 in) deep and 100 mm (4 in) wide along each side of the installation to bury edges of matting, whenever possible extend matting 50 mm (2 in) to 75 mm (3 in) above the crest of the channel side slopes.
- Beginning at the downstream end and in the center of the channel, place the initial end of the first roll in the anchor trench and secure with fastening devices at 300 mm (12 in) intervals. Note: matting will initially be upside down in anchor trench.
- In the same manner, position adjacent rolls in anchor trench, overlapping the preceding roll a minimum of 75 mm (3 in).
- Secure these initial ends of mats with anchors at 300 mm (12 in) intervals, backfill and compact soil.
- Unroll center strip of matting upstream. Stop at next check slot or terminal anchor trench. Unroll adjacent mats upstream in similar fashion, maintaining a 75 mm (3 in) overlap.

- Fold and secure all rolls of matting snugly into all transverse check slots. Lay mat in the bottom of the slot then fold back against itself. Anchor through both layers of mat at 300 mm (12 in) intervals, then backfill and compact soil. Continue rolling all mat widths upstream to the next check slot or terminal anchor trench.
- Alternate method for non-critical installations: Place two rows of anchors on 150 mm (6 in) centers at 8 m (25 ft) to 10 m (30 ft) intervals in lieu of excavated check slots.
- Shingle-lap spliced ends by a minimum of 300 mm (12 in) apart on 300 mm (12 in) intervals.
- Place edges of outside mats in previously excavated longitudinal slots, anchor using prescribed staple pattern, backfill and compact soil.
- Anchor, fill and compact upstream end of mat in a 300 mm (12 in) by 150 mm (6 in) terminal trench.
- Secure mat to ground surface using U-shaped wire staples, geotextile pins, or wooden stakes.
- Seed and fill turf reinforcement matting with soil, if specified.

Soil Filling (if specified for turf reinforcement)

- Always consult the manufacturer's recommendations for installation.
- Do not drive tracked or heavy equipment over mat.
- Avoid any traffic over matting if loose or wet soil conditions exist.
- Use shovels, rakes or brooms for fine grading and touch up.
- Smooth out soil filling, just exposing top netting of mat.

Temporary Soil Stabilization Removal

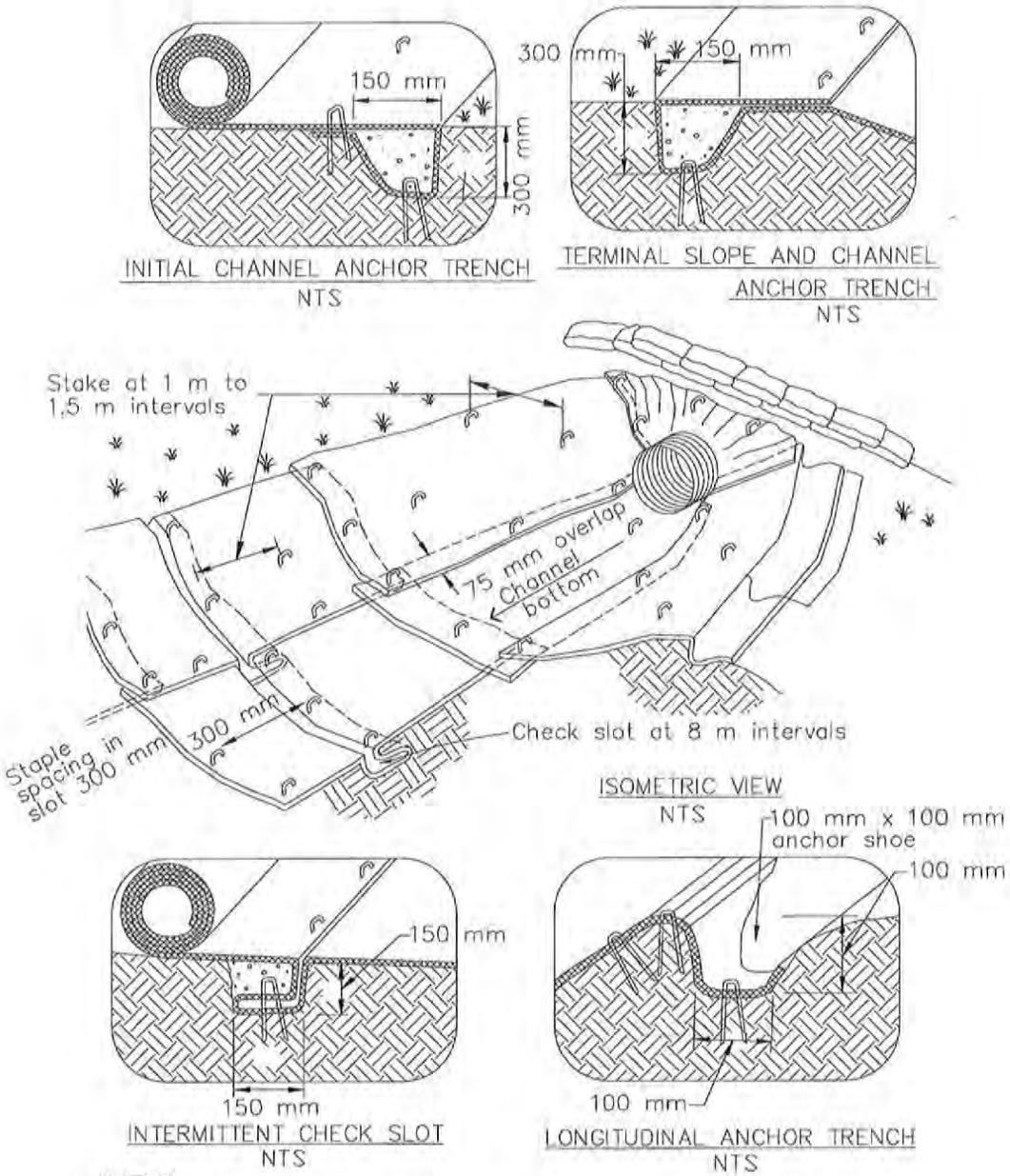
- When no longer required for the work, temporary soil stabilization shall become the property of the Contractor. Temporary soil stabilization removed from the site of the work shall be disposed of outside the highway right-of-way in conformance with the provisions in Standard Specifications Section 7-1.13. If approved by the RE, the contractor may leave the temporary soil stabilizer in place.

Maintenance and Inspection

Areas treated with temporary soil stabilization shall be inspected as specified in the special provisions. Areas treated with temporary soil stabilization shall be maintained to provide adequate erosion control. Temporary soil stabilization shall be reapplied or replaced on exposed soils when area becomes exposed or exhibits visible erosion.

- All blankets and mats shall be inspected periodically after installation.
- Installation shall be inspected after significant rain storms to check for erosion and undermining. Any failures shall be repaired immediately.
- If washout or breakage occurs, re-install the material after repairing the damage to the slope or channel.

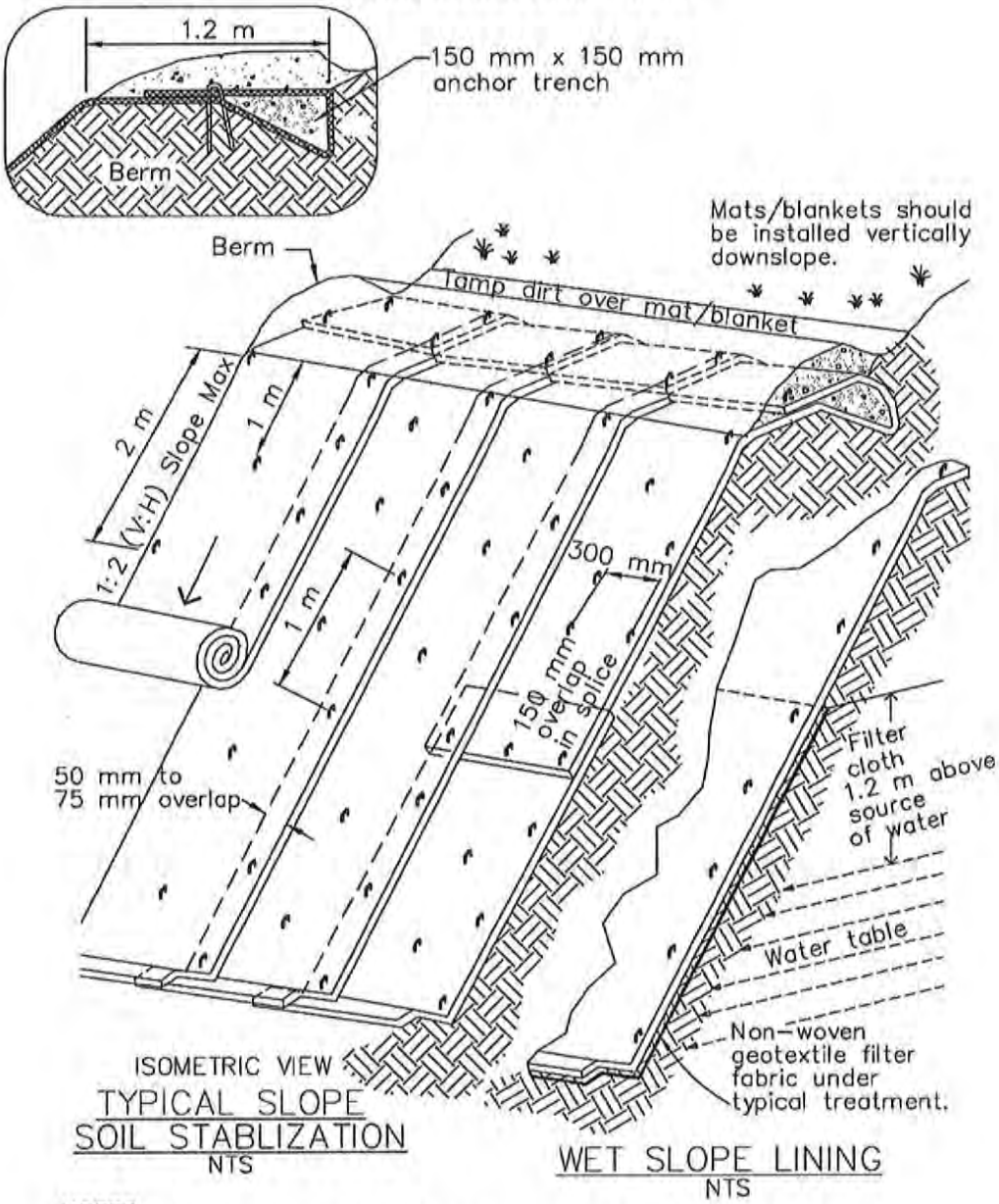
Typical Installation Detail



NOTES:

1. Check slots to be constructed per manufacturers specifications.
2. Staking or stapling layout per manufacturers specifications.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

Typical Installation Detail

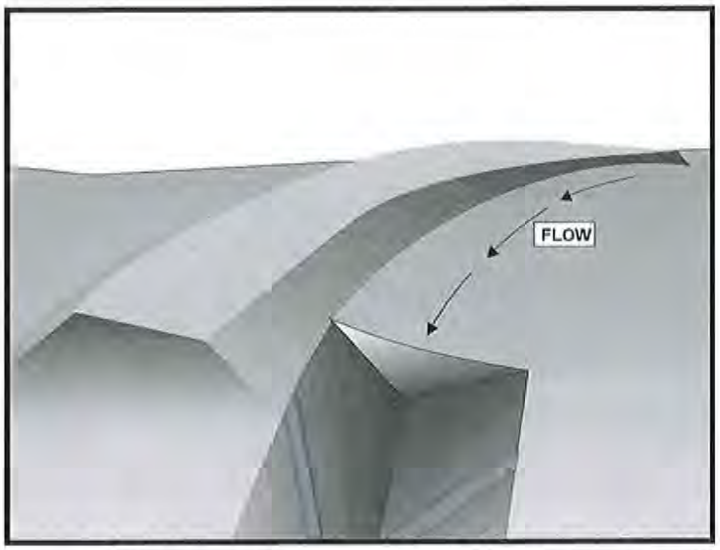


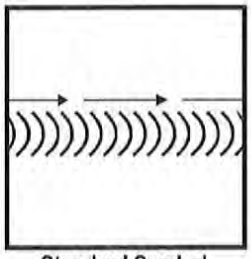
NOTES:

1. Slope surface shall be free of rocks, clods, sticks and grass. Mats/blankets shall have good soil contact.
2. Lay blankets loosely and stake or staple to maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

Earth Dikes/Drainage Swales and Lined Ditches

SS-9





Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- ● Soil Stabilization
- ○ Sediment Control
- ○ Tracking Control
- ○ Wind Erosion Control
- ○ Non-Storm Water Management
- ○ Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

These are structures that intercept, divert and convey surface run-on, generally sheet flow, to prevent erosion.

Appropriate Applications

- Earth dikes/drainage swales and lined ditches may be used to:
  - Convey surface runoff down sloping land.
  - Intercept and divert runoff to avoid sheet flow over sloped surfaces.
  - Divert and direct runoff towards a stabilized watercourse, drainage pipe or channel.
  - Intercept runoff from paved surfaces.
- Earth dikes/drainage swales and lined ditches also may be used:
  - Below steep grades where runoff begins to concentrate.
  - Along roadways and facility improvements subject to flood drainage.
  - At the top of slopes to divert run-on from adjacent or undisturbed slopes.
  - At bottom and mid-slope locations to intercept sheet flow and convey concentrated flows.
- This BMP may be implemented on a project-by-project basis with other BMPs when determined necessary and feasible by the Resident Engineer (RE).

Earth Dikes/Drainage Swales and Lined Ditches

SS-9

Limitations

- Earth dikes/drainage swales and lined ditches are not suitable as sediment trapping devices.
- May be necessary to use other soil stabilization and sediment controls, such as check dams, plastics, and blankets, to prevent scour and erosion in newly graded dikes, swales and ditches.

Standards and Specifications

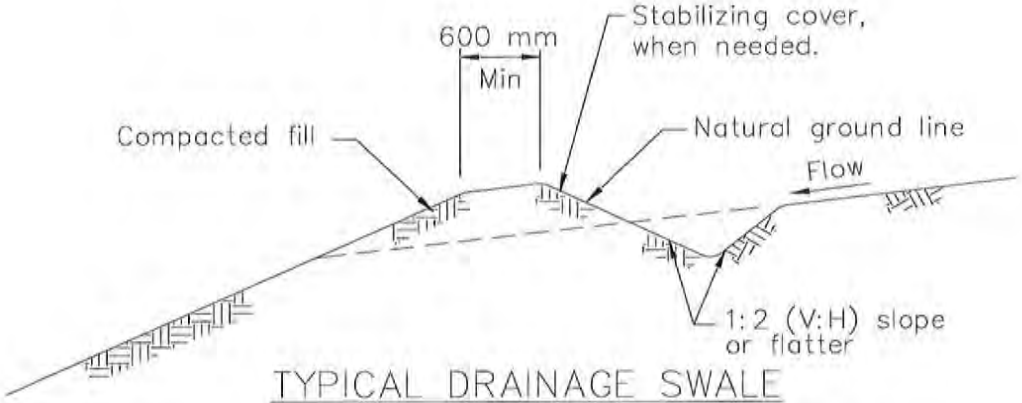
- Care must be applied to correctly size and locate earth dikes, drainage swales and lined ditches. Excessively steep, unlined dikes and swales are subject to erosion and gully formation.
- Conveyances shall be stabilized.
- Use a lined ditch for high flow velocities.
- Select flow velocity based on careful evaluation of the risks due to erosion of the measure, soil types, over topping, flow backups, washout, and drainage flow patterns for each project site.
- Compact any fills to prevent unequal settlement.
- Do not divert runoff from the highway right-of-way onto other property.
- When possible, install and utilize permanent dikes, swales and ditches early in the construction process.
- Provide stabilized outlets. Refer to SS-10, "Outlet Protection/Velocity/ Dissipation Devices."

Maintenance and Inspections

- Inspect temporary measures prior to the rainy season, after rainfall events, and regularly (approximately once per week) during the rainy season.
- Inspect ditches and berms for washouts. Replace lost riprap, damaged linings or soil stabilizers as needed.
- Inspect channel linings, embankments, and beds of ditches and berms for erosion and accumulation of debris and sediment. Remove debris and sediment, and repair linings and embankments as needed or as directed by the RE.
- Temporary conveyances shall be completely removed as soon as the surrounding drainage area has been stabilized, or at the completion of construction.

Earth Dikes/Drainage Swales and Lined Ditches

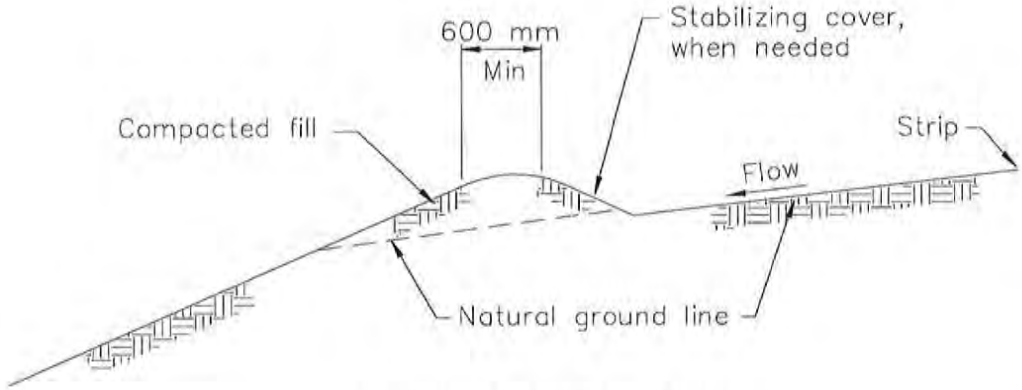
SS-9



TYPICAL DRAINAGE SWALE
NOT TO SCALE

NOTES:

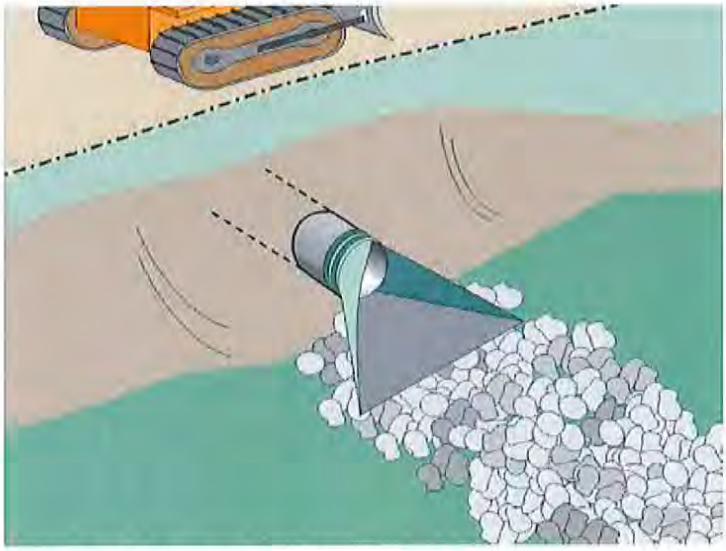
1. Stabilize inlet, outlets and slopes.
2. Properly compact the subgrade, in conformance with Section 19-5 of the Caltrans Standard Specifications.

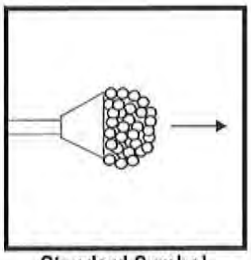


TYPICAL EARTH DIKE
NOT TO SCALE

Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices

SS-10





Standard Symbol

BMP Objectives

- ● Soil Stabilization
- ● Sediment Control
- ○ Tracking Control
- ○ Wind Erosion Control
- ○ Non-Storm Water Management
- ○ Materials and Waste Management

Definition and Purpose

These devices are placed at pipe outlets to prevent scour and reduce the velocity and/or energy of storm water flows.

Appropriate Applications

- These devices may be used at the following locations:
  - Outlets of pipes, drains, culverts, slope drains, diversion ditches, swales, conduits or channels.
  - Outlets located at the bottom of mild to steep slopes.
  - Discharge outlets that carry continuous flows of water.
  - Outlets subject to short, intense flows of water, such as flash floods.
  - Points where lined conveyances discharge to unlined conveyances.
- This BMP may be implemented on a project-by-project basis with other BMPs when determined necessary and feasible by the Resident Engineer (RE).

Limitations

- Loose rock may have stones washed away during high flows.
- Grouted riprap may break up in areas of freeze and thaw.
- If there is not adequate drainage, and water builds up behind grouted riprap, it may cause the grouted riprap to break up due to the resulting hydrostatic pressure.

Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices

SS-10

Standards and Specifications

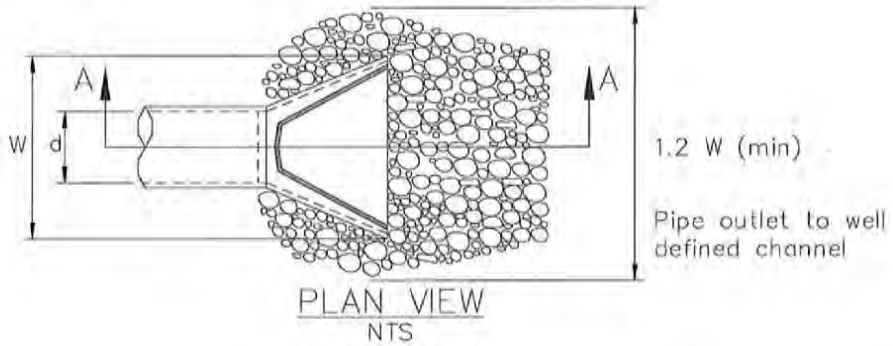
- There are many types of energy dissipaters, with rock being the one that is represented in the figure on Page 3. Please note that this is only one example and the RE may approve other types of devices proposed by the contractor.
- Install riprap, grouted riprap, or concrete apron at selected outlet. Riprap aprons are best suited for temporary use during construction.
- Carefully place riprap to avoid damaging the filter fabric.
- For proper operation of apron:
  - Align apron with receiving stream and keep straight throughout its length. If a curve is needed to fit site conditions, place it in upper section of apron.
  - If size of apron riprap is large, protect underlying filter fabric with a gravel blanket.
- Outlets on slopes steeper than 10% shall have additional protection.

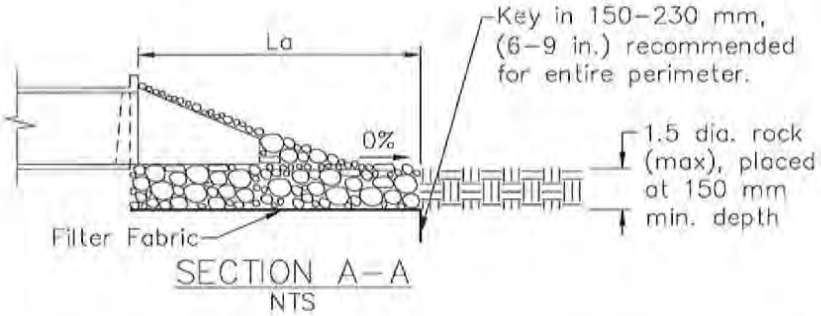
Maintenance and Inspection

- Inspect temporary measures prior to the rainy season, after rainfall events, and regularly (approximately once per week) during the rainy season.
- Inspect apron for displacement of the riprap and/or damage to the underlying fabric. Repair fabric and replace riprap that has washed away.
- Inspect for scour beneath the riprap and around the outlet. Repair damage to slopes or underlying filter fabric immediately.
- Temporary devices shall be completely removed as soon as the surrounding drainage area has been stabilized, or at the completion of construction.

Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices

SS-10





Pipe Diameter mm	Discharge m^3/s	Apron Length, La m	Rip Rap D_{50} Diameter Min mm
300	0.14	3	100
	0.28	4	150
450	0.28	3	150
	0.57	5	200
	0.85	7	300
	1.13	8	400
600	0.85	5	200
	1.13	8	200
	1.42	8	300
	1.70	9	400
For larger or higher flows, consult a Registered Civil Engineer			

Source: USDA – SCS

SNC·LAVALIN

19015 North Creek Way
Bothell, Washington
USA 98011
Tel.: 425-489-8000
www.snclavalin.com